

A  
GRAMMAR  
OF  
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE,  
WITH  
PRACTICAL EXERCISES.

---

BY  
N. WANOSTROCHT, LL.D.

---

THE SIXTH EDITION:  
WITH CONSIDERABLE ADDITIONS AND IMPROVEMENTS  
BY THE AUTHOR.

---

---

LONDON:

Printed for J. JOHNSON, St. Paul's Church-Yard; T. BOOTH, Old  
Broad-Street; VERNOR and HOOD, Poultry; C. LAW, Ave-  
Marie Lane; H. LOWNDEN, Fleet-Street; and  
T. N. LONGMAN, Paternoster-Row.

---

M.DCC.XCVIII.

1798





---

TO  
THE HON. MR. BATHURST.

SIR,

ON my arrival in England, I considered it as a fortunate circumstance to be first introduced to the honour of being appointed your French master. I now feel myself peculiarly happy, in having this opportunity of making my acknowledgment known to your illustrious family, for the civilities I received when I was but little known in this country.

From that time, it has been my ambition to render the PRACTICAL GRAMMAR, which now solicits your patronage, in some degree, worthy of your acceptance.

tance. Conscious, as I am, of its many imperfections, and that it stands in need of much indulgence, yet, if it should be found of real utility to the public, your approbation will be no small recommendation; at least, it will shew the world how ready you are to encourage even the faintest endeavours in useful learning.

I am, with the greatest respect, Sir,

Your much obliged

and very obedient

humble servant,

NICOLAS WANOSTROCHT.

---

## P R E F A C E.

---

**T**HAT "a great book is a great evil" is generally a great truth; for the discovery of which we moderns must hold ourselves indebted to the sages of antiquity. In the following sheets, I have endeavoured to improve upon the ancient maxim, and to bring the two ends of the book as near together as I possibly could. On this frugal plan, the preface might have been spared, but custom must be complied with; some part of our time must be spent on superfluities, and what is rendered venerable by age must not too hastily be rejected. To enter abruptly upon the main subject is generally considered as a breach of politeness. What is useful must sometimes give place to what is convenient; and what rigorous justice cannot defend may yet enjoy the security of prescription. In compliance, therefore, with universal custom, with the general practice of the ancients, and, what is still more forcible, the urgent solicitation of the bookseller, I proceed to lay before the reader the general plan of the work.

The idea of the PRACTICAL GRAMMAR was first suggested to the author in the course of his private teaching. He found daily the inconvenience of referring from book to book, and determined to supply the defect in the best manner he could. Whatever was necessary to furnish a tolerable acquaintance with the elements of the language, and to point out the nature of its construction, he proposed to admit; and to reject every thing that was not essentially connected with his principal design. His first object was, to comprise, in as little room as possible, every thing that was really useful in the grammar, the exercise-book, and the book of dialogues. To this plan he has strictly adhered in the composition, and has brought the whole together in a much smaller compass than, at first, could reasonably have been expected.

The several parts of speech are arranged in the usual order, and each part is discussed under a separate section.

Each



Each rule is followed by a familiar exercise, which the master may use in the place of a dialogue.

The advantages, resulting from the scholars learning and then repeating their own translations by heart, must, in the opinion of impartial and disinterested minds, materially tend to their improvement; by these means, the pupils, uniting practice to theory, not only become imperceptibly acquainted with the French phraseology, which in many instances differs so much from the English construction, but immediately know what is the English word that corresponds with the French, and vice versa, which cannot absolutely be done in a dialogue where the French is ready made for them. Therefore, in order the more fully to answer the author's intention, he has, instead of fine sentences, extracted from the most elegant writers, and often above the comprehension of young people, preferred and made use of, throughout all the exercises, plain and easy sentences, which, at the same time they are within reach of the young learner's faculties, will soon enable them to speak the French language with propriety and elegance. What more can be expected from an elementary book?

At the close of every section, a recapitulatory exercise is given upon all the preceding rules.

When there is any difference in the order of arrangement, the French construction is pointed out by small figures, placed against the top of the words in the English sentence.

Some of the most remarkable French idioms are noticed, and exemplified by various instances. Many others might have been adduced, perhaps to very little profit. The idiomatical expressions are daily giving way to a regular syntactical form, and growing into disuse with the best masters.

Rules for pronunciation are totally omitted. From all the attempts that have hitherto been made, it does not appear that any adequate idea of it can be conveyed in writing. The ear cannot be properly formed without the assistance of a good speaker.

Throughout the whole composition, the chief aim has been to unite ease and simplicity with accuracy and precision. That he has not sometimes said too little where more was required,

required, and sometimes too much where less would have been sufficient, he does not take upon him to assert. That he has sometimes failed through negligence, and many times through ignorance, he has also great reason to fear. His daily avocations left him but little time for study, and his want of a better acquaintance with the English language may have subjected him to many inaccuracies in his style, and sometimes, perhaps, to palpable improprieties.

The author cheerfully embraces this opportunity of making his most grateful acknowledgements to the public for the favourable reception given to the former editions of this grammar, and, in general, to all his other works: while he is perfectly sensible of the obligation, he is also sensible that much indulgence was required to justify the favours he has already received either as a PRIVATE TEACHER or as an AUTHOR. That generous indulgence he again solicits for their acceptance of this new edition, and begs to assure them, that, in every situation of life, it will be his constant care, as well as his highest ambition, to deserve the flattering encouragement he has met with in this country, and never forget the obligations already conferred.

In this edition, the errors in the former publications are carefully corrected, the several expressions, which did not so well please in the course of practice, have been altered, and every improvement added which could tend to facilitate the attainment of the French language. It having been suggested, by some gentlemen, to whose judgement the author pays the greatest deference, that the irregular verbs being arranged in alphabetical order, in the body of the book, would be a considerable improvement to the work, and facilitate the progress of the scholar, this is done in the present edition. The primitives of the irregular verbs are conjugated at length, and at the end of each are given its several compounds, with large exercises both upon the primitives and compounds.

ALFRED HOUSE, CAMBERWELL,

May 1, 1798.



**AN EXPLANATION OF THE ABBREVIATIONS  
MADE USE OF IN THE FOLLOWING WORK.**

m.	Noun masculine.	10
f.	Noun feminine.	
pl.	Plural.	
adj.	Noun adjective.	
prō.	Pronoun.	
v.	Verb.	
p. act.	Participle active.	
p. p.	Participle passive.	
adv.	Adverb.	
p.	Preposition.	
c.	Conjunction.	
int.	Interjection.	
☞	The English word, that has this mark underneath, is not to be expressed in French.	

The figures, <sup>1</sup>, <sup>2</sup>, <sup>3</sup>, &c. direct to the construction of the words in the French sentence.

---

*Published by the same Author.*

I. A Grammar of the Latin Language, with Practical Exercises, (*upon the plan of this*.) 2d edit. 2s. 6d.

II. A Classical Vocabulary, in French and English, 4th edit. 2s.

III. Recueil Choisi de Traits Historiques et de Contes Moraux, avec la Signification des Mots en Anglois au Bas de chaque Page, 5th edit. 3s. 6d.

IV. Petite Encyclopédie des Jeunes Gens, ou Définition des Arts et des Sciences, 2d edit. 5s.

V. Livre des Enfans, ou Syllabaire François, 2d edit. 1s. 6d.

VI. Easy and Familiar Dialogues, in French and English, on those Subjects best adapted for Schools, 1s. 6d. bound.

---

---

A  
P R A C T I C A L  
F R E N C H G R A M M A R.

---

S E C T. I.

**G**RAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing in any language with propriety ; or, it is the art of rightly expressing our thoughts by words.

Grammar is of two kinds, general and particular. Universal grammar considers language in itself, explains the principles which are alike common to every tongue, and distinguishes, with precision, between those particulars which are essential and those which are only accidental. Particular grammar applies these common principles to a particular language, and furnishes certain rules and observations which are, either mediately or immediately, deducible from its common principles.

A grammar of the French tongue must be formed agreeably to the established usage, and those particular modes of expression to which custom has given its sanction. It has therefore for its object, in common with all other grammars, the consideration of letters, syllables, words, and sentences.

In the FRENCH ALPHABET there are twenty-five letters, viz. a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z. Six of these are vowels ; so called because each can be distinctly sounded without the assistance of any other letter, namely, a, e, i, o, u, and y.

B

The



The rest are called CONSONANTS, because they cannot be perfectly sounded without being associated with some vowel, either before or after them.

A SYLLABLE, whether composed of one or more letters, requires, in the pronunciation, no more than a single impulse of the voice: ex. *ba, me, moi, &c.*

A WORD may consist of one syllable, or of many compacted into one meaning; for, a word is the smallest part of speech which is in itself significant, ex. *mon, my; livre, book, &c.*

A SENTENCE, or PHRASE, is an assemblage of words arranged in their proper order, forming a sense either more or less complete: ex.

*Je suis votre ami,* I am your friend.  
*J'écrivis hier à votre tante,* I yesterday wrote to your aunt.

A PERIOD may consist of two or three sentences joined together, so that they depend on one another to form a complete sense. Each of the sentences forming part of a period is called member of the period: ex.

*Les grands hommes sont rares; on doit les respecter, et l'on devrait toujours travailler à se rendre semblable à eux.* Great men are scarce; we ought to respect them, and be constantly endeavouring to resemble them.

A DISCOURSE, or SPEECH, is an assemblage of sentences (or phrases) and periods, joined together and arranged according to the rules of the language.

## KINDS OF WORDS.

There are, in the French tongue, nine different sorts of words, which are generally called the nine parts of speech, viz.

1. L'ARTICLE,

THE ARTICLE.

2. LE NOM,

THE NOUN.

3. LE

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 3. LE PRONOM,      | THE PRONOUN.      |
| 4. LE VERBE,       | THE VERB.         |
| 5. LE PARTICIPE,   | THE PARTICIPLE.   |
| 6. L'ADVERBE,      | THE ADVERB.       |
| 7. LA PREPOSITION, | THE PREPOSITION.  |
| 8. LA CONJONCTION, | THE CONJUNCTION.  |
| 9. L'INTERJECTION, | THE INTERJECTION. |

Five of them are declinable, that is to say, the radical part of the word remaining the same, the other parts, but especially the termination, will admit of several variations. These declinable words are, the article, noun, pronoun, verb, and participle.

The four last, as they never vary their terminations, are therefore called indeclinable.

## GENERAL EXPLANATION.

The ARTICLES are certain little words, which, joined to nouns, determine the extent of their signification, and which, in French, denote their gender, number, and case, corresponding to the English words *the, of the, from the, and to the*. These, in French, are,

<i>Le, la, les,</i>	The.
<i>De, du, de la, des,</i>	Of or from the.
<i>A, au, à la, aux,</i>	To the.

The NOUN, in general, is a word which is used to name or qualify every thing that is the object of discourse: ex.

<i>Papier,</i>	Paper.
<i>Plume,</i>	Pen.
<i>Pain,</i>	Bread.
<i>Bon,</i>	Good.
<i>Petit,</i>	Little.
<i>Mauvais,</i>	Bad, &c.

The PRONOUN is a word commonly substituted in the place of the noun, to avoid its too frequent repetition: ex.

*J'ai vu M. votre père, et* I saw your father, and  
*lui ai parlé,* spoke to him.

In this instance the word *lui*, to him, is put to avoid the repetition of the word *père*, father.

The VERB is a word which either expresses the state of the subject, or an action done by the subject, or the action received or suffered by the subject: ex.

*Mon frère est malade,* My brother is ill.  
*Ma sœur écrit une lettre,* My sister writes a letter.  
*Votre cousin est puni,* Your cousin is punished.

The verb is varied by moods, tenses, persons, and numbers.

The PARTICIPLE partakes both of the nature of the verb and the adjective noun: ex.

<i>Ayant,</i>	Having.
<i>Donnant,</i>	Giving.
<i>Aimé,</i>	Loved.
<i>Puni,</i>	Punished, &c.

The ADVERB is sometimes joined to the noun, but more frequently to the verb, whence it derives its name. The use of the adverb is, to determine the signification of the noun or verb; or to express some particular modification or circumstance of the action or quality: ex.

*Je vous aime sincèrement,* I love you sincerely.  
*Venez demain,* Come to-morrow.

In these instances, the words *sincerely* and *to-morrow* are adverbs.

The PREPOSITION is a word which is put before the noun or pronoun, and it always governs the word before which it is placed: ex.

<i>Chez mon ami,</i>	At my friend's house.
<i>Devant moi,</i>	Before me, &c.

The CONJUNCTION serves to connect the several parts of a discourse: ex. *et*, and; *car*, for; *mais*, but, &c.

The INTERJECTION is a word which expresses the different affections or passions of the soul: ex.

*Hélas, mon Dieu!* Oh, my God! &c.

A more

A more particular delineation of these nine parts of speech, and their use in the composition of a sentence, or period, will be the subject of the following sections.

---

## S E C T. II.

### O F N O U N S.

**N**OUNS are divided into substantives and adjectives. A **NOUN SUBSTANTIVE** expresses a thing subsisting by itself, and can make a complete sense independent of any other word: ex. *Dieu*, God; *roi*, king; *maison*, house, &c.

A **NOUN SUBSTANTIVE** is either common, collective, or proper.

A **COMMON NOUN** is applicable to all beings or things of the same kind: ex. *homme*, man; *roi*, king; *ville*, town; *table*, table, &c.

A **COLLECTIVE NOUN** is expressive of many particulars, yet, as these particulars are all united in the mind, and comprehended under one general idea, they may therefore be conceived as one individual, and, without any impropriety, expressed in the singular number: ex. *peuple*, people; *forêt*, forest; *armée*, army, &c.

A **PROPER NOUN** is applicable to one person or thing only: ex. *Pierre*, Peter; *Londres*, London, &c.

*N. B.* A noun is always a substantive when we cannot, with propriety, add to it the word *personne*, person, or the word *chose*, thing.

A **NOUN ADJECTIVE** is used to express the quality, colour, form, or quantity, of the substantive to which it belongs, and is so called because its meaning cannot be ascertained without being joined to its proper substantive, with which it must also agree in gender, number, and case: ex. *bon*, good; *aimable*, lovely; *rouge*, red; *jaune*, yellow; *ronde*, round; *quarré*, square; *un*, one; *deux*, two; *trois*, three, &c.



N. B. The noun is always adjective when one can add to it the word *personne* or *chose*, person or thing.

In NOUNS four things must be considered, viz.

<i>Les Articles,</i>	The Articles.
<i>Les Genres,</i>	The Genders.
<i>Les Nombres,</i>	The Numbers.
<i>Les Cas,</i>	The Cases.

## ARTICLES.

There are three sorts of Articles, viz.

<i>L'Article défini,</i>	The Article definite.
<i>L'Article partitif,</i>	The Article partitive.
<i>L'Article indéfini,</i>	The Article indefinite.

The article must always agree with the noun in gender and number.

The DEFINITE ARTICLE is so called because it means the whole of the object to which it is applied.

### SINGULAR.

*Le*, for the masculine, before nouns beginning with a consonant, or h aspirated: ex. *le roi*, the king, &c.

*La*, for the feminine: ex. *la reine*, the queen, &c.

*L'*, with an elision, for both genders, before nouns singular beginning with a vowel or h not aspirated: ex. *l'enfant*, the child, &c.

### PLURAL.

*Les* for both genders, whether the noun begin with a consonant or a vowel: ex. *les rois*, the kings; *les reines*, the queens; *les enfans*, the children, &c.

The PARTITIVE ARTICLE means only a part of the object, the English word *SOME* being always expressed or implied.

### SINGULAR.

*Du* for the mas.  
*De la* for the fem.

{

These two articles are used before nouns beginning with a consonant or h aspirate: ex. *du pain*, some bread; *de la viande*, some meat.

*De*

*De P*, for both genders, beginning with a vowel or an *h* not aspirated : ex. *de l'encre*, some ink.

PLURAL.

*Des* for both genders : ex. *des amis*, some friends.

The INDEFINITE ARTICLE is *de* or *d'*, of, from, and *à*, to.

This article is used, without distinction, before nouns masculine and feminine in both numbers. Proper names, and the greatest part of the pronouns, are declined with it.

Some grammarians admit of a fourth article, viz. *un* for the masculine, and *une* for the feminine, in English a or an : but it may be observed, that it is always declined with the indefinite article, and therefore takes the nature of a noun adjective.

## GENDERS AND NUMBERS.

There are two GENDERS, viz. the masculine and the feminine. A noun is masculine when there is before it *le* or *un*, as *le* or *un livre*, the or a book. A noun is feminine when it is preceded by *la* or *une*, as *la* or *une plume*, the or a pen.

There are two NUMBERS, the singular and plural. The singular number speaks of one thing only, as, *une table*, a table : the plural speaks of more than one, as, *des tables*, tables. There are some nouns that are never used but in the singular number, as :

1. The names of metals : ex. *or*, gold ; *argent*, silver ; *cuivre*, brass ; *plomb*, lead, &c.
2. The names of virtues and vices : ex. *avarice*, avarice ; *charité*, charity ; *foi*, faith ; *haine*, hatred ; *orgueil*, pride ; *prodigalité*, prodigality, &c.
3. The names by which the five senses are denoted : ex. *la vue*, the sight ; *le goût*, the taste ; *l'odorat*, smelling ; *le toucher*, feeling ; *l'ouïe*, hearing.
4. Proper names, except when they are used metaphorically.
5. To the foregoing may be added the following, which are not reducible to any general rules :

*Artillerie*,

<i>Artillerie,</i>	artillery.	<i>Faim,</i>	hunger.
<i>Attirail,</i>	implements.	<i>Fumée,</i>	smoke.
<i>Bonheur,</i>	happiness.	<i>Fuite,</i>	flight.
<i>Colère,</i>	anger.	<i>Gloire,</i>	glory.
<i>Courroux,</i>	wrath.	<i>Honte,</i>	shame.
<i>Enfance,</i>	infancy.	<i>Jeunesse,</i>	youth.
<i>Lait,</i>	milk.	<i>Salut,</i>	safety.
<i>Miel,</i>	honey.	<i>Soif,</i>	thirst.
<i>Noblesse,</i>	nobility.	<i>Sommeil,</i>	sleep.
<i>Pauvreté,</i>	poverty.	<i>Vieillesse,</i>	old age.
<i>Sang,</i>	blood.		

There are others which are never used but in the plural number only ; such as

<i>Ancêtres,</i>	ancestors.	<i>Funérailles,</i>	funerals.
<i>Ayeux,</i>	forefathers.	<i>Frais,</i>	expenses.
<i>Attours,</i>	apparel.	<i>Hardes,</i>	clothes.
<i>Ciseaux,</i>	scissors.	<i>Limites,</i>	limits.
<i>Délices,</i>	delight.	<i>Mœurs,</i>	manners.
<i>Dépens,</i>	cost.	<i>Mouchettes,</i>	snuffers.
<i>Entrailles,</i>	entrails.	<i>Ténèbres,</i>	darkness.
<i>Epousailles,</i>	espousals.	<i>Vivres,</i>	victuals.

In general the plural number is formed by adding *s* to the singular : ex.

*Le père,* the father ;      *les pères,* the fathers, &c.

All nouns, having their singular ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, admit of no variation in the plural : ex.

*Le fils,* the son ;      *les fils,* the sons.

*Une noix,* a walnut ;      *des noix,* walnuts.

*Le nez,* the nose ;      *les nez,* noses.

## EXCEPTIONS.

Nouns ending in *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *oeu*, *ieu*, or *ou*, form their plural by *x* instead of *s* : ex.

*Un chapeau,* a hat ;      *des chapeaux,* hats.

*Un manteau,* a cloak ;      *des manteaux,* cloaks.

*Un lieu,* a place ;      *des lieux,* places.

*Un chou,* a cabbage ;      *des choux,* cabbages.

The

The following differ from this rule, and their plural terminates in *s*.

*Matou*, a great cat ; *matous*, great cats.

*Trou*, a hole ; *trous*, holes.

Nouns ending in *al* and *ail* have their plural in *aux* :

ex.

*Animal*, a living creature ; *animaux*, living creatures.

*Cheval*, a horse ; *chevaux*, horses.

*Travail*, work ; *travaux*, works.

These only are excepted :

*Bal*, a ball.

*Eventail*, a fan.

*Gouvernail*, the helm. *Sérail*, a seraglio.

*Détail*, account, retail. *Portail*, gateway.

Which form their plural in *s*.

The following are not conformable to any established rule.

*Ayeul*, a grandfather ; *ayeux*, grandfathers.

*Ciel*, heaven ; *cieux*, heavens.

*Œil*, the eye ; *yeux*, eyes.

Except { *des ciels de lit*,\* testers of a bed.  
          { *des œils de bœuf*, ovals.

## C A S E S.

There are six cases, viz.

1. *Le Nominatif*, The Nominative.

2. *Le Génitif*, The Genitive.

3. *Le Datif*, The Dative.

4. *L'Accusatif*, The Accusative.

5. *La Vocatif*, The Vocative.

6. *L'Ablatif*, The Ablative.

The NOMINATIVE and ACCUSATIVE cases have exactly the same form, and are always declined with the same article ; the only difference between them arises from their different positions in the sentence.

\* This term becomes obsolete : it is better to say, *un fond de lit*.



In the natural construction, the nominative always precedes the verb and the accusative follows it. The nominative is the *subject* of the sentence, and the accusative is the *object* to which it refers: ex.

*Le roi aime le peuple,* The king loves the people.

In order to know the nominative from the accusative, I ask, Who loves the people? THE KING (which is the answer) is the subject, and consequently the nominative. Whom or what does the king love? the answer is, THE PEOPLE, which is the object, and therefore the accusative.

The GENITIVE and ABLATIVE are declined with the same articles, but the first is always preceded by another word on which it depends: as,

*La porte de la chambre,* The chamber-door, that is, the door of the chamber.

*La maison de mon père,* My father's house, &c.

Or it is governed by a preposition, as,

*Près du feu,* Near the fire, &c.

The last is always put after nouns or verbs expressing division, partition, or separation; and after some prepositions. The genitive is known by the articles *de, du, de la, des,* of or of the. Sometimes the article is not expressed in the English, as may be seen in the sentences before-mentioned. The ablative is known by the articles *de, du, de la, des,* from or from the.

The DATIVE shews to whom the thing spoken of is given, or to what it is attributed; as,

*Donnez cette pomme à mon frère,* Give that apple to my brother.

This case is known by the articles *à, au, à la, aux,* to or to the.

The VOCATIVE is used only for calling, or naming, the person to whom the speech is addressed: as,

*Ami, qui êtes-vous?* Friend, who are you?

## DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.

All changes in nouns are formed by numbers and cases. To decline a noun, therefore, is to express its several

several variations; and, under these variations, to point out its different significations.

Some short examples are added to the nouns, that learners may more easily understand what has been said respecting the cases.

*Declension of the Article definite, Le, (the,) before Nouns masculine beginning with a Consonant.*

#### SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>LE prince,</i>	The prince.
<i>Le prince est généreux,</i>	The prince is generous.
Gen. <i>DU prince,</i>	Of the prince.
<i>Les vertus du prince,</i>	The virtues of the prince.
Dat. <i>AU prince,</i>	To the prince.
<i>Parler au prince,</i>	To speak to the prince.
Acc. <i>LE prince,</i>	The prince.
<i>Aimer le prince,</i>	To love the prince.
Voc. <i>O prince,</i>	O prince.
Abl. <i>DU prince,</i>	From the prince.
<i>Recevoir des lettres du prince,</i>	To receive letters from the prince.

*Declension of the Article definite, La, (the,) before Nouns feminine beginning with a Consonant.*

#### SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>LA princesse,</i>	The princess.
<i>La princesse est aimable,</i>	The princess is amiable.
Gen. <i>DE LA princesse,</i>	Of the princess.
<i>Les regards de la princesse,</i>	The looks of the princess.
Dat. <i>A LA princesse,</i>	To the princess.
<i>Donner à la princesse,</i>	To give to the princess.
Acc. <i>LA princesse,</i>	The princess.
<i>Imitez la princesse,</i>	Imitate the princess.
Voc. <i>O princesse,</i>	O princess.
Abl. <i>DE LA princesse,</i>	From the princess.
<i>Etre séparé de la princesse,</i>	To be separated from the princess.

*Declension*

*Declension of the Article definite, L', (the,) for both Genders, before Nouns beginning with a Vowel or an h not aspirated.*

## SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>L'enfant,</i>	The child.
<i>L'enfant est timide,</i>	The child is fearful.
Gen. <i>De l'enfant,</i>	Of the child.
<i>Le tempérament de l'enfant,</i>	The child's temper; or, the temper of the child.
Dat. <i>A l'enfant,</i>	To the child.
<i>Attribuer à l'enfant,</i>	To attribute to the child.
Acc. <i>L'enfant,</i>	The child.
<i>Admirer l'enfant,</i>	To admire the child.
Voc. <i>O enfant,</i>	O child.
Abl. <i>DE l'enfant,</i>	From the child.
<i>S'écloigner de l'enfant,</i>	To go away from the child.

The plural of these nouns, whether they begin with a consonant or a vowel, are declined, in both genders, by the article *les* (the).

## PLURAL.

Nom. <i>Les rois,</i>	The kings.
<i>Les rois commandent,</i>	The kings command.
Gen. <i>DES rois,</i>	Of the kings.
<i>L'ordre des rois,</i>	The order of the kings.
Dat. <i>AUX rois,</i>	To the kings.
<i>Envoyer aux rois,</i>	To send to the kings.
Acc. <i>LES rois,</i>	The kings.
<i>Respectez les rois,</i>	Honour the kings.
Voc. <i>O rois,</i>	O kings.
Abl. <i>DES rois,</i>	From the kings.
<i>Etre loin des rois,</i>	To be far from the kings.

The definite article must be placed, in French, before all nouns used in a *general sense*, or denoting a whole species of objects, though the English admit of no article in this case: ex.

<i>L'homme est mortel,</i>	Man is mortal.
<i>LE Danemarck, LA Suède,</i>	Denmark, Sweden, and
<i>et L'Angleterre, sont LES</i>	England, are the three
<i>trois royaumes du nord,</i>	northern kingdoms.

*Ames*

<i>Aimer LES pommes et LES poires,</i>	To love apples and pears.
<i>Haïr LA paresse,</i>	To hate idleness.
<i>LA vertu et LA beauté sont estimables,</i>	Virtue and beauty are estimable.
<i>L'or est préférable à L'argent,</i>	Gold is preferable to silver.

This article is also placed before nouns used in a *specific sense*, or denoting a particular object, in which case the article is likewise expressed in English: ex.

<i>L'homme que vous m'avez recommandé est fort habile,</i>	The man whom you recommended me is very skilful.
<i>LES pommes et LES poires de votre jardin sont excellentes,</i>	The apples and pears of your garden are excellent.
<i>LA beauté et LA vertu de votre sœur la font admirer,</i>	The beauty and virtue of your sister cause her to be admired.
<i>L'or de l'Amérique est préférable à celui de l'Europe,</i>	The gold of America is preferable to that of Europe.

This article being declinable in French, and consequently admitting of different variations, ought to be repeated before all the *substantives* of a sentence, and before *nouns* adjective used as substantives, and agree with them in *gender* and *number*: ex.

<i>LE sel, LA moutarde, et L'huile, sont sur LES tables,</i>	The salt, mustard, and oil, are on the tables.
<i>LE blanc, LE rouge, et LE noir, sont trois différentes couleurs,</i>	Red, white, and black, are three different colours.

On the contrary, this article, though expressed in English, must be omitted in French, before a noun immediately followed by a name denoting a *degree* of consanguinity or kindred, or the name of a particular place to which it belongs: ex.



*Alexandre fils de Philippe,  
Robert frère de Richard,*

*Alexander the son of Philip,  
Robert the brother of  
Richard.*

*Mon ami demeure à Londres,  
ville capitale d'Angleterre,*

*My friend lives in Lon-  
don, the capital city of  
England.*

## RECAPITULATION OF THE ARTICLE DE- FINITE.

### SINGULAR.

Mas. Fem. Mas. & Fem.

*Le, la, l' ;*

*Du, de la, de l' ;*

*Au, à la, à l' ;*

### PLURAL.

Mas. & Fem.

*Les, the.*

*Des, of or from the.*

*Aux, to the.*

## EXERCISES UPON THE FOREGOING RULES.

Where is the master of the house? — Virtue

*Où, adv. est, v. maître, m. maison, f. Vertu, f.*

is estimable. — The prince spoke to the king.

*est, v. estimable, adj. prince, m. parla, v. roi, m.*

— Do you<sup>2</sup> prefer<sup>2</sup> England<sup>3</sup> to<sup>4</sup> France<sup>3</sup>? —

*vous, pro. préférez, v. Angleterre, f. France, f.*

To the third page of the book. — Prefer virtue

*troisième, adj. page, f. livre, m. Préférez, v.*

to riches, friendship to money, and utility to pleasure.

*richesses, pl. f. amitié, f. argent, m. et, c. utilité, f. plaisir, m.*

— The father, mother, and children, are dead. —

*père, m. mère, f. enfant, m. sont, v. mort, p. p.*

The<sup>1</sup> lazy<sup>2</sup> do<sup>3</sup> not<sup>3</sup> love<sup>4</sup> work<sup>4</sup>. —

*paresseux, adj. ne-pas, adv. aiment, v. ouvrage, m.*

Corn grows for men and grass for

*Bled, m. croit, v. pour, p. homme, m. herbe, f.*

cattle. — Justice is the mistress and queen of

*bétail, m. Justice, f. est, v. maîtresse, f. reine, f.*

virtue. — Walk in the garden. —

*Promenez-vous, v. dans, p. jardin, m.*

Send

Send the child to school. — Give that  
*Envoyez, v. enfant, m. école, f. Donnez, v. cela, pro.*  
 to the poor. — Children generally like  
*pauvre, m. ordinairement, adv. aiment, v.*  
 apples and pears. — Education is to the mind  
*pomme, f. poire, f. Education, f. est, v. esprit, m.*  
 what cleanliness is to the body. — I like  
*ce que, pro. propreté, f. corps, m. Je, pro. aime, v.*  
 yellow and grey. — Peace and plenty make  
*jaune, m. gris, m. Pais, f. abondance, f. rendent, v.*  
 men happy. — The life of man is short. — The  
*heureux, adj. vie, f. courte, adj.*  
 enemies were on the mountain. — Love wis-  
*ennemi, m. étoient, v. sur, p. montagne, f. Aimez, v. sa-*  
 dom. — Do not neglect study. — Avoid leisure. —  
*gesse, f. négligez, v. étude, f. Evitez, v. loisir, m.*  
 You admire the beauty of the ladies. —  
*Vous, pro. admirez, v. beauté, f. dame, f.*  
 To the thickness of the walls. — Honour is the  
*épaisseur, f. muraille, f. Honneur, m.*  
 reward of virtue. — She comes from church. —  
*récompense, f. Elle, pro. vient, v. église, f.*  
 We go to the park. — Corn, wheat, and  
*Nous, pro. allons, v. parc, m. froment, m.*  
 barley, are dear. — I hate milk, butter, and  
*orge, f. font, v. cher, adj. hais, v. lait, m. beurre, m.*  
 cheese. — We speak of America and not of  
*fromage, m. parlons, v. Amérique, f. non pas, adv.*  
 Poland. — It is the will of the emperor. —  
*Pologne, f. C'est, v. volonté, f. empereur, m.*  
 Bring the knives and forks. — Honour is  
*Apportez, v. couteau, m. fourchette, f.*  
 due to kings. — The fate of nations is governed  
*do, p. p. sort, m. nation, f. gouverné, p. p.*

by Providence.—You play with the boys.—  
*par, p. Providence, f. jouez, v. avec, p. garçon, m.*

Revenge is the pleasure of a weak<sup>d</sup> mind.—  
*Vengeance, f. plaisir, m. de un foible, adj. esprit, m.*

Patience and perseverance are necessary. — Italy  
*Patience, f. persévérance, f. nécessaire, adj. Italie, f.*  
 is the garden of Europe.—The Jupiter of the  
*jardin, m. Europe, f.*

heathens was the son of Saturn and the  
*paysan, m. étoit, v. fils, m. Saturne, m.*

father of the gods. — The desire of glory,  
*père, m. dieu, m. desir, m. gloire, f.*

riches, power, and pleasure, is a disease of the  
*pouvoir, m. une maladie, f.*

mind.—Tranquillity of soul is the height of  
*âme, f. Tranquillité, f. âme, f. comble, m.*

felicity.—Grant us peace.—Have you  
*felicité, f. Accordez, v. nous, pro. paix, f. Avez-vous, v.*

passed through Spain, Portugal, or Hol-  
*passé, p. p. par, p. Espagne, f. Portugal, m. ou, c. Hol-*  
 land? — The most noble of virtues is charity.—  
*lande, f. plus, adv. noble, adj. charité, f.*

Carry the grammar to the boys, and the dic-  
*Portez, v. grammaira, f. dic-*

tionary to the girls. — They come from the  
*tionnaire, m. fille, f. Ils, pro. viennent, v.*

Indies.—Prefer always virtue, prudence,  
*Inde, f. Préférez, v. toujours, adv. prudence, f.*

and good sense, to beauty.—Put the wine,  
*bon, adj. sens, m. Mettez, v. vin, m.*

beer, and cider, on the table.— Give  
*bière, f. cidre, m. sur, p. table, f. Donnez, v.*

me the loaf. — My sister lives  
*moi, pro. pain, m. Ma, pro. sœur, f. demeure, v.*

at

at York, the capital city of the county of the  
à, p. comté, m.

same name. — ( It is said ) that America,  
même, adj. nom, m. On dit que

France, and Spain, have made peace with Eng-  
ont, v. fait, p. p.

land.

When, in English, two or more substantives, signi-  
fying different things, come together in a sentence, ha-  
ving a dependance on each other, and having no stop  
between them, the last (in English) must be placed at  
the beginning of the sentence (in French) and the  
others after it, with the *genitive* of this article before  
them, according to their gender and number : as,

Le <sup>1</sup> fils <sup>2</sup> du <sup>3</sup> roi <sup>4</sup> ,	The <sup>1</sup> king's <sup>4</sup> son <sup>2</sup> .
La <sup>1</sup> couronne <sup>2</sup> de <sup>3</sup> la reine <sup>4</sup> ,	The <sup>1</sup> queen's <sup>4</sup> crown <sup>2</sup> .
La <sup>1</sup> femme <sup>2</sup> du <sup>3</sup> fils <sup>4</sup> du <sup>5</sup> chancelier <sup>6</sup> ,	The <sup>1</sup> chancellor's <sup>6</sup> son's <sup>4</sup> wife <sup>2</sup> .

That is, the son of the king; the crown of the  
queen; the wife of the son of the chancellor.

If the second substantive in French (which is the first  
in English) serve to denote some particular *COMMODITY, USE, QUALITY, or LIQUOR*, then it must be  
put in the *dative*: as,

Le <sup>1</sup> pot <sup>2</sup> au lait <sup>3</sup> ,	The <sup>1</sup> milk <sup>3</sup> -pot <sup>2</sup> .
La <sup>1</sup> bouteille <sup>2</sup> à l'huile <sup>3</sup> ,	The <sup>1</sup> oil <sup>3</sup> -bottle <sup>2</sup> .
La <sup>1</sup> femme <sup>2</sup> aux pommes <sup>3</sup> ,	The <sup>1</sup> apple <sup>3</sup> -woman <sup>2</sup> .

After the adverb *bien*, when placed before a substan-  
tive and signifying *much, a great deal, many*, the *geni-  
tive* of this article must always be used : as,

Bien du mérite,	Much merit.
Bien de l'argent,	A great deal of money.
Bien des dames,	Many ladies.
Bien des livres,	Many books.



## EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING RULES.

I have seen the king's apartments and the  
*Je, pro. ai, v. vu, p. p. appartement, m.*  
 queen's picture. — The children make much  
*reine, f. portrait, m. font, v. bien, adv.*  
 noise. — Bring me the wine-bottle. — The  
*bruit, m. Apportez, v. moi, pro. vin, m. bouteille, f.*  
 man's strength is very great. — He has  
*force, f. est, v. bien, adv. grande, adj. Il, pro. a, v.*  
 many friends. — Where is the fish-market? —  
*bien, adv. ami, m. Où, adv. poisson, m. marché, m.*  
 They<sup>a</sup> give<sup>a</sup> you<sup>a</sup> much<sup>a</sup> trouble<sup>a</sup>. — (There is)  
 *Ils, pro. donnent, v. vous, pro. peine, f. Voilà*  
 the oyster - woman. — Where is your wine-  
*huitre, f. femme, f. votre, pro. vin, m.*  
 cellar? — Lend me the maid's  
*cave, f. Prêtez, v. moi, pro. servante, f.*  
 cloak. — Give me the ink-bottle. — This man  
*chantelet, m. Donnez, v. encre, f. Cet, pro.*  
 has (a great deal) of money. — Tell (to) the  
*bien, adv. Dites, v.*  
 butter-man to come here. — We live  
*beurre, m. de venir, v. ici, adv. Nous, pro. demeurons, v.*  
 in the poultry-market.  
*dans, p. volaille, f.*

## DECLENSION of the ARTICLE PARTITIVE.

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *du pain*, some bread.\*

\* In asking a question, the English generally make use of *any*, which, in French, must be rendered by this same article: as,

*Y a-t-il du pain ici?*

Is there *any* bread here?

*Avez-vous de la viande?*

Have you *any* meat?

*A-t-elle acheté des livres?*

Has she bought *any* books?

Gen.

Gen. Abl. *de pain*, of or from some bread.

Dat. *à du pain*, to some bread.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de la viande*, some meat.

Gen. Abl. *de viande*, of or from some meat.

Dat. *à de la viande*, to some meat.

Masculine or Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de l'argent*, some money.

Gen. Abl. *d'argent*, of or from some money.

Dat. *à de l'argent*, to some money.

The plural is the same for both genders.

N. A. *des livres*, some books, *des auteurs*, some authors.

G. A. *de livres*, of or from, &c. *d'auteurs*, of or from, &c.

Dat. *à des livres*, to, &c. *à des auteurs*, to, &c.

N. B. If the substantive be preceded by an adjective, instead of *du*, *de-la*, *des*, we must use *de* or *d'* ; as,

SINGULAR.

Masc.

Fem.

Masc. or Fem.

N. A. } *De mauvais vin*, *De bonne eau*, *D'excellent pain*,

G. A. } Bad wine. Good water. Excellent bread.

D. *à de mauvais vin*, *à de bonne eau*, *à d'excellent pain*,

To bad wine. To good water. To excellent bread.

PLURAL.

N. Ac. } *De bons livres*, *D'habiles gens*,

G. Ab. } Good books. Learned people.

Dat. *à de bons livres*, *à d'habiles gens*,

To good books. To learned people.

This last rule is not general ; for, there are some substantives, though preceded by an adjective, which require the other article, instead of *de*. However, instances of this kind are very few ; they never happen but when the adjective and substantive present to the mind one idea only : as, *Paris est le centre du bon goût*, &c. Paris is the centre of good taste, &c.

This

This article must be used wherever the English word **SOME** is either expressed or understood, and ought to be repeated before every substantive in a sentence: as,

*Du pain et de l'eau lui suffisent,* Bread and water are sufficient for him.

*Apportez du vinaigre, de la moutarde, de l'huile, et des fourchettes,* Bring *some* vinegar, mustard, oil, and forks.

### EXERCISES UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Bread, meat, and water, are things necessary to man.—I drink wine and water.—  
*faire, adj. Je, pro. bois, v.*

She eats cheese.—Bring me some  
*Elle, pro. mange, v. moi, pro.*

mustard.—Have you bought some paper, pens, and ink?—You<sup>1</sup> always<sup>2</sup> read<sup>3</sup> good<sup>4</sup> books<sup>5</sup>.—  
*moutarde, f. Avez, v. acheté, p.p. papier, m. plume, f. encre, f. toujours, adv. lisez, v.*

Send him some bread, meat, and potatoes.—  
*Envoyez, v. lui, pro. pomme de terre, f.*

Bad<sup>1</sup> wine<sup>2</sup> is<sup>4</sup> not<sup>3</sup> worth<sup>4</sup> good<sup>6</sup> water<sup>7</sup>.—  
*vaut, v.*

Do you<sup>2</sup> sell<sup>1</sup> fruits<sup>3</sup>?—He speaks to  
*vendez, v. fruit, m. Il, pro. parle, v.*

learned people.—Buy some tea and sugar.—  
*gens, f. Achetez, v. thé, m. sucre, m.*

I have heard good news.—Will you  
*ai, v. appris, p.p. bonne, adj. nouvelle, f. Voulez, v.*

eat some beef with turnips and carrots?—  
*manger, v. bœuf, m. avec, p. navet, m. carotte, f.*

\* *Gens*, preceded by an adjective, is of the feminine gender; but, when the adjective follows, it is put in the masculine.

You have fine fruits.—Do you<sup>3</sup> drink<sup>1</sup> beer<sup>2</sup>?—  
*avez, v. beaux, adj. buvez, v. bière, f.*

(Is there) any wine in the bottle? —  
*Y a-t-il dans, p. bouteille, f.*

She has worthy friends.—Bring me good  
*Elle, pro. a, v. digne, adj. ami, m. bonne, adj.*

pens.—I<sup>2</sup> have<sup>3</sup> given<sup>4</sup> him<sup>2</sup> bread, money, and  
*donné, p. p. lui, pro.*

clothes. — Lend me some books. — I prefer  
*habit, m. préfère, v.*

good water to bad wine. — She has mo-  
*Elle, pro. a, v. mo-*

desty and prudence. — Bring us some plates,—  
*destie, f. nous, pro. assiette, f.*

Will you have some milk or cream? — Miss  
*ou, c. crème, f. Mademoiselle, f.*

Sharp has fine eyes.  
*a, v. œil, m.*

### DECLENSION of the ARTICLE INDEFINITE.

All proper names of persons, cities, towns, and vil-  
 lages, are declined with this article : ex.

#### SINGULAR.

##### Masculine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Pierre,</i>	Peter,
Gen. Abl.	<i>de Pierre,</i>	of or from Peter.
Dat.	<i>à Pierre,</i>	to Peter.

##### Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Marie,</i>	Maria.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de Marie,</i>	of or from Maria.
Dat.	<i>à Marie,</i>	to Maria.

This article, before a noun beginning with a vowel  
 or *b* not aspirated, is expressed as follows :

Nom.



Nom. Acc.	<i>Antoine,</i>	Anthony.
Gen. Abl.	<i>d'Antoine,</i>	of or from Anthony.
Dat.	<i>à Antoine,</i>	to Anthony.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Londres,</i>	London.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de Londres,</i>	of or from London.
Dat.	<i>à Londres,</i>	to London.

*N. B.* It is necessary to observe, that the dative of the article TO, used after a word signifying COMING, GOING, RETURNING, or SENDING TO, placed before the name of a kingdom or province, must be rendered in French by the preposition EN: ex.

<i>Mon frère est allé en Italie,</i>	My brother is gone to Italy.
<i>Il doit bientôt retourner en Amérique,</i>	He is soon to go back again to America.

### EXERCISES UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Here is John's brother.—Speak to Martha.—  
*Voici, adv. Jean, m. frère, m. Parlez, v. Marthe, f.*

It is Peter's hat. — She goes to Richmond. —  
*C'est, v. chapeau, m. Elle, pro. va, v.*

He comes from Paris.—You have Mr.  
*Il, pro. vient, v. Vous, pro. avez, v. Monsieur, m.*

Richard's sword. — When will you go  
*épée, f. Quand, adv. irez, v.*

to France? — Give me Laura's cap. —  
*Donnez, v. moi, pro. Laure, f. bonnet, m.*

I (am going) to Croydon. — I have found  
*Je, pro. vais, v. ai, v. trouvé, p. p.*

Andrew's waistcoat. — She (shall come back) to  
*André, m. veste, f. reviendra, v.*

England (next year). — Carry that to  
*P'année prochaine. Portez, v. cela, pro.*

Stephen.  
*Etienne, m.*

The genitive of this article *de* is used after nouns and adverbs of quantity, whether expressed in English or not: ex.

<i>Deux livres de cerises,</i>	Two pounds of cherries.
<i>Quatre aunes de mouffeline,</i>	Four yards of muslin.
<i>Trop de vin,</i>	Too much wine.
<i>Moins de mérite,</i>	Less merit.
<i>Plus de sagesse,</i>	More wisdom.

After the negation *pas* or *point*, no or not; the words *que*, what; *quelque chose*, something; and *rien*, nothing: ex.

<i>Point de repos,</i>	No rest.
<i>Que de bruit!</i>	What a noise!
<i>Que d'intégrité!</i>	What integrity!
<i>Quelque chose de bon,</i>	Something good.
<i>Rien de mauvais,</i>	Nothing bad.

Before names of countries, kingdoms, and provinces, when preceded by a noun expressing a personal title, or by a verb signifying coming from: ex.

<i>Le roi d'Angleterre,</i>	The king of England.
<i>Il arrive de France,</i>	He arrives from France, &c.

### EXERCISES ON THESE RULES.

I have bought six yards of cloth.—  
*Je, pro. ai, v. acheté, p. p. drap, m.*  
 Bring me three pounds of veal and two  
*Appertez, v. moi, pro. trois veau, m. deux*  
 pounds of mutton. — She has a great num-  
*mouton, m. Elle, pro. a, v. un grand, adj. nom-*  
 ber of children. — Do not give her  
*bre, m. ne-pas donnez, v. lui, pro.*

\* It must be observed, that the word *chose*, standing by itself, is of the feminine gender; but, being joined to the word *quelque*, it is of the masculine.

(too many) pears<sup>e</sup>. — I<sup>1</sup> have<sup>3</sup> <sup>2</sup>no<sup>o</sup> daughters<sup>3</sup>. —  
*trop*, adv. *ai*, v. *ne point* *fille*, f.

Did you see the duke of Bavaria with the  
*Avez*, v. *vous*, pro. *vu*, v. *duc*, m. *Bavière*, f. *avec*, pro.  
 archbishop of York? — We have (so many)  
*archevêque*, m. *Nous*, pro. *avons*, v. *tant*, adv.

grapes. — They have (a little) money. — I  
*raisin*, m. *Ils*, pro. *ont*, v. *un peu*, adv.

know the king of Prussia. — He has more  
*connois*, v. *Prusse*, f. *Il*, pro. *a*, v.

friends than you. — (There were) (so many)  
*ami*, m. *que*, c. *vous*, pro. *Il y avoit*, v.

ladies. — He commanded an army of forty  
*dame*, f. *commandoit*, v. *une armée*, f. *quarante*

thousand men. — She<sup>1</sup> says<sup>3</sup> <sup>2</sup>nothing<sup>4</sup> true. —  
*mille* *dit*, v. *ne rien*, adv. *vrai*, adj.

You speak of Alexander, king of Macedonia. —  
*parlez*, v. *Alexandre*, m. *Macedoine*, f.

Do you<sup>2</sup> come<sup>1</sup> from<sup>3</sup> Italy?  
*venez*, v. *Italie*, f.

*De* is likewise placed before nouns governed by another substantive, of which they express the CHARACTER, CAUSE, COUNTRY, MATTER, NATURE, and QUALITY: ex.

*Une<sup>1</sup> maison<sup>2</sup> de brique<sup>3</sup>*, A<sup>1</sup> brick<sup>3</sup> house<sup>2</sup>.

*Du vin<sup>1</sup> de Bourgogne<sup>2</sup>*, Burgundy<sup>2</sup> wine<sup>1</sup>, &c.

After the adjectives of number, when they are followed by a participle passive: ex.

*Quatre de renvoyés*, Four sent away, &c.

### EXERCISES ON THESE RULES.

Your<sup>1</sup> sister<sup>2</sup> has<sup>3</sup> a<sup>4</sup> silk<sup>6</sup> gown<sup>3</sup> and a gold  
*Votre*, pro. *sœur*, f. *a*, v. *une soie*, f. *robe*, f. *un*, or, m.  
 thimble. — We drink Champagne wine. —  
*dé*, m. *Nous*, pro. *buons*, v. *Champagne*, f.

(It

(It is) a marble pillar. — They have a  
*C'est, v. marbre, m. pillier, m. Ils, pro. ont, v. une*  
 country - house. — Edinburgh is the capital  
*campagne, f. maison, f. Edinbourg est, v. capitale, adj.*  
 city of the kingdom of Scotland. — Shut the  
*ville, f. royaume, m. Ecoffe, f. Fermez, v.*  
 fore - door. — A lady of wit is a jewel  
*devant, m. porte, f. Une dame, f. esprit, m. est, v. un joyau, m.*  
 of worth. — (He is) a man of honour. — She has  
*prix, m. C'est, v. un*  
 bought silver buckles and diamond  
*acheté, p. p. argent, m. boucle, f. diamant, m.*  
 ear - rings. — Have you spoken to the silk-  
*pendans d'oreille, m. Avez, v. parlé, p. p. soie, f.*  
 merchant. — Give me the upper - crust. —  
*marchand, m. Donnez, v. moi, pro. dessus, m. croûte, f.*  
 Sixty lost. — Bring me my straw hat.  
*Soixante perdu, p. p. mon, pro. paille, f. chapeau, m.*

DE is placed after the adjectives signifying DIMEN-  
 SION; as, *épais*, thick; *gros*, big, large; *haut*, high,  
 tall; *large*, wide, broad; *long*, long; and *profond*, deep;  
 though there is no article expressed in English: ex.

*Une table longue de dix* A table ten feet long  
*pieds et large de huit*, and eight broad.

But there is a more elegant way, which is, to turn  
 the adjective of dimension into the substantive; then  
 the words of measure and those of dimension are pre-  
 ceded by *de*: ex.

*Une table de dix pieds de longueur et de huit de largeur,* A table ten feet long and  
 eight broad.

In this last example, it may be seen that the French  
 and English are parallel with each other; therefore, in  
 the following exercise, the adjective and substantive are  
 put down, that the learner may translate it both ways.

## D

## EXERCISES



## EXERCISES ON THESE RULES.

I have a box four inches thick,  
*Je, pro. ai, v. une boîte, f. quatre pouce, m. épais-seur, f.\**  
 ten feet long, and six broad.—I know  
*dix pied, m. long—ueur, f. six large-ur, f. connois, v.*  
 a man seven feet high.—(It is) a ditch nine  
*un sept haut—eur, f. C'est, v. un fossé, m. neuf*  
 feet six inches deep and five feet broad.—  
*profond—eur, f. cinq.*

(There is) a room fifty paces long and  
*Voilà une chambre, f. cinquante pas, m.*  
 twenty broad.—The walls of our garden  
*vingt muraille, f. notre, pro.*  
 are thirty feet three inches high, and two  
*font, v. ont, v. trente trois deux*  
 broad.

If the learner translate this last sentence by the adjective of dimension, he must use the word *font*, which is the proper word for the English, ARE, and follows the preceding rule: but, if he turn the adjective of dimension into its substantive, the verb *être*, to be, is to be rendered into French by the verb *avoir*, to have, and *de* before the word of measure is suppressed. In this last case, the word *ont* must be inserted instead of *font*. Example by the adjective:

*Notre chambre est longue  
 de vingt pieds et large de  
 douze;*

By the substantive:

*Notre chambre a vingt pieds* Our room is twenty feet  
*de longueur et douze de* long and twelve broad.  
*largeur;*

When two substantives are joined together by a hyphen, both making a compound word in English, the

\* Read *épais*, adjective, *épaisseur*, substantive, and so of the others.

first of which denotes the *form* or *use* of the second, the latter must be placed before the former in French, and followed by the *dative* of this article à : ex.

*Un moulin à papier*, A paper-mill.

*Une boîte à poudre*, A powder-box.

### EXERCISES ON THIS RULE.

Gun - powder was invented by a monk.

*Canon, m. poudre, f. fut, v. inventée, p. p. par, p. moine, m.*

— The servant has lost the tinder-box, and  
*a, v. perdu, p. p. fusil, m.*

cannot light the candle. — If you go to  
*ne sauroit, v. allumer, v. chandelle, f. Si, c. allez, v.*

London to-morrow, bring me a toupee-  
*demain, adv. apportez, v. moi, pro. toupet, m.*

iron. — Have you seen the water-mill which  
*fer, m. avez, v. vu, p. p. qui, pro.*

my father has bought? — No, but I have  
*mon, pro. acheté, p. p. Non, adv. mais, c. ai, v.*

seen the wind-mill which your brother has built  
*vu, m. fait bâtir, v.*

at Greenwich. — I have found your sister's work-  
*à, p. trouvé, p. p. ouvrage, m.*

bag in the eating-room.  
*sac, m. dans, p. manger, m. chambre, f.*

### DECLENSION of UN, m. UNE, f. A or AN.

#### SINGULAR.

##### Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *un livre*, a book.

Gen. Abl. *d'un livre*, of or from a book.

Dat. *à un livre*, to a book.

##### Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *une plume*, a pen.

Gen. Abl. *d'une plume*, of or from a pen.

Dat. *à une plume*, to a pen.

## EXERCISES UPON THIS ARTICLE.

I have a hat and a sword.—She speaks of  
*ai, v. chapeau, m. épée, f. Elle, pro. parle, v.*  
 an officer. — He<sup>1</sup> has<sup>2</sup> given<sup>3</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to<sup>3</sup> a  
*officier, m. Il, pro. a, v. donné, p. p. le, pro.*  
 sailor<sup>6</sup>. — (There are) a bird and a cage.  
*matelot, m. Voilà, adv. oiseau, m. cage, f.*

It must be observed, that the English article A or AN, before nouns of MEASURE, WEIGHT, NUMBER, and a PART OF TIME, must be rendered in French by the definite article *le, la, les* : ex.

*Deux chelins le cent,* Two shillings a hundred.

And by the preposition *par*, used in the sense of EACH, EVERY, OF PER : ex.

*Je lui donne deux chelins* I give him two shillings a  
*par semaine,* week.

N. B. *A* or *an* is not to be expressed when it immediately precedes a noun in the nominative or accusative case, denoting title, dignity, office, business, or words which denote the gender or species of things ; and, lastly, after the verb *être*, to be, unless that verb be preceded by *ce* in the third person singular, or the above nouns be followed by one of the relative pronouns, *who, whom, which, &c.* or by an adjective in the superlative degree : ex.

*M. D—, membre de la* Mr. D—, a member of the  
*chambre des communes,* house of commons, spoke  
*parla beaucoup hier,* very much yesterday.

*J'ai lu Castor et Pollux,* I have read Castor and Pol-  
*opéra François,* lux, a French opera.

*Etes-vous Anglois?* Are you an Englishman?

*Non, M. je suis François,* No, Sir, I am a Frenchman.

*Sa sœur est marchande de* Her sister is a millener and  
*modes et son frère est* her brother is a tailor.  
*tailleur,*

## EXERCISES

## EXERCISES ON THESE RULES.

Barley sells for three shillings a  
*Orge, f. se vend, v. trois, adj. chelin, m.*  
 bushel. — That ale is worth six-pence  
*boisseau, m. Cette, pro. aile, f. vaut, v. sou, m.*  
 a pint. — Beef costs four pence a pound. —  
*pinte, f. Bœuf, m. coute, v. quatre, adj. livre, f.*  
 This lace cost a crown an ell — He  
*Cette, pro. dentelle, f. coute, v. écu, m. aune, f. Il, pro.*  
 sells his best cloth a guinea a yard. —  
*vend, v. son, pro. meilleur, adj. drap, m. guinée, f. verge, f.*  
 My master comes twice a week. — Bur-  
*Mon, pro. vient, v. deux fois, adv. semaine, f.*  
 gundy wine is sold nine shillings a bottle. — My  
*se vend, v. neuf, adj.*  
 uncle goes to France thrice a year. — She  
*oncle, m. va, v. trois fois, adv. on, m. Elle, pro.*  
 gives three shillings a day and ten pence a mile. —  
*donne, v. jour, m. mille, m.*  
 Are you a physician? — No, Sir, I am a  
*Etes, v. médecin, m. suis, v.*  
 surgeon. — Bristol, a sea-port, passes now  
*chirurgien, m. mer, f. port, m. passe, v. à présent, adv.*  
 for the second city of the kingdom of England. —  
*pour, p.*  
 The king made him a bishop. — Is she a  
*fit, v. le, pro. évêque, m. Est, v.*  
 duchess or a marchioness?  
*duchesse, f. marquise, f.*

## OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

RULE to form their FEMININE GENDER.

Many adjectives in *al* have no plural for their mas-  
 culine, as *conjugal*, *conjugal*; *fatal*, *fatal*; *filial*, *filial*;  
*D 3 natal,*



*natal*, *natal* ; *naval*, *naval* ; *total*, *total* ; and some few others.

Adjectives ending in *e* mute are of both genders : ex.

*Un jeune homme*, a young man.

*Une jeune femme*, a young woman.

Adjectives ending with one of the following letters, *d*, *t*, *l*, *h*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *z*, and *u*, form their feminine by adding an *e* mute : ex.

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Grand</i> ,	<i>grande</i> , great.
<i>Pol</i> ,	<i>polie</i> , polite.
<i>Aimé</i> ,	<i>aimée</i> , loved.
<i>Civil</i> ,	<i>civile</i> , civil.
<i>Demi</i> ,	<i>demie</i> , half.
<i>Nu</i> ,	<i>nue</i> , bare, naked.

These two last adjectives are indeclinable when they precede a substantive, but are declinable when they follow it : ex.

<i>Une demi-livre</i> ,	a half-pound.
<i>Une livre et demie</i> ,	a pound and a half.
<i>Nu tête</i> ,	bare-head.
<i>Nu pieds</i> ,	bare-foot.

There are a few ending in *an*, *as*, *el*, *il*, *eil*, *ien*, *in*, *is*, *et*, *is*, *on*, *os*, *ot*, and *ul*, that double the final letter, before an *e* mute, for the feminine : ex.

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Paysan</i> , countryman.	<i>Paysanne</i> , countrywoman.
<i>Gras</i> ,	<i>grasse</i> , fat.
<i>Gentil</i> ,	<i>gentille</i> , genteel.
<i>Eternel</i> ,	<i>eternelle</i> , eternal.
<i>Pareil</i> ,	<i>pareille</i> , alike.
<i>Chrétien</i> ,	<i>Chrétienne</i> , Christian.
<i>Epais</i> ,	<i>épaisse</i> , thick.
<i>Bon</i> ,	<i>bonne</i> , good.
<i>Gros</i> ,	<i>grosse</i> , big.
<i>Sot</i> ,	<i>folle</i> , foolish.

The following are very irregular, and cannot be comprised under any rule, *viz.*

Masc.

Masc.	Fem.	
<i>Beau, bel,*</i>	<i>belle,</i>	handsome, fine.
<i>Benin,</i>	<i>benigne,</i>	benign.
<i>Favori,</i>	<i>favorite,</i>	favourite.
<i>Fou, fol,*</i>	<i>folle,</i>	fool.
<i>Frais,</i>	<i>fraiche,</i>	fresh.
<i>Long,</i>	<i>longue,</i>	long.
<i>Malin,</i>	<i>maligne,</i>	malicious.
<i>Mou,</i>	<i>molle,</i>	soft.
<i>Nouveau, nouvel,*</i>	<i>nouvelle,</i>	new.
<i>Vieux, vieil,*</i>	<i>vieille,</i>	old.

Adjectives ending in *c* add *he* to the *c* for their feminine: ex.

Masc.	Fem.	
<i>Blanc,</i>	<i>blanche,</i>	white.
<i>Franc,</i>	<i>franche,</i>	sincere.
<i>Sec,</i>	<i>sèche,</i>	dry, &c.

The four following are excepted:

Masc.	Fem.	
<i>Caduc,</i>	<i>caduque,</i>	in decay.
<i>Grec,</i>	<i>Greque,</i>	Greek.
<i>Public,</i>	<i>publique,</i>	public.
<i>Turc,</i>	<i>Turque,</i>	Turkish.

Those ending in *f* change *f* into *ve* for the feminine: ex.

Masc.	Fem.	
<i>Bref,</i>	<i>brève,</i>	short.
<i>Naïf,</i>	<i>naïve,</i>	plain, ingenuous.
<i>Neuf,</i>	<i>neuve,</i>	new.
<i>Veuf,</i>	<i>veuve,</i>	widow.
<i>Vif,</i>	<i>vive,</i>	quick.

Adjectives ending in *x* change *x* into *se*: ex.

Masc.	Fem.	
<i>Douloureux,</i>	<i>douloureuse,</i>	dolorous, painful.
<i>Heureux,</i>	<i>heureuse,</i>	happy, &c.
<i>Jaloux,</i>	<i>jalouse,</i>	jealous.

\* *Bel, fol, nouvel, and vieil,* are used before substantives beginning with a vowel or *h* not aspirated.

The following are excepted:

Masc.	Fem.	
<i>Doux,</i>	<i>douce,</i>	sweet.
<i>Faux,</i>	<i>fausse,</i>	false.
<i>Perplex,</i>	<i>perplexé,</i>	perplexed.
<i>Préfix,</i>	<i>préfixe,</i>	prefixed.
<i>Roux,</i>	<i>roussé,</i>	reddish.

### DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

French adjectives must agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case: ex.

#### SINGULAR.

##### Masculine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Le bon livre,</i>	the good book.
Gen. Abl.	<i>du bon livre,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>au bon livre,</i>	to the good book.

##### PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Les bons livres,</i>	the good books.
Gen. Abl.	<i>des bons livres,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>aux bons livres,</i>	to the good books.

#### SINGULAR.

##### Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>La bonne plume,</i>	the good pen.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de la bonne plume,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>à la bonne plume,</i>	to the good pen.

##### PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Les bonnes plumes,</i>	the good pens.
Gen. Abl.	<i>des bonnes plumes,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>aux bonnes plumes,</i>	to the good pens.

As two or more substantives in the singular are equivalent to a plural, the verb and adjective, or participle past, must be put in the plural when they refer to two or more substantives in the singular, and that adjective or participle is to be put in the masculine, if those substantives be of different genders: ex.

*Le frère, la sœur, le neveu,* The brother, sister, ne-  
*et la nièce, sont tous* phew, and niece, are all  
*bons,* good.

*Le*

*Le roi, la reine, le prince, et la princesse, étoient sortis,* The king, queen, prince, and princess, were gone out.

But, when two or more substantives of different genders are immediately followed by an adjective or participle, the French language requires that adjective or participle to agree in gender and number with the last substantive; *except* those adjectives or participles implying *union* or *collection*, such as *joint*, *uni*, *réuni*, &c. which follow the foregoing rule.

*Il gouverne avec un pouvoir et une autorité absolue,* He governs with an *absolute* power and authority.  
*Elle laissa le coffre, le cabinet, et la chambre, ouverte,* She left the trunk, the closet, and the room, *open*.  
*J'ai trouvé les enfans, le père, et la mère, réunis,* I found the children, father, and mother, *united*.

#### THE PLACE OF THE ADJECTIVE IN A SENTENCE.

Some adjectives are always placed before their substantives, and others after them; but there is a kind of adjectives which may either precede or succeed their substantives, as the euphony of the sentence requires.

The following must be placed before:

<i>Beau,</i>	handsome, fine.	<i>Joli,</i>	pretty.
<i>Bon,</i>	good.	<i>Méchant,</i>	wicked.
<i>Brave,</i>	brave.	<i>Mauvais,</i>	bad.
<i>Galant,</i>	a well-bred man.	<i>Meilleur,</i>	better.
<i>Grand,</i>	great, tall.	<i>Petit,</i>	little, small.
<i>Gros,</i>	big, large.	<i>Saint,</i>	holy, faint.
<i>Honnête,</i>	honest, civil.	<i>Tout,</i>	all.
<i>Jeune,</i>	young.	<i>Vieux,</i>	old.

#### EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING ADJECTIVES.

I have seen a handsome lady who (was speaking) to an old gentleman. — He had a fine hat and a pretty sword. — Your little sister deserved

deserved



deserved a better fate. — Your father was a brave  
*méritoit, v. destin, m. étoit, v.*

general and a well-bred man. — I know a young  
*général, m. connois, v.*

man who has a good horse, but a bad stable. —  
*homme, m. a, v. cheval, m. écurie, f.*

He<sup>1</sup> has<sup>3</sup> lent<sup>4</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to<sup>5</sup> an honest<sup>6</sup> man. — The  
*prêté, p. p. le, pro.*

apostle Paul was a holy man. — My brother has  
*apôtre, m.*

bought a good watch. — You have lost all  
*acheté, p. p. montre, f. avez, v. perdu, p. p.*

your money.

Some adjectives have very different meanings, according as they are placed before or after their substantive; as, *une femme sage*, a wise woman; *une sage femme*, a midwife: and *une grosse femme*, a big woman; *une femme grosse*, a woman with child, &c. A little practice will remove many apparent difficulties.

Adjectives, expressing names of *nations, colour, figure, form, taste, bearing, and touching*, those that denote *natural qualities*, together with those ending in *ile, ie*, and *ique*, as also the *participles*, when used adjectively, must be placed after their substantives.

### EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING RULE.

You have an English hat, and she has  
*Anglois, adj. chapeau, m. elle, pro. a, v.*

a French gown. — He reads an Italian pro-  
*François, adj. robe, f. Il, pro. lit, v. Italien, adj. pro-*

verb. — I like the German tongue, and a  
*verbe, m. aime, v. Allemande, adj. langue, f.*

Spanish dress. — (It is) a square place. —  
*Espagnol, adj. habillement, m. C'est, v. carré, adj. place, f.*

She likes sweet wine. — Your sister has  
*Elle, pro. aime, v. doux, adj. vin, m. Votre, pro. sœur, f. a, v.*

an

an

an harmonious voice. — I have bought a white  
*harmonieux, adj. voix, f. acheté, p.p. blanc, adj.*  
 gown and a black cloak. — You have a faithful  
*noir, adj. mantelet, m. fidèle, adj.*  
 servant. — I eat green peas with  
*domestique, m. et f. mange, v. vert, adj. pois, m. avec, p.*  
 boiled mutton. — Bring me a pound and a half of  
*bouilli, p.p. mouton, m. demi, adj.*  
 cherries and half a pound of currants. — We  
*cerises, f. groseilles, f. Nous, pro.*  
 had a kind reception, and we played at  
*côtes, v. favorable, adj. accueil, m. jouâmes, v. à, p.*  
 a diverting game. — He lives in a  
*divertissant, adj. jeu, m. Il, pro. demeure, v. dans, p.*  
 cold country. — You have left the windows  
*froid, adj. pays, m. laissés, p.p. fenêtre, f.*  
 and the door open. — Will you have a bit  
*porte, f. Voulez, v. morceau, m.*  
 of roasted chicken? — She prefers a  
*rôti, p.p. poulet, m. Elle, pro. préfère, v.*  
 round table. — Do you<sup>2</sup> read<sup>1</sup> the<sup>3</sup> Punic<sup>5</sup>  
*rond, adj. table, f. lisez, v. Punique, adj.*  
 war?<sup>4</sup> — He has made a rash vow. —  
*guerre, f. fait, p.p. téméraire, adj. vœu, m.*  
 Your sister is an agreeable lady. — I like  
*est, v. agréable, adj. dame, f. aime, v.*  
 a grey stuff. — (It was) really a tragical  
*gris, adj. étoffe, f. C'étoit, v. réellement, adv. tragique, adj.*  
 history.  
*histoire, f.*

When two or more adjectives belong to one sub-  
 stantive, the surest way is to place them after it, with  
 the conjunction *et*, and, before the last; and, if an ad-  
 jective be used in a sentence without a substantive, this  
 adjective

adjective must always be rendered in French by the masculine gender.

### EXERCISES ON THIS RULE.

We have a just, wise, and bountiful, king. — Mr. Brown's daughter *faisant*, adj. *Monsieur*, m. *Brun*, m. *filles*, f. is with a sincere and generous lady. — *est*, v. *sincère*, adj. *généreux*, adj. I have a scholar of a solid, bright, and lively, genius. — The wicked shall be punished. *vis*, adj. *esprit*, m. *méchant*, adj. *seront*, v. *puni*, p. p. — Miss Preston is a young, handsome, and well-shaped, lady. — She has married a sober, virtuous, and amiable, man. — The good shall be rewarded. *Mademoiselle*, f. *est*, v. *bien-fait*, adj. *épouse*, p. p. *sobre*, adj. *vertueux*, adj. *aimable*, adj. *seront*, v. *recompensé*, p. p.

### DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

Adjectives and adverbs are the only kind of words that will admit of different degrees of more or less in the several qualities of persons or things.

There are two degrees of comparison:

1. *Le comparatif*, the comparative.
2. *Le superlatif*, the superlative.

Some grammarians admit of another degree, which they call *positive*; but this is merely an adjective, used in its simple signification, without expressing any increase or diminution: ex. *joli*, pretty; *aimable*, lovely.

The *comparative* refers to some other person or thing, and shews its equality, excess, or defect; it is therefore of three sorts:

1. *Le comparatif d'égalité,* The comparative by equality.
2. *Le comparatif d'excès,* The comparative by excess.
3. *Le comparatif de défaut,* The comparative by defect.

The comparative by equality is formed by placing the adverbs *autant*, as much, or *aussi*, so, before an adjective: ex.

*Mon frère est aussi savant que vous,* My brother is *as* learned as you.  
*Alexandre étoit aussi ambitieux que César,* Alexander was *as* ambitious as Cæsar.  
*Ma sœur a autant\* d'argent que vous,* My sister has *as much* money as you.

The comparative by excess is formed by placing the adverb *plus*, more, before an adjective: ex.

*Mademoiselle A. est plus savante et plus belle que Mademoiselle B.* Miss A. is *more* learned and *more* handsome than Miss B.  
*Sa cousine a plus\* de livres que vous,* Her cousin has *more* books than you.

The comparative by defect is formed by placing the adverb *moins*, less, before an adjective, or *tant*, so much, or *si*, so, with the negation *ne-pas*, or *point*, before them: ex.

*Votre cousine est moins noble que vous,* Your cousin is *less* noble than you.  
*Il a moins\* d'esprit que sa sœur,* He has *less* wit than his sister.  
*Mon père n'est pas si riche que le vôtre, mais il n'a pas tant\* d'amour-propre,* My father is *not so* rich as yours, but he has *not so much* self-love.

\* From the above instances it may be seen, that, when the adverbs *tant*, *plus*, *moins*, and *tant*, are immediately followed by a substantive, that substantive must be preceded by *de*. The pupil will at the same time observe, that, in French as well as in English, the conjunction *que*, as or than, is always the two terms of the comparison.



**N. B.** The three following adjectives are comparatives by themselves: *meilleur*, better; *pire*, worse; and *moindre*, less; which signify *plus bon*, *plus mauvais*, *plus petit*.

The *superlative* expresses the highest degree of any quality. There are two kinds of superlatives: — The *relative*, which expresses the quality of a person or thing above all others of the same kind. In this case, one of the following articles, *le, la, les, de, du, de la, des, à, au, à la, aux*, precedes the adverbs *plus*, most; *meux*, best; *moins*, least; before an adjective; or the adjectives *meilleur*, best; *moindre*, least; *pire*, worse: ex.

*Votre sœur est la plus belle* Your sister is *the* handsomest (or the most handsome) and *the* best woman in town.  
*et la meilleure femme de la ville,*

The *absolute* simply expresses the quality of a person or thing in its highest degree. This happens when one of the adverbs *très, fort, bien*, very; *infiniment*, infinitely; precedes an adjective: ex.

*Votre oiseau est très, fort, or bien, joli,* Your bird is *very* pretty.

*Dieu est infiniment bon,* God is *infinitely* good.

When any of the comparatives by excess or defect are preceded by one of the possessive pronouns *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur*, &c. they become superlatives: ex.

*Vous êtes mon meilleur ami,* You are *my* best friend.

## EXERCISES UPON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

You<sup>1</sup> are<sup>2</sup> <sup>not</sup> so<sup>3</sup> dutiful<sup>4</sup> as<sup>5</sup>  
*êtes, v. ne-pas, adv. obéissant, adj.*  
your<sup>6</sup> brother<sup>7</sup>. — Lucia is handsomer, but  
*votre, pro. frère, m. Lucie, f. est, v. mais, c.*  
more proud, than her sister. — I am  
*orgueilleux, adj. sa, pro. sœur, f. Je, pro. suis, v.*  
as tall as you. — My father is as rich  
*haut, adj. vous, pro. Mon, pro. père, m. riche, adj.*

as yours. — His sister is more covetous than he. —  
*le père, pro. Sa, pro. avare, adj. lui, pro.*

Nothing is pleasanter to the mind than the light  
*Rienne, adv. agréable, adj. esprit, m. lumière, f.*

of truth. — She is less polite than her  
*vérité, f. Elle, pro. est, v. poli, adj. sa, pro.*

daughter, but her daughter (is not) so revenge-  
*filles, f. mais, c. n'est pas, v. vindica-*

ful as she. — I am your most humble servant.  
*tif, adj. elle, pro. humble, adj. serviteur, m.*

— Miss D. (has not) so much wit as her sister,  
*n'a pas, v. esprit, m.*

but she has as much liveliness and is as amiable  
*mais, c. vivacité, f.*

as she. — The 'richer' they<sup>2</sup> are<sup>3</sup> the more<sup>5</sup>  
*riche, adj. ils, pro. sont, v.*

covetous<sup>8</sup> they<sup>6</sup> are<sup>7</sup>. — My friend has a very  
*avare, adj. Mon, pro. ami, m. a, v.*

beautiful country - house. — Nothing is more  
*beau, adj. campagne, f. maison, f.*

lovely than virtue, and nothing is more desi-  
*aimable, adj. dési-*

vable than wisdom. — Paris (is not) so populous  
*vable, adj. sagesse, f. peuple, adj.*

as London. — My best friend is dead. — My  
*Londres. mort, adj. Ma, pro.*

daughter is taller than your son by two inches. —  
*filles, m. de deux*

Virtue is the most precious thing in the world. —  
*précieux, adj. chose, f. du monde, m.*

The lion is the strongest and the most courageous  
*fort, adj. courageux, adj.*

of all animals. — (There is) the handsomest lady  
*animal, m. Voilà, adv.*

in London. — She has as much virtue and good sense  
*de* *sens, m.*

as beauty. — Miss P. is the mildest, politest, and  
*doux, adj. poli, adj.*

most affable, of all her sisters. — Your brother is  
*affable, adj. ses, pro.*

taller than you by the whole head. — If France  
*tout, adj. tête, f. Si, c.*

were as rich as England, (it would be) the best  
*étoit, v. ce seroit, v.*

country in the world.\*  
*pays, m.*

## OF NUMBERS.

There are two kinds of numbers: 1<sup>st</sup>, The *absolute*,  
 which simply relates the number of the things spoken  
 of, viz.

<i>Un,</i>	One.
<i>Deux,</i>	Two.
<i>Trois,</i>	Three.
<i>Quatre,</i>	Four.
<i>Cinq,</i>	Five.
<i>Six,</i>	Six.
<i>Sept,</i>	Seven.
<i>Huit,</i>	Eight.
<i>Neuf,</i>	Nine.
<i>Dix,</i>	Ten.
<i>Onze,</i>	Eleven.
<i>Douze,</i>	Twelve.
<i>Treize,</i>	Thirteen.
<i>Quatorze,</i>	Fourteen.

\* It may be observed, in some of these examples, that the preposition  
*en*, following an adjective in the superlative degree, must be rendered in  
 French by one of these articles, *de, du, de la, des*, according to the gen-  
 der and number of the substantive to which it belongs. The preposition  
*à*, when it follows an adjective in the comparative degree, is rendered by  
*de* only.

*Quinze,*

*Quinze,*  
*Seize,*  
*Dix-sept,*  
*Dix-huit,*  
*Dix-neuf,*  
*Vingt,*  
*Vingt et un,*  
*Vingt-deux,*  
*Vingt-trois, &c.*  
*Trente,*  
*Trente et un,*  
*Trente-deux, &c.*  
*Quarante,*  
*Cinquante,*  
*Soixante,*  
*Soixante et un,*  
*Soixante et deux, &c.*  
*Soixante et dix,*  
*Soixante et onze, &c.*  
*Quatre-vingts,*  
*Quatre-vingt-un,*  
*Quatre-vingt-deux, &c.*  
*Quatre-vingt-dix, &c.*  
*Cent,*  
*Cent un, &c.*  
*Deux cens,*  
*Trois cens, &c.*  
*Neuf cens,*  
*Mille, mil,\**  
*Deux mille,*  
*Trois mille, &c.*  
*Cent mille, &c.*  
*Neuf cens mille,*  
*Un million,*

Fifteen.  
 Sixteen.  
 Seventeen.  
 Eighteen.  
 Nineteen.  
 Twenty.  
 Twenty-one.  
 Twenty-two.  
 Twenty-three, &c.  
 Thirty.  
 Thirty-one.  
 Thirty-two, &c.  
 Forty.  
 Fifty.  
 Sixty.  
 Sixty-one.  
 Sixty-two, &c.  
 Seventy.  
 Seventy-one, &c.  
 Eighty.  
 Eighty-one.  
 Eighty-two, &c.  
 Ninety, &c.  
 A hundred.  
 A hundred and one, &c.  
 Two hundred.  
 Three hundred, &c.  
 Nine hundred.  
 A thousand.  
 Two thousand.  
 Three thousand, &c.  
 A hundred thousand, &c.  
 Nine hundred thousand.  
 A million.

These absolute numbers are declined with the article: indefinite, *de*, *à*, and are always placed before the substantive to which they are joined: *ex.*

\* Mentioning the date of the year, we must write *mil*, and not *mille*: *ex. L'an mil sept cens soixante et dix-neuf, 1779.*



<i>Trois hommes,</i>	Three men.
<i>Cinquante femmes,</i>	Fifty women, &c.

They are invariable in their form, except *vingt*, twenty; *cent*, a hundred; and *million*, a million; which take an *s* in their plural.

It must be observed, that, when the number *un*, one, comes after *vingt*, twenty; *trente*, thirty; *quarante*, forty, &c. the substantive, relating to those two numbers taken together, is put in the singular in French, though in the plural in English: ex.

<i>Vingt et un homme,</i>	One-and-twenty men.
<i>Trente et un écu,</i>	One-and-thirty crowns.
<i>Quarante et un jour,</i>	One-and-forty days, &c.

And, when the noun singular, in French, immediately following the *unit*, is attended by an adjective, that adjective must be put in the plural: ex.

<i>Mon frère a vingt et un an accomplis,</i>	My brother is full one-and-twenty years old.
<i>Voilà trente et une guinée bien comptées,</i>	There are one-and-thirty guineas well told.

However, custom will have us say,

<i>Vingt et un chevaux,</i>	One-and-twenty horses.
<i>Trente et un volumes,</i>	One-and-thirty volumes.

2d. The *ordinal numbers*. — This class of numerals, besides the simple notation, signifies the order or rank of things, viz.

<i>Le premier</i> or <i>unième,</i>	The first.
<i>Le second</i> or <i>deuxième,</i>	The second.
<i>Le troisième,</i>	The third.
<i>Le quatrième,</i>	The fourth.
<i>Le cinquième,</i>	The fifth.
<i>Le sixième,</i>	The sixth.
<i>Le septième,</i>	The seventh.
<i>Le huitième,</i>	The eighth.

<i>Le neuvième,</i>	<i>The ninth.</i>
<i>Le dixième,</i>	<i>The tenth.</i>
<i>Le onzième,*</i>	<i>The eleventh.</i>
<i>Le douzième,</i>	<i>The twelfth.</i>
<i>Le treizième,</i>	<i>The thirteenth.</i>
<i>Le quatorzième,</i>	<i>The fourteenth.</i>
<i>Le quinzième,</i>	<i>The fifteenth.</i>
<i>Le seizième,</i>	<i>The sixteenth.</i>
<i>Le dix-septième,</i>	<i>The seventeenth.</i>
<i>Le dix-huitième,</i>	<i>The eighteenth.</i>
<i>Le dix-neuvième,</i>	<i>The nineteenth.</i>
<i>Le vingtième,</i>	<i>The twentieth.</i>
<i>Le vingt et unième,</i>	<i>The twenty-first.</i>
<i>Le vingt-deuxième, &amp;c.</i>	<i>The twenty-second, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Le trentième,</i>	<i>The thirtieth.</i>
<i>Le trente-deuxième, &amp;c.</i>	<i>The thirty-second, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Le quarantième,</i>	<i>The fortieth.</i>
<i>Le cinquantième,</i>	<i>The fiftieth.</i>
<i>Le soixantième,</i>	<i>The sixtieth.</i>
<i>Le soixante et dixième,</i>	<i>The seventieth.</i>
<i>Le quatre-vingtième,</i>	<i>The eightieth.</i>
<i>Le centième,</i>	<i>The hundredth.</i>
<i>Le cent unième,</i>	<i>The hundred and first.</i>
<i>Le cent deuxième, &amp;c.</i>	<i>The hundred &amp; second, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Le deux centième,</i>	<i>The two hundredth.</i>
<i>Le millième,</i>	<i>The thousandth.</i>

These ordinal numbers are declined with the article definite, *le, la, &c.* and are placed before their substantives: ex.

<i>Le premier jour du mois,</i>	<i>The first day of the month.</i>
<i>La cinquième dame,</i>	<i>The fifth lady.</i>

Speaking of sovereigns, we use the *absolute number* in French, though the *ordinal* be used in English; but we place it after the substantive, as in English, without expressing the article *the*: ex.

<i>Louis seize,</i>	<i>Lewis the sixteenth.</i>
<i>Henri quatre,</i>	<i>Henry the fourth.</i>

\* No elision is to be made in the article before *onze, onzième*; for, we say, *le, du, au, la, de la, à la, &c. onze, onzième.*

However,

However, common usage requires us to say,  
*Henri premier,* Henry the first;  
*George second,* George the second;  
 and not *Henri un, George deux.*

# RECAPITULATORY OR PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES UPON ALL THE PRECEDING RULES.

Ignorance is the mother of admiration, error,  
*Ignorance, f. est, v. mère, f. admiration, f. er-*  
*reur, f. superstition, f. avare, adj. méprisent, v.*

poor. — Humility is the basis of Christian virtues.  
*pauvre, adj. Humilité, f. base, f. Chrétien, adj. vertu, f.*

— Pride is generally the effect of ignorance.  
*Orgueil, m. effet, m.*

— Give me some bread, meat, turnips, and  
*Donnez, v. moi, pro. navet, m.*

water. — Merit and favour are the two springs  
*Mérite, m. faveur, f. font, v. source, f.*

of envy. — Interest, pleasure, and glory, are the  
*envie, f. Intérêt, m.*

three motives of the actions and conduct of men. —  
*motif, m. conduite, f.*

Is it not Peter's book? — Your father  
*Est, v. ce, pro. ne-pas Votre, pro.*

is gone to London. — The father's house and  
*allé, p. p. maison, f.*

the son's garden (are adjoining). — He found  
*filz, m. jardin, m. se joignent, v. trouva, v.*

the windows and the door shut. — Truth is  
*fermé, p. p. Vérité, f.*

the bond of union and the basis of human hap-  
*lien, m. union, f. humain, adj. bon-*

piness;

pinels; without it, (there is no) confidence in  
*heur, m. sans, p. elle, pro. il n'y a point confiance, f. d'ans, p.*  
 friendship, and no security in promises. — The  
*amitié, f. point, adv. sûreté, f. promesse, f.*

love of liberty and independence is the character  
*amour, m. liberté, f. est, v. caractère, m.*

of noble minds. — Iron, steel, and brass;  
*âme, f. Fer, m. acier, m. cuivre, m.*

are more useful than gold and silver. —  
*font, v. utile, adj. or, m. argent, m.*

I have seen the inside of the church. —  
*ai, v. vu, p. p. dedans, m. église, f.*

Bring me my powder-box and my toupee-iron.  
*ma, pro. mon, pro.*

—I take a lesson three times a week. — Have  
*prends, v. Ayez, v.*

prudence and patience, and you (will have)  
*vous, pro. aurez, v.*

success. — A good conscience is to the soul  
*succès, m. conscience, f. âme, f.*

what health is to the body. — Merit and vir-  
*ce que, pro. santé, f. corps, m.*

tue are the only source of true nobility.  
*unique, adj. véritable, adj. noblesse, f.*

—Religion, commerce, and arms, are proper  
*Religion, f. commerce, m. armes, f. propre, adj.*

instructions for a young prince. — Her father has  
*instruction, f. à a, v.*

been made a knight of the order of the  
*été, p. p. fait, p. p. chevalier, m. ordre, m.*

Bath. — This cloth is equal to silk. —  
*Bain, m. Ce, pro. drap, m. comparable, adj. soie, f.*

I see the coast of England. — A forest twenty  
*vois, v. côte, f. forêt, f.*

miles



miles long and eleven wide. — The example  
*mille, m. exemple, m.*

of a good life is a lesson for the rest of  
*vie, f. leçon, f. pour, p. reste, m.*

mankind. — Lewis the sixteenth was the grandson  
*genre humain, m. Louis, m. petit fils, m.*

of Lewis the fifteenth. — William, surnamed  
*Guillaume, m. surnommé, p. p.*

the conqueror, king of England and duke of  
*conquérant, m. duc, m.*

Normandy, was one of the greatest generals  
*Normandie, f. étoit, v. grand, adj. général, m.*

of the eleventh century. He (was born) at Falaise,  
*siècle, m. naquit, v. à, p.*

and was the natural son of Robert, duke of  
*naturel, adj. fils, m.*

Normandy, and Arlotte, a furrier's daughter. —  
*foureur, m. fille, f.*

Mrs. Nelson's servant knows the price  
*Madame, f. servante, f. sait, v. prix, m.*

of all the provisions. — Thomas was  
*tout, adj. denrée, f.*

formerly a musician, now he is a  
*autrefois, adv. musicien, m. à-présent, adv.*

dancing - master; to - morrow he will be a  
*danse, f. maître, m. demain, adv. sera, v.*

painter. — This water is very agreeable to  
*peintre, m. Cette, pro. agréable, adj.*

the smell. — We (are going) to Coxheath  
*odorat, m. Nous, pro. allons, v.*

to see the camp. — Bring us good wine,  
*voir, v. camp, m. Apportez, v. vin, m.*

good beer, and the oil - bottle. — The front  
*bière, f. façade, f.*

of

of the king's palace (is not) so beautiful as  
*roi, m. palais, m. n'est pas, v.*

I thought. — Generosity excites admiration. —  
*croyois, v. Générosité, f. excite, v. admiration, f.*

The queen of France is very young. — Charles the  
*reine, f. est, v.*

second, the son of Philip the fourth, the grand-son  
*Philippe petit, adj.*

of Philip the third, and the great-grand-child of  
*arrière-petit-fils*

Philip the second, left his kingdom to Philip  
*laissa, v. son, pro.*

the fifth. — The inhabitants of the city of Dublin  
*habitant, m. ville, f.*

have presented a petition to the king. — It  
*ont, v. présenté, p.p. adresse, f. Elle, pro.*

was signed by one-and-twenty knights and  
*étoit, v. signé, p.p. par, p.*

above two hundred citizens. — Good cider is  
*plus, adv. citoyen, m. cidre, m.*

preferable to bad wine. — He has many  
*préférable, adj. Il, pro. a, v. bien, adv.*

children and plenty of money. — The longer  
*beaucoup, adv. argent, m. long, adj.*

the day is, the shorter is the night. — You  
*jour, m. court, adj. nuit, f. Vous, pro.*

have a fine hat. — Shame is a mixture of the  
*avez, v. Honte, f. mélange, m.*

grief and fear which infamy causes. —  
*chagrin, m. crainte, f. que, pro. infamie, f. cause, v.*

Pride and vanity are often the source of the  
*vanité, f. souvent, adv.*

misfortunes of mankind. — We have good  
*malheur, m. Nous, pro. avons, v.*

bread,

bread, excellent meat, and very large fishes. —  
*excellent, adj. gros, adj. poisson, m.*

(Is there) any beer in the cellar? — Mrs. B—  
*Y a-t-il dans, p. cave, f.*

is a good, virtuous, prudent, and generous, lady;  
*vertueux, adj. dame, f.*

she has a daughter as beautiful as an angel. —  
*elle, pro. a, v. ange, m.*

Pindarus (was born) at Thebes, a city of Greece.  
*Pindare, m. naquit, v. à, p. Grèce, f.*

— The pleasure of the mind is greater than the  
*plaisir, m. esprit, m.*

pleasure of the body; and the diseases of the  
*corps, m. maladie, f.*

mind are more pernicious than the diseases of  
*sont, v. pernicieux, adj.*

the body. — Health, honours, and fortune, united  
*Santé, f. uni, p. p.*

together, cannot satisfy the heart of  
*ensemble, adv. ne peuvent, v. satisfaire, v. cœur, m.*

man. — Miss W—'s father, a banker in the  
*banquier, m. dans, p.*

Strand, is one of the richest men in town, but she  
*Strand, m. mais, c.*

is prouder and more haughty than if she were  
*orgueilleux, adj. hautain, adj. étoit, v.*

the handsomest woman in Europe. — Hypocrisy is a

homage which vice pays to virtue. —  
*hommage, m. que, pro: vice, m. rend, v.*

Give me a knife and fork. — My father has  
*couteau, m. fourchette, f.*

bought one-and-thirty fine grey horses. — (He is)  
*acheté, p. p. gris, adj. C'est, v.*

an intrepid man, and a man of honour and probity.  
*intrépide, adj. probité, f.*

—Mr. C— has a very prudent wife, and the most  
*a, v. prudent, adj.*

faithful, industrious, and honest, servant in the  
*fidèle, adj. industrieux, adj. bonnête, adj. \**

town.—He found beauty, youth, riches, wisdom,  
*trouva, v. jeunesse, f.*

and even virtue, united in her person.—  
*même, adv. réuni, p.p. sa, pro.*

Thomas has discretion, but he has no wit.—  
*a, v. discrétion, f. mais ne-point, adv. esprit, m.*

They have a quantity of apples and pears.—Vienna,  
*Ils, pro. ont, v. quantité, f. Vienne, f.*

the capital of the empire of Germany, is a fine city.—  
*Allemagne, f.*

The rich, the poor, the young, the old, the learned,  
*savant, adj.*

and the ignorant, are all subject to death.—True  
*ignorant, adj. sujet, adj. mort, f. Vrai, adj.*

friends are as rare as good melons.—The  
*ami, m. sont, v. rare, adj. melon, m.*

famous mine of Potosi, in Peru, is above two  
*fameux, adj. mine, f. Pérou, m. plus de, adv.*

hundred and fifty fathoms deep.—Henry the first, king  
*toise, f.*

of England, died the richest prince in Europe.—  
*mourut, v. \**

Paul is taller than you by an inch, but  
*haut, adj. \* pouce, m. mais, c.*

Mrs. Nichol's brother is the tallest of all.  
*Madame, f. frère, m. tout, adj.*

\* See the remarks on the prepositions *en* and *à* in the note, page 40.



## S E C T. III

### O F P R O N O U N S.

There are seven sorts of PRONOUNS :

- |                                      |                         |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>Les Pronoms personnels,</i>    | Pronouns personal.      |
| 2. <i>Les Pronoms conjonctifs,</i>   | Pronouns conjunctive.   |
| 3. <i>Les Pronoms possessifs,</i>    | Pronouns possessive.    |
| 4. <i>Les Pronoms démonstratifs,</i> | Pronouns demonstrative. |
| 5. <i>Les Pronoms relatifs,</i>      | Pronouns relative.      |
| 6. <i>Les Pronoms interrogatifs,</i> | Pronouns interrogative. |
| 7. <i>Les Pronoms indéfinis,</i>     | Pronouns indefinite.    |

They have their genders, numbers, and cases.

#### O F P R O N O U N S P E R S O N A L.

*Pronouns personal* are those which directly denote the persons and supply the place of them.

There are three persons.

The first is the person that speaks : ex.

<i>Je parle,</i>	I speak.
<i>Nous parlons,</i>	We speak.

The second is the person spoken to : ex.

<i>Tu parles,</i>	Thou speakest.
<i>Vous parlez,</i>	You speak.

The third is the person spoken of : ex.

<i>Il or elle parle,</i>	He or she speaks.
<i>Ils or elles parlent,</i>	They speak.

Both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Je or moi, I.</i>	<i>Nous, we.</i>
<i>Tu or toi, thou.</i>	<i>Vous, you or ye.</i>

Masculine.

<i>Il or lui, he, it.</i>	<i>Ils or eux, they.</i>
---------------------------	--------------------------

Feminine.

## Feminine.

*Elle*, she, it.*Elles*, they.

These pronouns are never to be used but as nominatives to the verbs. The rest are declined with the article indefinite: *ex.*

## First Person for both Genders.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

G.Ab. *de moi*, of or from me. *de nous*, of or from us.Dat. *à moi*, to me. *à nous*, to us.Acc. *moi*, me. *nous*, us.

## Second Person for both Genders.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

G.A. *de toi*, of or from thee. *de vous*, of or from you.Dat. *à toi*, to thee. *à vous*, to you.Acc. *toi*, thee. *vous*, you.

## Third Person.

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

## Feminine.

G.A. *de lui*, of or from him. *d'elle*, of or from her.\*Dat. *à lui*, to him. *à elle*, to her.Acc. *lui*, him. *elle*, her.

## PLURAL.

## Masculine.

## Feminine.

G.A. *d'eux*, of or from them. *d'elles*, of or from them.Dat. *à eux*, to them. *à elles*, to them.Acc. *eux*, them. *elles*, them.

There are two other pronouns of the third person, viz.

## SINGULAR and PLURAL. Both Genders.

1st. Gen. Abl. *de soi*, of or from one's self, himself, herself, themselves.

Dat. *à soi*, to one's self, himself, &c.Acc. *soi*, one's self, himself, &c.

\* *HER*, when standing by itself, is to be rendered by *elle*, *la*, or *lui*; but, if joined to a noun, by the pronoun possessive, *son*, *sa*, *ses*.

*N. B.* Though it has been said, that the personal pronouns are used for the names of persons, it must not thence be concluded, that they are never employed for the names of animals or inanimate objects; this seldom happens in the first and second persons, but the personal pronouns, *il, elle; ils, elles;* may denote every object in nature, either animate or inanimate.

2d. The GENERAL AND INDEFINITE PRONOUN *on*, one, is always considered as a nominative of the masculine gender, and can never be used (in French) but in the singular, though the meaning be plural: ex. when we say,

*On chante, on mange,* They sing, they eat;  
i. e. some men or women sing, eat.

The word *même*, self, is very often joined to the personal pronouns, to denote, in a more especial manner, the person spoken of: as,

<i>Moi-même,</i>	Myself,
<i>Lui-même,</i>	Himself,
<i>Elle-même,</i>	Herself, &c.

and are declined as above.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE PRONOUNS, *Je* and *Moi*;  
*Tu* and *Toi*; *Il* and *Lui*; *Ils* and *Eux*.

*Je* and *Moi* are used in two different senses, though both in the nominative case. — *Je* is always followed or preceded immediately by a verb to which it is the nominative case, and has no need to be joined to any other pronoun; but *moi* always requires to be followed by one pronoun or more either expressed or understood: ex.

<i>Qui a pris mon livre?</i>	Who took my book?
<i>C'est moi,</i>	It is I.

That is,

<i>C'est moi qui l'ai pris,</i>	It is I who took it.
---------------------------------	----------------------

*Moi* must be used instead of *je* before an infinitive mood, or at the end of a sentence, when it is intended to express something sudden, as *grief, surprise, &c.* ex.

*Moi*

*Moi lui parler!*

*I speak to him or her!*

In short, *moi* must always be used in French as *I* in English, when it is followed by the pronoun relative, *who* or *whom*, or is preceded by the verb *être*, to be, used impersonally, as *c'est*, it is; *c'étoit*, it was, &c. ex.

*Moi qui vous aime,*

*I who love you.*

*C'est moi qui dois y aller,*

*It is I who am to go there.*

And, lastly, *moi* is used whenever any difference or distinction is intended between persons or things, in which case it must be immediately followed by *je*: ex.

*Monsieur de la Tour commandoit l'infanterie, et moi, je commandois la cavalerie.*

*Mr. de la Tour commanded the foot, and I commanded the horse.*

In all cases mentioned in this rule, *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, *aux*, must be used instead of *je*, *tu*, *il*, and *ils*.

#### OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are called *conjunctive*, because they are always joined to some verb by which they are governed, and are generally used for the dative or accusative cases of the personal pronouns. There are three persons in the conjunctive, as in the personal, which are,

For the first Person, both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Dat. or Ac. *Moi, moi,\** me, or to me, *Nous, us, or to us,*  
for *à moi*, or *moi.* for *à nous*, or *nous.*

For the second, both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Dat. or Ac. *Toi, toi,\** thee, or to thee, *Vous, you, or to you,*  
for *à toi*, or *toi.* for *à vous*, or *vous.*

For the third.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Dat. *Lui,* } him, it, or to him, to it,  
Acc. *Le,* }  
for *à lui*, or *lui.*

\* *Moi* and *toi* must be used, instead of *me* or *te*, after the second person singular or plural of the imperative mood, conjugated without a negative.



## Feminine.

Dat. *Lui,* } her, it, or to her, to it,  
 Acc. *La,* }  
 for *à elle,* or *elle.*

## PLURAL.

## Both Genders.

Dat. *Leur,* } them, to them,  
 Acc. *Les,* }  
 for *à eux,* m. *à elles,* f. *aux,* m. *elles,* f.  
 Dat. or Ac. *Se,* one's self, himself, herself, themselves,  
 for *à soi,* or *soi.*

Five of these pronouns are used for the dative or accusative case, and are of both genders, viz.

*Me* or *moi,* *te* or *toi,* *nous,* *vous,* *se:* ex.

*Vous me parlez,* You speak to me.

*Il vous croit,* He believes you.

*Vous me priez de,* &c. You desire me to, &c.

In the first example, *me* is the dative case, because it may be turned by *à moi,* to me; in the second, *vous* is the accusative, &c.

*Lui* and *leur,* when applied to animated beings, are used in the dative only, and are of both genders: ex.

*Je lui parle,* I speak to him or to her.

*Vous leur écrivez,* You write to them.

The three others are used for the accusative, and may be applied either to things animate or inanimate, viz.

*Le,* masc. him, it; *la,* fem. her, it; and *les,* masc. and fem. them: ex.

*Je le vois tous les jours,* I see him every day.

*Je le sais,* I know it.

*Nous la connoissons,* We know her.

*Il les enverra ce soir,* He will send them to-night.

There are two other conjunctive pronouns, commonly called particles relative, or supplying pronouns. They are *en* and *y.*

*En* always denotes a genitive or ablative, and relates to some object mentioned before; it is rendered in English

English by *of* or *from* *him, her, it, them; about him, her, it, &c. with or without him, her, it, &c. at it, &c. for it, &c. upon it, &c. any, none, some, some of, &c. thence, thereof; and sometimes it is elegantly understood in English, though it must absolutely be expressed in French: ex.*

*Nous en parlons,* We speak of him, of her, of it, of them, about him, about her, about it, or about them.

*J'en suis fâché,* I am sorry for it.

*Donnez-lui en,* Give him some.

*Lui en avez-vous porté?* Did you carry her or him any?

*Ne lui en envoyez pas,* Send her or him none.

*Nous en venons,* We come from it or thence.

In the three last sentences but one, it should be observed, that the pronouns *of it* or *of them* are understood, in English, according to the object or objects mentioned before.

*Y* is used for the dative only; it is Englished by *to it, to them, of it, in it, upon it, thither, there, &c.* and very often not expressed in English, though it must be in French: ex.

*Nous n'y pensons plus,* We do not think of it any more.

It is the same with *le*, which, in English, is either not expressed or rendered by *so*; it is indeclinable in French, and prevents the repetition of one or more words: ex.

*Etes-vous riche?* Are you rich?

*Non, je ne le suis pas,* No, I am not.

In this last sentence, *le* is used to avoid the repetition of the word *riche*.

*N. B.* It must be observed, that the following pronouns, *me, te, se, le, la, and les*, can never be used after a preposition; as we cannot say, *j'étois avec le, avec la*, I was with him, with her; but we must use the personal pronouns, *moi, toi, soi, lui, elle, and eux, or elles*, and say, *j'étois avec lui, avec elle, &c.*

## EXERCISES

# EXERCISES UPON THE TWO FOREGOING PRONOUNS.

The *pronoun personal* may be placed before or after the verb, agreeably to the English construction: ex.

*Je parle,* I speak.  
*Avons-nous parlé?* Have we spoken? &c.

But the *conjunctive pronouns* are to be placed (in French) before the verbs by which they are governed, though they come after them in English: ex.

*Il<sup>s</sup> me<sup>s</sup> parle,* He<sup>s</sup> speaks<sup>s</sup> to me.<sup>s</sup>  
*Nous<sup>s</sup> le<sup>s</sup> connaissons,* We<sup>s</sup> know<sup>s</sup> him,<sup>s</sup> &c.

Except in the second person singular and the first and second persons plural of a verb in the imperative mood conjugated affirmatively; in which case they come after the verb: ex.

*Apportez-le moi,* Bring it to me.  
*Envoyons-leur y en,* Let us send some to them thither.

But, when two imperatives are joined by either of the conjunctions, *et*, and, *ou*, or, the conjunctive pronoun or pronouns must precede the last imperative by which it is governed: ex.

*Allez le trouver, et lui dites* Go to him, and tell him to  
*de venir ici,* come here.  
*Apportez-le moi, ou me l'en-* Bring it to me, or send it  
*voyez,* to me.

The verb *fier*, to trust; and *penfer*, or *songer*, to think; require the conjunctive pronouns after them; except only in answering a question or speaking of inanimate things: ex.

*Nous nous fions à lui, à eux,* We trust to him, to them.  
*Pensez-vous à elle?* Do you think of her?  
*Oui j'y pense,* Yes, I do (think of her).

When two or more of the conjunctive pronouns come together in the same sentence, they must be arranged in the following order:

SINGULAR.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

*Me*, m. et f. me or to me,*Nous*, m. et f. us or to us,*Te*, m. et f. thee or to thee,*Vous*, m. et f. you or to you,*Se*, m. et f. one's self, him-  
self, herself,*Se*, m. et f. themselves,

are to be placed before all others; next,

*Le*, m. him, it,*Les*, m. et f. them,*La*, f. her, it,

before

*Lui*, m. et f. to him, to her,*Leur*, m. et f. to them,*Y*, to it, (sometimes to him,*Y*, to them, &c.

to her, to them, especial-

ly in the second member

of a sentence,) there, thi-

ther, &amp;c.

And

*En*, m. et f. of or from him,*En*, m. et f. of or from

her, it, &amp;c.

them, &amp;c.

the last of all: ex.

*Il me le promet*, he promised it to me.*Je vous les donnerai*, I will give them to you.*Vous les lui enverrez*, you will send them to him or her.*Nous le leur fîmes voir*, we shewed him to them.*Elle vous y en enverra*, she will send some to you thither.Except, however, from that rule, the pronoun of the first person, *moi*; which, in the imperative mood of a verb conjugated affirmatively, is placed after *y* and *en*: ex.*Apportez y en moi*, Bring me some there.Your brother bought yesterday a very good  
*acheta*, v. *bien*, adv.book; and, after having read it, he gave  
*après*, p. *avoir*, v. *lu*, p. p. *le donna*, v.it to me. — I am very glad of it. —  
*me*, *suis*, v. *bien*, adv. *aise*, adj. *en*.Do not lend it to her. — She spoke to  
*ne-pas*, adv. *prêtez*, v. *lui*, *parla*, v.him of it. — I see her and speak to her (every  
*lui*, *vois*, v. *parle*, v. *tous les*day). — Carry it to her. — I (will carry)  
*jours*, *Portez*, v. *menerai*, v.

them



them<sup>2</sup> thither<sup>3</sup> myself.<sup>3</sup> — Do you<sup>3</sup> know<sup>2</sup>  
*les y* *connoissez, v.*

them<sup>1</sup>? — I<sup>1</sup> will<sup>3</sup> write to them<sup>2</sup> myself.<sup>4</sup> — He<sup>1</sup>  
*écrirai, v. & leur*

will<sup>3</sup> not<sup>4</sup> sell<sup>7</sup> it<sup>3</sup> to them,<sup>6</sup> but he will  
*veut, v. ne-pas vendre, v. & mais, c.*

give it to you. — If<sup>1</sup> they<sup>2</sup> ask<sup>4</sup> you<sup>3</sup> a<sup>3</sup>  
*donner, v. Si, c. demandent, v.*

favour,<sup>6</sup> will<sup>3</sup> you<sup>4</sup> refuse<sup>3</sup> it<sup>1</sup> to them<sup>2</sup>? —  
*grace, f. refuserez, v.*

He<sup>1</sup> has<sup>3</sup> taken<sup>4</sup> it<sup>2</sup> away<sup>4</sup> with<sup>3</sup> him.<sup>6</sup> — I  
*a, v. emporté, p.p. avec, p.*

find him more reasonable than his sister. —  
*trouve, v. raisonnable, adj. sa, pro.*

Talk<sup>3</sup> no<sup>2</sup> more<sup>4</sup> of it.<sup>2</sup> — I<sup>1</sup> thank<sup>4</sup> you<sup>2</sup> for  
*Parlez, v. ne plus, adv. remercie, v.*

it.<sup>2</sup> — Why<sup>1</sup> do you<sup>3</sup> give<sup>4</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to her<sup>3</sup>? — Had<sup>4</sup>  
*en. Pourquoi, adv. & donnez, v. Aviez, v.*

you<sup>3</sup> not<sup>6</sup> promised<sup>7</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to him<sup>3</sup>? — Do you<sup>4</sup>  
*ne-pas promis, p.p.*

not<sup>3</sup> see<sup>3</sup> the<sup>6</sup> beauty<sup>7</sup> of<sup>2</sup> it? — I<sup>1</sup> never<sup>3</sup>  
*voyez, v. beauté, f. ne-jamais, adv.*

will<sup>4</sup> consent to<sup>3</sup> it. — They are sorry for  
*consentirai, v. y. sont, v. fâché, adj.*

it. — You<sup>1</sup> may<sup>2</sup> tell<sup>3</sup> it<sup>3</sup> to her,<sup>4</sup> but do not  
*pouvez, v. dire, v.*

tell it to her brother. — Since you ( have no )  
*dites, v. son, pro. Puisque, c. n'avez point, v.*

pears in your garden, I ( will send ) you  
*poire, f. dans, p. votre, pro. jardin, m. enverrai, v.*

some. — They<sup>1</sup> have<sup>4</sup> stolen<sup>3</sup> from us<sup>2</sup> the<sup>6</sup> great-  
*en. ont, v. volé, p.p. &*

est<sup>7</sup> part<sup>3</sup> of<sup>3</sup> them. — Believe me, go<sup>1</sup> and  
*partie, f. Croyez, v. allez, v. &*

speak<sup>3</sup>



— Do not give it to him, give it to me.—Send  
*donnez.*  
 some to them thither.

### OF PRONOUNS. POSSESSIVE.

These pronouns are called *possessive*, because they always denote property or possession.

There are two sorts of possessive pronouns, viz. absolute and relative.

The *absolute* are so called because they must always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it (and not with the possessor, as in English) in gender, number, and case. They are,

#### SINGULAR.

Masc.

Fem.

#### PLURAL.

Both Genders.

*Mon,\**

*Ma,*

*Mes, my.*

*Ton,\**

*Ta,*

*Tes, thy.*

*Son,\**

*Sa,*

*Ses, his, her, or its.*

Both Genders.

*Notre,*

*Nos, our.*

*Votre,*

*Vos, your.*

*Leur,*

*Leurs, their.*

They are declined with the article indefinite, *de, à*: ex.

#### SINGULAR.

##### Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *mon père, my father.*

Gen. Abl. *de mon père, of or from my father.*

Dat. *à mon père, to my father.*

##### Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *ma mère, my mother.*

Gen. Abl. *de ma mère, of or from my mother.*

Dat. *à ma mère, to my mother.*

#### PLURAL.

##### Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *mes frères, my brothers.*

Gen. Abl. *de mes frères, of or from my brothers.*

Dat. *à mes frères, to my brothers.*

\* *Mon, ton, son,* must be used before a noun feminine beginning with a vowel.

Feminine.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *mes sœurs*, my sisters.

Gen. Abl. *de mes sœurs*, of or from my sisters.

Dat. *à mes sœurs*, to my sisters.

The others are declined as the preceding.

These pronouns ought to be repeated before every substantive in a sentence, though not expressed in English: ex.

*J'ai perdu mon chapeau et mes gants,* I have lost *my* hat and gloves.

When these pronouns are used in a sentence, speaking of any part of the body, they are not to be expressed in French, but the preposition *IN* and the pronoun are rendered by the article definite; the personal pronoun being sufficient to determine the possession: ex.

*J'ai mal aux yeux,*  
and not *dans mes yeux*.

I have a pain *in my* eyes,

*Il se cassa le bras,*

He broke *his* arm.

This will be seen among the idiomatical expressions.

*ITS, THEIR*, having a reference to inanimate or irrational objects, and placed in another member of the sentence from that wherein the object referred to is itself expressed, are not made into French by *son, sa, ses*, &c. but by *EN*: ex.

*Windsor est un beau village,*  
*j'en admire la situation,*  
*les promenades, &c.*

Windsor is a fine village,  
I admire *its* situation,  
walks, &c.

*Cette maison est très bien*  
*située, mais l'architecture*  
*ne m'en plaît pas,*

This house is well situated,  
but *its* architecture does  
not please me.



The RELATIVE are never joined to any substantive ; for, the substantive, to which they refer, is always implied in the pronoun. They are,

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Masc.		Fem.	
<i>Le mien,</i>	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i>	<i>les miennes,</i> mine.
<i>Le tien,</i>	<i>les tiens,</i>	<i>la tienne,</i>	<i>les tiennes,</i> thine.
<i>Le sien,</i>	<i>les siens,</i>	<i>la sienne,</i>	<i>les siennes,</i> his or hers.
<i>Le nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i>	<i>la nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i> ours.
<i>Le vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i>	<i>la vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i> yours.
<i>Le leur,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i>	<i>la leur,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i> theirs.

They are declined with the article definite : ex.

## SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.
Nom. Acc.	<i>le mien,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i> mine.
Gen. Abl.	<i>du mien,</i>	<i>de la mienne,</i> of or from mine.
Dat.	<i>au mien,</i>	<i>à la mienne,</i> to mine.

## PLURAL.

	Masc.	Fem.
Nom. Acc.	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>les miennes,</i> mine.
Gen. Abl.	<i>des miens,</i>	<i>des miennes,</i> of or from mine.
Dat.	<i>aux miens,</i>	<i>aux miennes,</i> to mine.

The rest are declined as the preceding.

When any one of these relative pronouns is used after the verb *être*, to be, signifying to belong to, it must be expressed in French by one of the pronouns personal in the dative: ex.

<i>Ce livre est à moi,</i>	<i>This book is mine.</i>
<i>Cette épée est à lui, et non pas à vous,</i>	<i>This sword is his, and not yours.</i>

Also, when it is joined to a noun substantive in English, it ought to be rendered in French by a pronoun possessive absolute, and the substantive put in the genitive plural: ex.

*Un de mes, de vos, amis,* A friend of mine, of yours ;  
i. e. one of my or your friends.

OF

## OF PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

These pronouns are called *demonstrative*, because they distinguish, in a precise manner, the person or things to which they are applied. They are,

## SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Ce, cet,*</i>	<i>cette, this, that.</i>
<i>Celui, he, that.</i>	<i>celle, she, that.</i>
<i>Celui-ci,</i>	<i>celle-ci, this.</i>
<i>Celui-là,</i>	<i>celle-là, that.</i>

## PLURAL.

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Ces,</i>	<i>ces, these, those.</i>
<i>Ceux,</i>	<i>celles, they, these, those.</i>
<i>Ceux-ci,</i>	<i>celles-ci, these.</i>
<i>Ceux-là.</i>	<i>celles-là, those.</i>
<i>Ce qui, ce que, what.</i>	
<i>Ceci, this, cela, that.†</i>	

These two last are always of the masculine gender and of the singular number.

These pronouns are declined with the article indefinite, *de, à* : ex.

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>ce livre, this or that book.</i>
Gen. Abl.	<i>de ce livre, of or from this book.</i>
Dat.	<i>à ce livre, to this book.</i>

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>ces livres, these books.</i>
Gen. Abl.	<i>de ces livres, of or from these books.</i>
Dat.	<i>à ces livres, to these books.</i>

\* *Cet* is used before a noun masculine beginning with a vowel or h mute : ex. *Cet oiseau, this bird.*

† The word *that*, whether expressed or understood, when it comes between two verbs, and is followed by a noun or pronoun, must be rendered in French by *que*, which must be placed immediately after the first verb : ex.

*Je sais que votre frère est marié, I know that your brother is married, &c.*

## SINGULAR.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *cette plume*, this or that pen.

Gen. Abl. *de cette plume*, of or from this pen.

Dat. *à cette plume*, to this pen.

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. *ces plumes*, these pens.

Gen. Abl. *de ces plumes*, of or from these pens.

Dat. *à ces plumes*, to these pens.

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *celui*, he, him, that.

Gen. Abl. *de celui*, of or from him.

Dat. *à celui*, to him.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *celle*, she, her, that.

Gen. Abl. *de celle*, of or from her.

Dat. *à celle*, to her.

## PLURAL.

Masc. Fem.

N. Acc. *ceux, celles*, they, them, those, such as.

G. Abl. *de ceux, de celles*, of or from those.

Dat. *à ceux, à celles*, to those.

The others are declined as the preceding.

*N. B.* *He, she, they, him, her, them*, being immediately followed in a sentence by *who, whom, or that*, used in an indeterminate sense, not relating to any individual mentioned before, and only implying any person, one, or any body, must not be rendered in French by the personal pronouns, *il, elle, &c.* but by the above pronouns, *celui, celle, &c.* ex.

*Celui qui pratique la vertu* *He who practises virtue*  
*vit heureux,* *lives happy.*

*Celle, que vous vîtes chez* *She, whom, or that, you*  
*mon frère, n'est pas ma-* *saw at my brother's, is*  
*riée,* *not married.*

*Vous punissez celui ou celle* *You punish him or her*  
*qui n'est pas coupable,* *who is not guilty.*

The

The same rule must be observed with respect to *such* as, *such that*, used in English in the same sense as *he who*, *they who*: ex.

*Ceux qui méprisent la science* Such as despise learning do  
*n'en connoissent pas le prix,* not know its value.

*Ce, cette, ces*, this, that, these, those, must always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it in gender, number, and case. On the contrary, *celui, celle, celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle-là*, this, that, &c. either in the singular or plural, are never joined to any noun; for, the noun, to which they refer, is always implied in the pronoun: ex.

*J'ai vu le portrait du père* I have seen the father's  
*et celui du fils,* picture and *that* of the son.

*Cette montre n'est pas à vous,* This watch is not yours,  
*c'est celle de ma mère,* it is *that* of my mother,  
 or my mother's; *that* being understood.

N. B. The pronoun *that*, either in the singular or plural, is often suppressed in English and supplied by an apostrophe and an *s* at the end of the noun substantive as above, but must be expressed in French by the above pronouns *celui, celle, &c.* according to the gender and number of the object to which it refers: ex.

*Il a pris mon chapeau et* He has taken my hat and  
*celui de mon père,* my father's.

*Vous avez déchiré ma robe* You have torn my gown  
*et celle de ma sœur,* and my sister's.

Sometimes the particles *ci, là*, here, there, are also joined to the pronouns *ce, cette, ces*, to distinguish, with more precision, the objects to which they are applied: ex.

*Ce chapeau-ci,* This hat.

*Cette ville-là,* That town, &c.

The two following expressions, *the former, the latter*, referring to substantives mentioned in a preceding sentence, are elegantly made into French by *celui-ci, celui-là, &c.* and agree with the noun.

*Celui-ci, celle-ci*, this, applies to the nearest object.

*Celui-là, celle-là*, that, to that which is more remote.



*Ce qui, ce que*, what. This pronoun is never joined to any noun; it always can be turned by *that which*, or *the thing which*: ex.

*Je vous dirai ce qui lui est arrivé*, I will tell you *what* has happened to him; that is, *that which*, or *the thing which*, has happened to him.

*Savez-vous ce que je lui dis?* Do you know *what* I told him? &c.

*Ceci*, this, *cela*, that, are only used when speaking of things, the word *thing* being always understood: ex.

*Ceci me plaît*, This pleases me; that is, *this thing* pleases me.

*Cela me fait peur*, That frightens me; that is, *that thing* frightens me, &c.

## EXERCISES UPON THE TWO FOREGOING PRONOUNS.

Give me my book. — I have met your  
*Donnez, v. livre, m. ai, v. rencontré, p. p.*

sister with a friend of yours. — She had lost  
*sœur, f. avec, p. ami, m. avait, v. perdu, p. p.*

her gloves and fan. — Have you found your  
*gant, m. éventail, m. Avez, v. trouvé, p. p.*

pen? — His daughter is older than mine,  
*plume, f. fille, f. est, v. vieux, adj.*

but her son (is not) so tall as yours. — My  
*mais, c. fils, m. n'est pas, v. grand, adj.*

mother has (a pain) in her head. — Bring me  
*mère, f. a, v. mal, m. tête, f. Apportez, v.*

that dictionary. — I have found my hat and my bro-  
*dictionnaire, m.*

ther's. — Men commonly hate him whom  
*ordinairement, adv. haïssent, v. que, pro.*

they fear. — Learn this lesson, it is not so diffi-  
*craignent, v. Apprenez, v. leçon, f. diffi-*  
cult

cult as that. — Take care of that child. —  
*cile, adj. Prenez, v. soin, m. enfant, m.*

Her brother says he will not refuse you what  
*dit, v. ne-pas refusera, v.*

you ask of him. — My ambition is the only  
*demandez, v. ambition, f. seul, adj.*

cause of his imprudence. — Your house is more con-  
*cause, f. imprudence, f. com-*

venient than hers, but it is not so well situated. —  
*mode, adj. situé, adj.*

She, whom you hate, is my best friend. — You have  
*haïssiez, v. amie, f.*

punished him who did not deserve it, and rewarded  
*puni, p. p. meritoit, v. récompense, p. p.*

her who was guilty. — I have seen your father, mo-  
*ai, v. vu, p. p.*

ther, brothers, and sisters. — She, who dines with  
*qui, pro. dine, v. avec, p.*

us, is my brother's wife. — Her affection for me  
*femme, f. affection, f. pour, p.*

is false. — I hope you will come soon to  
*faux, adj. espère, v. viendrez, v. bientôt, adv.*

see us. — His coach is beautiful, I admire its  
*voir, v. carrosse, m.*

painting and ornaments. — Such<sup>1</sup> as<sup>2</sup> seem<sup>3</sup>  
*peinture, f. ornement, m. qui, pro. paroissent, v.*

to<sup>4</sup> be happy<sup>5</sup> are<sup>6</sup> 'not<sup>9</sup> always<sup>10</sup> so<sup>7</sup>. — Your  
*être, v. heureux, adj. sont, v. toujours, adv.*

horses are better than theirs. — They stole my  
*cheval, m. volèrent, v.*

watch and my mother's. — Tell her, my sister will be  
*montra, f. Dites, v. sera, v.*

glad to see her. — She has a pain in her  
*bien-aise, adj. de voir, v. a, v.*

teeth.

teeth. — (It is not) my hat, it is hers; but this is  
*dent, f. Ce n'est pas, v. c'est, v.*

better than that. — We ought to pray for them that  
*devons, v. prier, v. pour, p.*

persecute us. — Of all virtues, that which most  
*persecutent, v. le plus, adv.*

distinguishes a Christian is charity. — These candles  
*distingue, v. chandelle, f.*

are better than those. — This fan is mine and not  
*sont, v. non-pas*

yours. — Give me this and take that. — This book  
*prenez, v.*

and that I lent you are the two best. — Tell me  
*ai prêté, v. Dites, v.*

what vexes you. — I have seen the king's palace, and  
*sâche, v. palais, m.*

that of the queen.  
*reins, f.*

### OF PRONOUNS RELATIVE.

These pronouns are called *relative*, because they have always a reference to some other noun or pronoun in the discourse either expressed or implied. They are declined as follow:

#### SINGULAR and PLURAL.

##### Both Genders.

Nom.	<i>qui,</i>	who, which, that.
Gen.	<i>de qui, or dont,</i>	of whom, whose,* of which.
Dat.	<i>à qui,</i>	to whom, to which.
Acc.	<i>que, qui,†</i>	whom, which, that.
Abl.	<i>de qui, dont,</i>	from whom, from which.

\* WHOSE, being used interrogatively, must be rendered in French by *à qui*.

† *Qui*, whom, is never used in the accusative but when it is governed by some of the prepositions: ex.

*Avec qui,* With whom.

*Pour qui,* For whom.

Or, when it signifies *what person*: ex.

*Amenez qui vous voudrez,*

Bring whom you please;

that is, *what person* you please.

Acc.

Acc.	<i>quoi, que,</i>	what.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de quoi, or dont,</i>	of or from what.
Dat.	<i>à quoi,</i>	to what.

## SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom. Acc.	<i>lequel,</i>	<i>laquelle, which.</i>
Gen. Abl.	<i>duquel, or dont,</i>	<i>de laquelle, of or, &amp;c.</i>
Dat.	<i>auquel,</i>	<i>à laquelle, to which.</i>

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>lesquels,</i>	<i>lesquelles, which.</i>
Gen. Abl.	<i>desquels, or dont,</i>	<i>desquelles, of or, &amp;c.</i>
Dat.	<i>auxquels,</i>	<i>auxquelles, to which.</i>

The noun or pronoun, to which the pronoun relative has a reference, is called *antecedent*, with which it must agree in gender and number: ex.

*Je connois un homme qui doit aller voir le camp,* I know a man *who* is to go and see the camp.

In this sentence *qui* has a reference to *homme*, man, because I can say *lequel homme*, which man, &c.

*J'ai lu la lettre que vous m'avez envoyée,* I have read the letter (*that*) you sent me.

In this last sentence *que* has a reference to *lettre*, letter, because it may be said *laquelle lettre?* which letter? &c. — The relative *que*, whom, which, or that, is sometimes elegantly understood in English, but it must always be expressed in French: ex.

*La dame, que vous connoissez, est arrivée,* The lady, you know, is arrived;  
*whom* is understood in the English.

When the words *to which, to what, at which, at what, in which, in what*, have a reference to inanimate things, and when they can be expressed by *where, whereto, whereat, or wherein*, they are to be rendered in French by the adverb of place, *où*: ex.

*Je vous montrerai la maison où il demeure,* I will shew you the house  
that is, *where* he lives;  
*in which* he lives;

*Voici la porte par où nous entrâmes,* This is the door *through*  
*which* we went in.

*Quoi,*



*Quoi*, what, is never used in the nominative case : in the other cases it is generally used in an indeterminate sense, and is never expressed but in speaking of inanimate things : ex.

*En quoi se trompe-t-il?* In what does he mistake?

When we speak of irrational beings, or inanimate things, in the genitive, dative, or ablative, cases, we make use of *lequel*, *laquelle*, which, &c. instead of *qui* : ex.

*Le cheval, auquel vous donnez à boire,* The horse, to which you give some drink.

As also after a preposition : ex.

*La fenêtre sur laquelle vous appuyez,* The window upon which you lean.

And when *who*, *whom*, or *which*, refers to one or more objects on which the choice is to be formed : ex.

*Apportez-moi lequel vous voudrez,* Bring me which you please.

### OF PRONOUNS INTERROGATIVE.

They are called *interrogative* because they are only used in asking questions, and have no antecedent : they are declined with the article indefinite.

#### SINGULAR and PLURAL.

##### Both Genders.

Nom. Acc. *qui*, who, whom.

Gen. Abl. *de qui*, of or from whom.

Dat. *à qui*, to whom, whose.

Nom. Acc. *quoi*, or *que*, what.\*

Or, *qu'est ce qui*, *qu'est ce que*.

Gen. Abl. *de quoi*, of or from what.

Dat. *à quoi*, to what.

#### SINGULAR.

##### Masculine. Feminine.

N. A. *quel*, or *lequel*, *quelle*, or *laquelle*, what, which.

G. A. *de quel*, &c. *de quelle*, &c. of or from, &c.

Dat. *à quel*, &c. *à quelle*, &c. to what, which.

\* N. B. When *WHAT*, in English, signifies how much, it must be expressed in French by *combien*.

#### PLURAL.

## PLURAL.

Masculine.      Feminine.

N.A. *quels, or lesquels, quelles, or lesquelles*, what, which.G.A. *de quels, &c. de quelles, &c.* of or from, &c.Dat. *à quels, &c. à quelles, &c.* to what, which.

*Qui*, who, whom, as an interrogative pronoun, always refers to persons and never to things, and it may be expressed by *quelle personne?* what person? ex.

*Qui est-là?*      *Who is there?*

*Qui cherchez-vous?*      *Whom do you seek?*

*Quoi* and *que*, what, have always a reference to things and never to persons, and may be expressed by *quelle chose*, what thing: ex.

*Que voulez-vous, or, qu'est-ce que vous voulez?*      *What do you want?*

*De quoi parlez-vous?*      *What are you speaking of?*

N. B. According to the French idiom *quoi* can never be put before a verb as its accusative, it is always *qué*: ex.

*Que dites-vous, or, qu'est-ce que vous dites?*      *What do you say?*

*Quel, quelle*, what, are always joined to some substantive with which they must agree in gender and number: ex.

*Quel livre traduisez-vous?*      *What book do you translate?*

*Quelle heure est-il?*      *What hour is it?*

But, to avoid repetition, *lequel, laquelle*, which, are elegantly used as substantives for *quel* or *quelle*, and the substantive to which it is joined; and then *lequel* must always be followed by a genitive, either expressed or understood: ex.

*Une de mes sœurs est mariée,*      One of my sisters is married.

*Laquelle est-ce? that is, laquelle de vos sœurs est-ce?*      *Which is it? that is, which of your sisters is it?*

*Je parle d'un de vos amis,*      I am speaking of one of your friends.

Duquel

Duquel parlez-vous ? that Of which are you speaking?  
 is, duquel de mes amis that is, of which of my  
 parlez-vous ? friends are you speaking?

### OF PRONOUNS INDEFINITE.

These pronouns are called *indefinite*, or *indeterminate*, because they generally are substituted for the name of a vague and indeterminate object. Among them some are used as nouns adjective, being always joined to a noun substantive; others are sometimes used as pronouns without a substantive, and sometimes as adjectives with a substantive.

<i>Aucun, aucune,</i>	None, no one, not one, not any.
<i>Autre,</i>	Other, any other.
<i>Autrui,</i>	Other, other people.
<i>Chacun, chacune,</i>	Each, every one, every body.
<i>Chaque,</i>	Every, each.
<i>L'un l'autre,</i>	One another, each other.
<i>Les uns—les autres, }</i>	Some — others.
<i>L'un et l'autre,</i>	Some — some.
<i>L'un ou l'autre,</i>	Both.
<i>Ni l'un ni l'autre,</i>	Either.
<i>Nul, nulle,</i>	Neither.
<i>Pas un, pas une,</i>	None.
<i>Personne,</i>	No one, not one.
<i>La plupart de, des,</i>	Nobody, none, no one, any one, any body.
<i>Plusieurs,</i>	Most.
<i>Quelconque,</i>	Many, several.
<i>Quelque,</i>	Whatever.
<i>Quelque chose,</i>	Some, any.
<i>Quelque — que, }</i>	Something, any thing.
<i>Quel — que,</i>	Whosoever, whatsoever,
<i>Quelle — que,</i>	whatever, however, how- soever, though, &c.
	<i>Quelque</i>

*Quelque chose qui, or que,*  
*Quoique,*  
*Quoique ce soit que,*  
*Tout ce qui, or que,*  
*Quelqu'un, quelqu'une,*

Whatever, whatsoever.

Some, some one, some-body, any.

*Quiconque,*  
*Qui que ce soit, or fût,*

Whatsoever, any body.

Whosoever, nobody in the world, nobody at all, any body whatever, no man living, let him be who he will, be he who he may, &c.

*Quoique ce soit, or fût,*

Whosoever, nothing in the world, nothing whatever.

*Rien,*  
*Tel, telle,*  
*Tel qui, }  
 Telle qui, }  
 Tout,  
 Tout le monde,  
 Tout — que,*

Nothing, any thing.

Such one, such.

Such as he, she, they, who, that, &c.

Every, every thing.

Every body, any body.

As — as, for all, although, however, &c.

## OBSERVATIONS ON SOME OF THE ABOVE PRONOUNS.

*Aucun, aucune*, is never used but in the singular, and always negatively: it relates to a person or thing mentioned before: ex.

*Aucun ne s'est encore avisé de vous contredire,* No one has yet thought of contradicting you.

*Aucune n'a porté la constance si loin,* Not one has carried constancy so far.

In some sentences expressing a doubt, *aucun* is used without a negation: ex.

*Y a-t-il aucun, ou aucune, de vous qui le souffrirait?* Is there any of you who would suffer it?

*Autru* has neither gender nor number, and can only be used in the genitive or dative case, always referring to persons: ex.

H

Ne,



*Ne faites point à autrui ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fit,* Do not unto others what you would not wish to be done unto.

*Chacun, chacune,* may be used in a general or limited sense, mentioning persons or things : ex.

*Chacun à son tour,* Every one in his turn.

*Les arbres portent leurs fruits chacun dans leur* Trees bear their fruits each in their season.

*saison,*

*L'un l'autre* express a reciprocity in the action, and may be applied to persons or things : ex.

*Ils se jettent des pierres l'un à l'autre,* They throw stones to each other.

*Le feu et l'eau se détruisent l'un l'autre,* Fire and water destroy one another.

*L'un et l'autre* always require the verb in the plural, and may likewise be applied to persons or things : ex.

*L'un et l'autre ont raison,* Both are in the right.

*L'un et l'autre servent au même usage,* Both serve to the same purpose.

Observe that *both* is not to be expressed in French when it precedes two nouns or pronouns united by the conjunction *and* : ex.

*Son frère et sa sœur sont morts,* Both his brother and sister are dead.

*Ni l'un ni l'autre* require the verb to be put in the singular, if that pronoun be placed before the verb as its nominative, and in the plural, if it come after it ; in both cases, the verb must be preceded by a negation : ex.

*Ni l'un ni l'autre ne m'a répondu, or, ils ne m'ont répondu ni l'un ni l'autre,* Neither of them have answered me.

*Nul, pas un,* are always accompanied with a negation, and can only be used as a nominative to the verb : ex.

*Nul ne peut se flatter d'être agréable à Dieu,* No one can flatter himself to be agreeable to God.

*Pas un ne le croit,* Not one believes it.

*Personne*

*Personne* is likewise attended with a negation, *except* in sentences of doubt, admiration, or interrogation: ex.

*Personne ne peut se vanter d'être sans défaut,* *Nobody can boast of being without a defect.*

*Ne parlez à personne,* *Speak to nobody, or, do not speak to any body.*

*Personne s'est-il jamais exprimé avec plus de grace que Sheridan?* *Did ever any body express himself with more grace than Sheridan?*

*Quelque* always expresses an indeterminate signification, and is generally joined to a substantive with which it agrees in number: ex.

*Quelque auteur,* *Some author.*

*Quelques philosophes,* *Some philosophers.*

*Quelque — que.* *Quelque* immediately joined to a noun followed by *que* expresses an indeterminate quality or quantity; it is declinable before a substantive and indeclinable before an adjective, and requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

*Quelques efforts que l'on fasse pour voiler la vérité, elle se découvre tôt ou tard,* *Whatever efforts people make to hide truth, it is discovered one time or other.*

*Quelques fautes que vous ayez faites, on vous pardonnera si vous vous repentez sincèrement,* *Whatever faults you may have committed, you will be forgiven if you sincerely repent.*

*Quelque équitables que soient vos offres, je doute qu'on les accepte,* *However equitable your offers be, I doubt of their being accepted.*

*Quelque puissans que soient les rois, ils meurent comme le plus vil de leurs sujets,* *Though kings be ever so powerful, they die as well as the meanest of their subjects.*

*Quel que, quelle que,* must be thus divided when it is immediately followed by a verb or a personal pronoun, and agree in gender and number with the noun to which it relates; it likewise requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

Quel que soit l'ennemi dont  
vous appréhendez la ma-  
lice, vous devez vous ré-  
poser sur votre innocence,  
Les loix condamnent tous les  
criminels, quels qu'ils  
puissent être,

Quelles que soient vos in-  
tentions, &c.

Whatever the enemy be  
whose malice you dread,  
you ought to rest on  
your innocence.

Laws condemn all crimi-  
nals, *whoever* they may  
be.

Whatever your intentions  
may be, &c.

Quelque chose qui or que, quoique, quoique ce soit que,  
tout ce qui or que, always relate to things and never to  
persons; with this difference, that in French we gene-  
rally begin the sentence with either *quelque chose que* or  
*qui*, *quoique*, or *quoique ce soit que*, with the following  
verb in the subjunctive mood; on the contrary, we al-  
ways make use of *tout ce qui* or *que*, when *whatever* can  
be turned by *all that which* or *every thing which*, and  
may be placed either at the beginning or in the middle  
of a sentence, according to its situation in English, with  
the following verb in the indicative mood: ex.

Quelque chose qu'on vous  
dise, or quoique ce soit  
qu'on vous dise, ne le  
croyez pas,

A quelque chose que, or  
à quoique ce soit que,  
vous vous appliquez,

Je ferai tout ce qu'il vous  
plaira,

Tout ce qui est agréable  
n'est pas toujours utile,

Whatever may be said to  
you, do not believe it.

To whatever you apply  
yourself.

I will do *whatever*, or  
*every thing*, you please.

Whatever, or *all that  
which*, is pleasing is not  
always useful.

Quelqu'un, quelqu'une, relates to persons or things,  
and makes *quelques-uns*, *quelques-unes*, in the plural.

Quiconque is indeclinable, and always used in the sin-  
gular: ex.

Il a ordre d'arrêter qui-  
conque passera par là,

He is ordered to stop *whom-  
soever*, or *any body that*,  
goes that way.

Qui

*Qui que ce soit*, speaking of persons only, may be Englished different ways ; but, when by *whoever*, *what person soever*, it must always be followed by the pronouns *il*, *elle*, or *qui*, and sometimes by both, unless it be governed by a verb or a preposition : ex.

*Qui que ce soit qui me trompe, il sera puni,* *Whosoever* deceives me shall be punished.

*Qui que ce soit qui vous parle de cette affaire, feignez de n'en rien savoir,* *Whosoever* speaks to you about that affair, pretend not to know any thing about it.

When the above pronoun is Englished by *nobody* in the world, *no man living*, &c. it must be attended with the negation *ne* before the verb : ex.

*Je n'en ai parlé à qui que ce soit,* I mentioned it to *nobody whatever*, or to *no man living*.

When speaking in the past tense, *qui que ce fût* must be used : ex.

*César ne vouloit se fier à qui que ce fût,* Cæsar would trust to *nobody whatever*.

*Il ne fit part de ses projets à qui que ce fût,* He acquainted *nobody* in the world with his projects.

The above observation is to be made with respect to *quoique ce soit*, *quoique ce fût*, only used in speaking of inanimate objects.

*Tout — que.* *Tout*, preceding a noun immediately followed by *que*, is indeclinable in the masculine and declinable in the feminine before nouns beginning with a consonant : ex.

*Tout savant qu'il est, il se trompe quelquefois,* As learned as he is, or, for all he is learned, he sometimes mistakes.

*Toute laide qu'est cette demoiselle, elle se fait des amis par-tout,* This young lady, as ugly as she is, or, for all she is ugly, gets friends every where.

To the above pronouns may be added the three following expressions, which are generally used in an indefinite or indeterminate manner :



*Je ne sais qui,* I know not who.  
*Je ne sais quoi,* I know not what.  
*Je ne sais quel,* I know not which or what.

*Je ne sais qui* is only said speaking of persons, and signifies a person we do not know : ex.

*Il parle à je ne sais qui,* He speaks I know not to whom.

*Elle fut abordée par je ne sais qui,* She was accosted by I know not whom.

*Je ne sais quoi* is only said of things, and signifies an object which cannot precisely be named nor defined : ex.

*Il se plaint de je ne sais quoi,* He complains of I know not what.

We sometimes put *un* before *je ne sais qui*, and indifferently *un* or *le* before *je ne sais quoi* : ex.

*Il parle d'un je ne sais qui,* He speaks of I know not whom.

*Elle s'est adressée à un je ne sais qui,* She addressed herself to I know not whom.

*Il y a là-dessous un je ne sais quoi qui me plaît,* There is in that I know not what that pleases me.

*J'ai lu une comédie intitulée Le je ne sais quoi,* I have read a play which has for title I know not what.

*Je ne sais quel.* In this last expression, *quel* takes the form of an adjective, and must always be accompanied with a substantive ; it is said speaking of both persons and things : ex.

*Lorsque j'entrai, je vis je ne fais quel homme, quelle femme, quel tableau, quelle figure,* When I went in, I saw I know not what man, what woman, what picture, what figure.

## EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING PRONOUNS.

The man who sold me these pens is very cunning. — *a vendu, v. ru-*

*se, adj. dame, f. parlez, v. n'est pas, v. handsome.*

handsome. — Other people's opinions are not the  
*sentiment, m.*

rule of mind. — Miss D——, whom you love  
*règle, f. aimez, v.*

so much, is very ill. — The table, upon which  
*tant, adv. malade, adj. table, f. sur, p.*

you write, is broken. — Who told it to you? —  
*écrivez, v. cassé, p.p. a dit, v.*

He, who was with you, related to me how  
*étoit, v. a raconté, v. comment, adv.*

every thing had passed. — She (will not)  
*s'étoit, v. passé, p.p. ne veut pas, v.*

hear of the misery to which he is reduced. —  
*entendre parler, v. misère, f. réduit, p.p.*

Whosoever despises the poor is himself despicable. —  
*méprise, v. méprisable, adj.*

He (keeps company with) I know not whom, and that  
*fréquente, v.*

displeases her. — No one is free from fault. —  
*déplait, v. exempt, adj. défaut, m.*

What are you doing? — Have you heard any  
*faites, v. appris, p.p.*

news? — Shun vice, and love what is good. —  
*nouvelle, f. Evitez, v. vice, m. aimez, v. bon, adj.*

Every one acts for himself. — Who was with  
*agit, v. pour, p. étoit, v. avec, p.*

you? — It was a gentleman whose name I know  
*Ce monsieur, m. nom, m. fais, v.*

not. — Somebody knocks at the door, go and  
*ne-pas. frappe, v. à, p. allez, v.*

open it. — Men generally hate him  
*ouvrir, v. Hommes, m. généralement, adv. haïssent, v.*

whom they fear. — (Here are) two pears, which  
*craignent, v. Voici, adv. poire, f.*

will

will you have? — The man I sent you was  
*voulez, v. ai envoyé, v.*

honest. — Both religion and virtue are the bonds of  
*bonnête, adj. lien, m.*

civil society. — Is that the horse for which you gave  
*société, f. avez donné, v.*

a hundred guineas? — Whatever<sup>1</sup> these<sup>3</sup> books<sup>4</sup> be<sup>2</sup>,  
*soient, v.*

send them to me. — Whose<sup>1</sup> sword<sup>4</sup> is<sup>2</sup> this<sup>3</sup>? — It be-  
*épée, f. ap-*

longs to I know not whom. — What crime is she  
*partient, v. crime, m.*

guilty of? — What is he sorry for? — Nobody<sup>1</sup>  
*coupable, adj. fâché, adj. de.*

speaks<sup>3</sup> to you<sup>2</sup>. — Whom<sup>1</sup> do you<sup>3</sup> seek<sup>2</sup>? — Has<sup>4</sup>  
*parle, v. cherchez, v. A-t-il, v.*

somebody<sup>1</sup> spoken<sup>5</sup> to him<sup>2</sup> of<sup>3</sup> it? — Whosoever<sup>1</sup>  
*parlé, p. p.*

speaks<sup>3</sup> to you<sup>2</sup>, do<sup>4</sup> not<sup>6</sup> answer<sup>5</sup>. — Who was the  
*ne-pas répondez, v. fut, v.*

first king of France? — They are two sisters; which<sup>2</sup>  
*roi, m. sont, v.*

do you<sup>3</sup> like<sup>2</sup> best<sup>4</sup>? — Whatever you (may say,) —  
 *aimez, v. le mieux, adv. disiez, v.*

they shall be punished. — She (finds fault) with  
*seront, v. puni, p. p. trouve à redire à*

whatever I do. — You speak of the lady whose hus-  
*fais, v. parlez, v. ma-*

band has been so ill. — There are four drawings:  
*ri, m. été, p. p. Voilà, adv. desseins, m.*

which do you choose? — Is there any thing more  
*choisissez, v. Y a-t-il, v.*

ridiculous! — Some say she is married, others say  
*ridicule, adj. disent, v. marié, p. p.*

not.

not. — Whatever her fortune be, he says he ne-  
*que non, adv.* *fortune, f.* *dit, v.* *ne-*

ver will marry her. — I saw nobody in the  
*jamais, adv.* *épousera, v.* *ai vu, v.*

world. — At<sup>t</sup> what<sup>t</sup> do you<sup>t</sup> play<sup>t</sup>? — That vexes me.  
*jouez, v.* *fâche, v.*

— We will give you shortly what you have  
*donnerons, v.* *dans peu, adv.* *avez, v.*

lent us. — As amiable as she is, she<sup>t</sup> does <sup>not</sup>  
*prété, p.p.* *aimable, adj.* *ne-pas*

please<sup>t</sup> me<sup>t</sup>. — Every one complains of you. — There is  
*plait, v.* *se plaint, v.* *Il y a*

I know not what mean in that behaviour. — I love  
*bas, adj.* *conduite, f.* *aime, v.*

neither of them. — Both are married. — From<sup>t</sup> whom<sup>t</sup>  
*font, v.*

do you<sup>t</sup> know<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup>? — He was so honest that he mis-  
*savez, v.* *étoit, v.* *se dé-*

trusted nobody at all. — (For<sup>t</sup> all<sup>t</sup>) they<sup>t</sup> are<sup>t</sup> rich<sup>t</sup>,  
*fioit, v.* *Tout que* *riches, adj.*

they<sup>t</sup> give<sup>t</sup> <sup>nothing</sup> to the poor<sup>t</sup>. — They<sup>t</sup>  
*donnent, v.* *ne-rien, adv.*

do<sup>t</sup> justice<sup>t</sup> to<sup>t</sup> one<sup>t</sup> another<sup>t</sup>.  
*se rendent, v.*

# RECAPITULATORY OR PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES UPON ALL THE PRONOUNS.

I speak French. — You speak English. — We<sup>t</sup>  
*parle, v.* *parlez, v.*

do <sup>not</sup> understand<sup>t</sup> what<sup>t</sup> they<sup>t</sup> say<sup>t</sup> to us<sup>t</sup>. —  
*ne-pas comprenons, v.* *disent, v.*

She<sup>t</sup> speaks<sup>t</sup> to you<sup>t</sup> and<sup>t</sup> robs<sup>t</sup> you<sup>t</sup> (at the same<sup>t</sup>  
*parle, v.* *vôle, v.* *en même*

time.) — We<sup>t</sup> have<sup>t</sup> <sup>not</sup> seen<sup>t</sup> them<sup>t</sup>. — Your  
*tems, adv.* *avons, v.* *vus, p.p.*

mother



mother came (to see) me yesterday, and I (will go) to  
*mère, f. vint, v. voir, v. hier, adv. irai, v.*

see her (to-morrow.) — Is there any body that esteems  
*demain, adv. Est-il, v. estime, v.*

her more than I do? — They<sup>1</sup> are<sup>2</sup> happy<sup>3</sup>, but<sup>4</sup>  
*font, v. heureux, adj. mais, c.*

we<sup>5</sup> are<sup>6</sup> \*not<sup>9</sup> so<sup>7</sup>. — Whatever may be your  
*sommes, v. soient, v.*

troubles, you ought to write to me more frequently.  
*peine, f. devriez, v. écrire, v. souvent, adv.*

— I (will lend) you the book she sent me. — Be-  
*prêterai, v. a envoyé, v. Cro-*

lieve me, he is very ill. — I shall be very glad  
*yez, v. malade, adj. serai, v. aise, adj.*

to go there with you; for, I have something to  
*de aller, v. avec, p. car, c. à*

tell him. — I love your sister, and I owe her re-  
*dire, v. aime, v. dois, v. re-*

spect. — Give me my hat and cloak. — I  
*spéc, m. Donnez, v. chapeau, m. mantelet, m.*

have dined with your father and mother. — They<sup>1</sup>  
*diné, p. p.*

often<sup>4</sup> procure<sup>3</sup> me<sup>2</sup> that<sup>5</sup> pleasure<sup>6</sup>. — They  
*souvent, adv. procurent, v. plaisir, m.*

have sent you good apples. — Write to me,  
*ont, v. envoyé, p. p. Ecrivez, v. &*

do 'not<sup>4</sup> write<sup>3</sup> to her<sup>2</sup>. — Carry some to your sister.  
*& Portez, v. sœur, f.*

— I will do whatever you please. — London is the  
*ferai, v. plaira, v.*

capital of England, as Paris is that of France.  
*capital, adj. comme, adv.*

— Brest is a fine sea-port, in France, but its  
*mer, f. port, m. en, p. mais, c.*

entrance

entrance is difficult and dangerous. — These books.  
*entrée, f. dangereux, adj.*

are mine, and not yours. — Your exercise is  
*sont, v. non-pas, adv. thème, m.*

better than mine, but it is not so well as your brother's.  
*bien, adv.*

Do you<sup>2</sup> think<sup>1</sup> of<sup>3</sup> me<sup>4</sup>? — Yes, I  
*pensez, v. à Oui, adv.*

You do not know what vexes me. — I  
*pense, v. savez, v.*

will not accept of any of the terms which they  
*veux, v. accepter, v. condition, f.*

offer me. — Whom ought we to worship? —  
*offrent, v. devons, v. adoré, v.*

God, who is the father of them that love him, and  
*Dieu, m. aiment, v.*

the protector of those that fear him. — Those trees  
*protecteur, m. craignent, v. arbre, m.*

are well exposed to the sun, yet their  
*exposé, p.p. soleil, m. cependant, adv.*

fruits are not good. — I believe your uncle is arrived.  
*crois, v. oncle, m. arrivé, v.*

His ability is not so great as yours. — Two  
*vé, p.p. habileté, f. grand, adj.*

rivals are generally enemies of one another. — Who  
*rival, m.*

gave you that letter? — Your brother's servant. —  
*a donné, v. lettre, f. domestique, m.*

What<sup>1</sup> does he<sup>4</sup> write<sup>3</sup> to you<sup>2</sup>? — That his library  
*écrit, v. bibliothèque, f.*

is at our service. — His letters please me so much  
*à service, m. plaisent, v.*

that I wish to increase their number. — He, that  
*vous, v. augmenter, v.*

wants

wants virtue, wants (all things.) — That lady  
*manque de, v. tout, m. dame, f.*

pleases you, for<sup>1</sup> you<sup>2</sup> are<sup>4</sup> always<sup>5</sup> speaking<sup>6</sup> of<sup>3</sup> her.  
*plait, v. car, c. toujours, adv. parlez, v.*

— The beauty of the mind creates admiration; that  
*beauté, f. esprit, m. donne, v.*

of the soul gains esteem; and that of the body,  
*âme, f. donne, v. estime, f. corps, m.*

love. — Most friends are more attached to our for-  
*amour, m. attaché, p. p.*

tune than they are (so) to our person. — It is  
*que—ne, c. Ce*

she who told me that this house (is not) yours. —  
*a dit, v. maison, f. n'est pas, v.*

You believe that Mrs D— is in your interest,  
*croyez, v. est, v. dans, p. intérêt, m.*

and I believe nothing of it. — Whatever her in-  
*crois, v. ne—rien, adv.*

tention may be, I<sup>1</sup> do<sup>2</sup> not<sup>6</sup> love<sup>5</sup> her<sup>3</sup> the<sup>7</sup> less  
*soit, v. aime, v. moins, adv.*

for<sup>4</sup> it. — Nobody in the world has complained of your  
*est, v. plaint, p. p.*

conduct. — When you read the history of the Ro-  
*Quand, c. lirez, v. histoire, f. Ro-*

man emperors, you will find one (of them)  
*main, adj. empereur, m. trouverez, v.*

whose name was Nero. — The study of geography is  
*géographie, f.*

absolutely necessary to him who has a taste for  
*absolument, adv. du goût, m.*

history. — He<sup>1</sup> that<sup>2</sup> sold<sup>3</sup> us<sup>4</sup> this<sup>5</sup> clock<sup>6</sup> did<sup>7</sup>  
*a vendu, v. horloge, f. a, v.*

not<sup>2</sup> cheat<sup>1</sup> us<sup>3</sup>. — What do you think of it?  
*ne-pas trompé, p. p. pensez, v.*

— Whosoever<sup>1</sup>

—— Whosoever<sup>1</sup> cheats<sup>2</sup> me<sup>3</sup> shall<sup>4</sup> + repent (of<sup>5</sup>  
*trompe, v. se repentira, v.*

it.) — Every body thinks we (shall have) peace. —  
*croit, v. aurons, v. paix, f.*

England owes her riches to her naval strength and  
*doit, v. forces, f. pl.*

the encouragement she gives to her commerce. —  
*donne, v.*

We speak of what has happened to him. — My  
*parlons, v. est, v. arrivé, p. p.*

house is like others, it has its beauties as well  
*maison, f. comme, adv. a, v. beauté, f.*

as its inconveniences. — She, who (was speaking) to  
*incommodité, f. parloit, v.*

you, is not yet married. — Her father, mo-  
*encore, adv. marié, p. p.*

ther, brothers, sisters, uncles, and aunts; in short,  
*oncle, m. tante, f. enfin, c.*

all her relations; are dead, and have left her a  
*parent, m. et f. ont, v. laissé, p. p.*

considerable fortune. — Do you know any of  
*connoissez, v.*

these ladies? — Yes, I know some of them. —  
*Oui, adv. connois, v.*

For<sup>1</sup> all they<sup>5</sup> are<sup>6</sup> young<sup>2</sup> and<sup>3</sup> handsome<sup>4</sup>, they have  
*ont, v.*

a great deal of modesty and virtue. — Desire him to  
*Priez, v. de*

bring them here. — Is that the gown for which  
*amener, v. ici, adv. Est, v. robe, f. pour, p.*

you gave five guineas? — There is I know not  
*avez donné, v. guinée, f. Il y a, v.*

what in the colour which pleases much. — To  
*dans, p. plait, v. beaucoup, adv.*

I

what



what (does he apply himself?) — This apple and that  
*s'applique-t-il?*

he gave you are very good. — Give me either  
*donna, v. Donnez, v.*

of them. — I<sup>st</sup> will<sup>d</sup> send you<sup>2</sup> some<sup>+</sup> thither<sup>3</sup>. — I can-  
*enverrai, v. ne peux*

not sell it to you for so small a sum. — I pre-  
*pas, v. vendre, v. pour, p. somme, f. pré-*  
 fer the beauty of the mind to that of the body. —  
*fère, v.*

Some love one thing, some another. — She says she  
*aiment, v. dit, v.*

hates that man, many think she loves him. —  
*hait, v. croient, v. aime, v.*

He, whom nobody pleases, is more unhappy than  
*plait, v. malheureux, adj.*

he who pleases nobody. — I was near your sister  
*étois, v. auprès de, p.*

when that happened to her. — Both his father and  
*quand, c. arriva, v.*

mother died on the same day. — As covetous as  
*moururent, v. avaré, adj.*

he is, he gave me one guinea. — Whatever has  
*a donné, v. soit, v.*

happened to you, I am sorry for it. — He would  
*arrivé, p. p. suis, v. fâché, adj. voulut, v.*

do it in spite of any body whatever. — Learning  
*faire, v. en, p. dépit, m. Science, f.*

is preferable to riches, and virtue to both. — Some phi-  
*phi-*

losophers have thought that fixed stars were  
*losophe, m. ont, v. cru, p. p. fixe, adj. étoiles, f. étoient, v.*

as many suns. — (Here are) two grammars, which<sup>d</sup> do  
*Vici, adv.*

and w

you<sup>3</sup>

you<sup>3</sup> prefer? — I prefer this to that. — Both are very  
*préférez, v.*

good. — He believes nothing of what you told him.  
*croit, v. ne rien* *avez dit, v.*

— You blame him who does not deserve it. — To  
*blâmez, v.* *mérite, v.*

whom did you speak? — I spoke to nobody; for,  
*avez, v. parlé, p.p. ai parlé, v. car, c.*

I saw neither of them.  
*ai vu, v.*

## S E C T. IV.

### OF VERBS, AND THEIR DIFFERENT SORTS.

Verbs are usually divided into seven sorts, viz.

1. *Les verbes auxiliaires,* auxiliary.
2. *Les verbes actifs,* active.
3. *Les verbes passifs,* passive.
4. *Les verbes neutres,* neuter.
5. *Les verbes réfléchis,* reflective.
6. *Les verbes personnels,* personal.
7. *Les verbes impersonnels,* impersonal.

Some of them are regular, that is to say, they follow the general rule of the conjugation to which they belong; others do not, and are called *irregular*.

The *auxiliary verbs* are, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be. These two auxiliaries are used to conjugate all the compound tenses of the other verbs.

The *active verbs*. — In this class, the action is transitive, that is, it passes from the subject to the object: ex.  
*Le maître punit les écoliers paresseux.* The master punishes the lazy scholars.

The active verb sometimes governs two cases, one to which the action directly refers, or which is the direct object of the action, and is therefore called the *direct* or *absolute case*; the other, to which the action refers but indirectly, and it is called the *indirect* or *relative case*: ex.

*Votre sœur a écrit une longue lettre à mon frère,*      Your sister wrote a long letter to my brother.

A long letter is the direct or absolute case, and to my brother the indirect or relative case, of the verb wrote. The direct case can be no other but the *accusative* of a noun or pronoun, but the indirect is either the *genitive*, *dative*, or *ablative*.

In the *passive verbs*, the action is received or suffered by the subject: ex.

*Les écoliers paresseux seront punis,*      Lazy scholars shall be punished.

In the *neuter verbs*, the action is intransitive, that is, it remains in the agent: ex.

*Je dors,*      I sleep.      *Vous voyagez,*      You travel.  
*Nous étudions,*      We study.      *Elle soupire,*      She sighs.

In the *reflected verbs*, the action returns upon the agent that produces it: ex.

*Il se repent,*      He repents himself.  
*Elle se loue,*      She praises herself.

These verbs have always *se* before their infinitive, and are conjugated with a double pronoun.

The *personal verbs* are those which are conjugated with three persons, in the singular and plural, throughout all their tenses.

The *impersonal verbs* have but the third person of the singular number.

N. B. There is a kind of verbs, which may be distinguished by the name of *reduplicative*, always expressing a repetition of the action: ex.

*Recommencer,*      To begin again.  
*Refaire,*      To do again, &c.

In these verbs, the English word *again* is to be rendered in French by the syllable *re* prefixed to the radix of the verb, and not by *encore*.

All the above verbs may be *simple* or *compound*.

A verb is *simple* which cannot be divided, without losing its meaning: as,

*Appeller,*

<i>Appeller,</i>	To call;	<i>Voir,</i>	To see;
<i>Bâtir,</i>	To build;	<i>Prendre,</i>	To take;
<i>Mentir,</i>	To lie;	<i>Vivre,</i>	To live;

which would mean nothing if they were divided.

A verb is *compound* when it is preceded by one or more syllables, as,

<i>Rappeller,</i>	To recal.	<i>Prévoir,</i>	To foresee.
<i>Rebâtir,</i>	To rebuild.	<i>Entreprendre,</i>	To undertake.
<i>Démentir,</i>	To belie.	<i>Survivre,</i>	To outlive, &c.

These last verbs are generally formed by prefixing to them part or the whole of a preposition.

### CONJUGATIONS OF VERBS.

To conjugate verbs is to give them different inflexions or terminations, according to their *moods, tenses, persons, and numbers.*

#### M O O D S.

*Mood, or mode,* in the sense it is taken here, is a grammatical term, which means the *manner* of affirming, or denoting, in the verbs, by different inflexions.

There are, in the French language, four moods, absolutely distinct from each other, by the several inflexions or by some other difference. They are:

<i>L'infinitif,</i>	The infinitive.
<i>L'indicatif,</i>	The indicative.
<i>L'impératif,</i>	The imperative.
<i>Le subjonctif, ou conjonctif,</i>	The subjunctive, or conjunctive.

#### Of the INFINITIVE MOOD.

This mood is so called, because it only expresses the action or signification of the verb in an *indefinite* and *indeterminate* manner, that is, without affirmation, and without any relation as to time, number, or person: ex.

*Parler,* To speak.

*Chanter,* To sing.

*Danser,* To dance.

#### Of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

This mood is thus called, because it not only indicates the affirmation in the different tenses of the verbs,



but likewise the time, number, and person; without being preceded or governed by either conjunction or verb: ex.

*J'écris une lettre,* I write a letter.

*Il chante une chanson,* He sings a song.

*Ecris* and *chante* are two verbs in the indicative mood, because they do not require to be preceded by a conjunction\* or another verb to make a complete sense. The definition of this mood will be better understood, by comparing the little that has been said with what is going to be said with respect to the subjunctive mood.

#### Of the IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The name, which has been given to this mood, is derived from a Latin word which signifies *to command*; and the imperative is in fact but a manner of denoting in the verbs the action of *commanding, entreating, praying, exhorting*, and sometimes *forbidding*: ex.

*Ne méprisez pas les avis,* Do not *despise* the advice  
*que je vous donne,* which I give you.

It is easy to perceive that this manner of speaking is but an exhortation, as if I had said,

*Je vous exhorte, je vous prie,* I exhort, I entreat, you not  
*de ne pas mépriser mes a-* to despise my advice.  
*vis,*

This mood has no first person in the singular, because it is impossible to command one's self; and, if it have the first person plural, it is because one speaks as much to others as to one's self: as when we say,

*Evitons tout ce qui pourroit* Let us avoid every thing  
*offenser les autres,* that might offend others.

The second person singular, the first and second plural, admit of no pronouns before them; as to the third, in both numbers, it is always preceded by the pronoun *il* or *elle*, &c. and the conjunction *que*.

#### Of the SUBJUNCTIVE, or CONJUNCTIVE.

The name of subjunctive, or conjunctive, sufficiently conveys what its use is in a sentence. It may be de-

\* Among the conjunctions, some govern the indicative, others the subjunctive: this will be explained in time.

fined thus ; a manner of expressing the different tenses of the verbs without any affirmation. In fact the subjunctive never affirms ; it is always preceded by, or subject to, some conjunction ; and, if it should be met with in a sentence containing an affirmation, that affirmation can only be expressed by the verb that precedes the subjunctive, which is used but to modify that affirmation. In the subsequent sentence,

*Je travaille afin que vous* I work that you may rest  
*vous reposiez,* yourself,

the affirmation is only expressed by *je travaille*, I work, and what follows only expresses the end which I purpose by working, viz. to procure you some rest. Again,

*Je desire que vous fassiez* I wish that you may do your  
*votre devoir,* duty.

I will affirm that I wish ; but it is clear there is no affirmation in these words, *that you may do your duty*, since I do not say, that you do, that you have done, that you will do, your duty ; but only that I wish you may do it. My wish is not doubtful ; but it is very doubtful whether you will or may do your duty.

## T E N S E S.

There are, strictly speaking, but three natural and proper *tenses*, or *times*, in the verbs : viz.

<i>Le passé,</i>	The past.
<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.

In the French language, the tenses are divided in the following manner, viz. five in the infinitive mood ; three of them are simple, the two others compound.

In the simple tenses, the verb is expressed in one word : ex.

<i>Parler,</i>	To speak.
<i>Chantant,</i>	Singing.
<i>Dansé,</i>	Danced.

The compound tenses are conjugated with some one of the auxiliary verbs, *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, joined to a participle passive : ex.

*Avoir,*

*Avoir parlé,* To have spoken.

*Ayant chanté,* Having sung.

*Être aimé,* To be loved.

*Etant aimé,* Being loved.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

*Le présent,* The present.

*Le participe actif,* The participle active.

*Le participe passif,* The participle passive.

## COMPOUND.

*Le prétérit,* The preterite.

*Le participe passé, ou composé,* The participle past, or compound.

There are ten tenses in the indicative mood, viz. five simple and five compound: they are,

## SIMPLE.

*Le présent,* The present.

*L'imparfait,* The imperfect.

*Le prétérit défini,* The preterite definite.

*Le futur,* The future.

*Le conditionnel présent,* The conditional present.

## COMPOUND.

*Le prétérit indéfini,* The preterite indefinite.

*Le prétérit antérieur défini,* The preterite anterior definite.

*Le plusqueparfait,* The preterpluperfect.

*Le futur passé, ou composé,* The future past, or compound.

*Le conditionnel passé,* The conditional past.

N. B. The imperative admits of no tense but the present.

The subjunctive mood has four tenses; two simple and two compound.

## SIMPLE.

*Le présent,* The present.

*L'imparfait,* The imperfect.

## COMPOUND.

*Le prétérit,* The preterite.

*Le plusqueparfait,* The preterpluperfect.

Before

Before we proceed any farther on the conjugations, it has been thought proper to explain the different uses of the above tenses, as one of the most important articles in a language, whose precision partly depends on the difference which custom sets between one tense and another with regard to the sense of the sentence. We shall endeavour to be short and concise, and say nothing but what is useful, in hopes that the following explanation will be sufficient to remove a difficulty which constantly puzzles the learners.

## TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

### S I M P L E.

#### PRESENT.

This tense is used when the state, action, or impression, mentioned by the verb, *is existing, doing, or happening*, at the very time we are speaking: ex.

<i>Je me porte bien,</i>	<i>I am well.</i>
<i>Votre sœur est malade,</i>	<i>Your sister is ill.</i>
<i>Nous nous promenons,</i>	<i>We are walking.</i>
<i>Vous écrivez,</i>	<i>You are writing.</i>
<i>Ils jouent,</i>	<i>They are playing, &amp;c.</i>

The present is also used,

1°. When speaking of actions or things which we *habitually do, are accustomed to do, or can do*: ex.

<i>Nous dinons toujours à deux heures,</i>	<i>We always dine at two o'clock.</i>
<i>Elle étudie l'histoire,</i>	<i>She studies history.</i>
<i>Vous parlez François,</i>	<i>You speak French.</i>
<i>Lit-il l'Anglois?</i>	<i>Does he read English?</i>

2°. When speaking of actions which are to be done in a very short time, we generally use this tense instead of the future: ex.

<i>Je pars ce soir pour la campagne,</i>	<i>I set out this evening for the country.</i>
<i>Que faites-vous demain?</i>	<i>What do you to-morrow?</i>
Instead of	
<i>Je partirai ce soir pour la campagne,</i>	<i>I shall set out this evening for the country.</i>
<i>Que ferez-vous demain?</i>	<i>What will you do to-morrow?</i>

3°. This



3°. This tense is also constantly used in French instead of the preterite definite or preterite indefinite, especially in *orations*, or *set discourses*, and in *poetry*, in order to represent a past action or event as present to the mind of the hearers or readers.

### IMPERFECT.

This tense has two uses: in the *first*, which probably is the origin of its name, it expresses an action *present* or *doing* at the time of an action *that is past*: as when I say,

*Mon frère apprenoit sa leçon.* My brother was learning  
*quand vous arrivâtes,* his lesson when you arrived.

In the above sentence, the act of learning, though past with respect to my narration, was present at the moment your arrival took place; therefore this tense is but imperfectly preterite and imperfectly present.

In the *second*, the imperfect is employed every time we speak of *actions of habit*, or *actions reiterated*, at a time which is not *defined*: ex.

*Quand j'étois à Londres,* When I was in London, I  
*j'allois souvent voir mes amis,* often went to see my friends;  
 that is, I often used to go, or I frequently went, &c.

The imperfect is likewise used when we speak of the *character*, or some *inherent* and *distinctive quality*, of persons or things no longer existing; and after the English conjunction *if*, though the verb be preceded by *should*, *could*, *would*: ex.

*Philippe, père d'Alexandre le Grand, étoit le plus fin politique de son temps,* Philip, the father of Alexander the Great, was the deepest politician of his time.

*César avoit je ne sais quoi de grand dans la physiognomie,* Cæsar had I know not what of great in his physiognomy.

*Carthage faisoit un prodigieux commerce par la mer.* Carthage carried on a prodigious trade by the sea.

*ven de ses vaisseaux, qui alloient jusqu'aux Indes, Palmira et Persépolis étoient de grandes et belles villes,*

*S'il venoit, je le payerois,*

*George II. étoit d'une taille plutôt petite que moyenne; il avoit les yeux très saillans, le nez grand, et une belle complexion; il étoit doux, modéré, et humain; sobre et régulier dans sa manière de vivre: il se plaçoit dans la pompe et dans l'appareil militaire, et étoit naturellement brave: il aimoit la guerre comme soldat, l'étudioit comme une science, et avoit, sur ce sujet, une correspondance établie avec quelques-uns des plus grands généraux que l'Allemagne ait produits,*

*means of her ships, which went as far as the Indies. Palmyra and Persépolis were large and fine cities.*

*If he would come, or came, I would pay him.*

*George II. was, in his person, rather lower than the middle size; he had remarkably prominent eyes, a high nose, and a fair complexion; he was mild, moderate, and humane; in his way of living, sober and regular: he delighted in military pomp and parade, and was naturally brave: he loved war as a soldier, he studied it as a science, and had, on that account, a settled correspondence with some of the greatest generals whom Germany had produced.*

From the above instances it might confidently be believed that every difficulty attending the use of this tense will be entirely removed; I shall, however, add, as a farther illustration, that whenever the verb, which in English is in the preterite, can be made by the past tense of the verb *to be*, and that preterite changed into the participle active, or when that preterite can be turned by the verb in the infinitive mood preceded by *used*, that past tense must be made in French by the imperfect.

#### PRETERITE DEFINITE.

This tense is so called because it always expresses an action done at a time *determined* or *specified* by an adverb, or some circumstance in the speech, and so entirely

irely elapsed that nothing more remains of the time when that action was doing : ex.

*Je fus malade hier pendant deux heures,* I was ill yesterday for two hours.

*La dernière fois que nous allâmes le voir, nous eûmes un accueil favorable,* The last time we went to see him, we had a kind reception.

*Vous écrivîtes à votre frère il y a huit jours,* You wrote to your brother eight days ago.

*Ils eussent de grandes pertes l'année passée,* They underwent great losses last year.

## FUTURE.

This tense simply expresses that an action will be done at a time that is not yet come : ex.

*Je vous verrai demain à Londres,* I will see you to-morrow in London.

*Mon frère vous écrira la semaine prochaine,* My brother will write to you next week.

In French, as well as in English, we sometimes express an action that is to be done instantly by the verb *aller*, or *s'en aller*, immediately followed by an infinitive : ex.

*Je vais, or je m'en vais, écrire à ma tante,* I am going to write to my aunt.

*Je vais, or je m'en vais, partir,* I am going to set out.

Which signify:

*Je lui écrirai tout présentement,* I will write to her presently.

*Je partirai dans l'instant,* I will set out instantly.

To express an uncertainty in a future tense, that is, to express that it is not decided that such a thing will be done, we make use of the verb *devoir* immediately followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, and that is the only instance wherein *devoir* does not imply obligation, necessity, &c. ex.

*Le roi doit partir pour Cheltenham vers le milieu du mois de Juillet, et ne doit revenir qu'à la fin du mois d'Août,*

That is,

*On suppose que le roi partira, &c. et qu'il ne reviendra, &c.*

*The king is to set out for Cheltenham about the middle of July, and is not to return till the latter end of August.*

*It is supposed that the king will set out, &c. and will not return till, &c.*

### CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

The name of this tense is a true definition of it: in fact it is always used to express some *condition* or *supposition*, and has always a reference to the *present*, because, by supposing the condition effected, the action, mentioned by the conditional, becomes present: ex.

*Je lirois si j'avois des livres,  
Vous auriez la fièvre si vous  
mangiez de ce fruit,*

*Je serois mortifié s'il perdoit  
son procès,*

*I would read if I had books,*

*You would have a fever  
if you ate of that fruit.*

*I should be mortified if he  
should lose his law-suit.*

It is sometimes used, instead of the future, after the conjunction *que*: ex.

*Il a promis qu'il viendrait,*

*He has promised to come,  
or that he will come.*

This tense is often called the *uncertain tense*, because it expresses an action made uncertain by the conditional that follows it, and some grammarians place it among the tenses of the subjunctive mood, though it be very certain that it never is governed by any of the conjunctions which require a subjunctive mood after them.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

#### PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

The preterite indefinite is employed in two different manners.

1°. It expresses an action past in an indeterminate time, but not too much distant from the time we speak: thus we must say,

K

J'ai



*J'ai vu mademoiselle votre sœur et lui ai parlé,* I have seen your sister and spoken to her.  
*Le roi de Prusse a conquis la Silésie,* The king of Prussia has conquered Silesia.  
*Cela s'est passé avantageusement pour votre cousin,* That has passed advantageously for your cousin.

In the above sentence, the action is certainly past, but the time when it past is neither determined nor specified.

2°. It expresses a time definite and determinate, but of which there yet remains some part to elapse : ex.

*Les fruits ont très bien réussi cette année,* Fruits have very well succeeded this year.  
*Nous n'avons pas eu beaucoup de neige cet hiver,* We have not had much snow this winter.  
*Il a plu toute cette semaine, tout ce mois,* It has rained all this week, all this month.  
*Nous avons vu d'étranges choses dans ce siècle,* We have seen strange things in this century.

In the above sentences, *this year, this week, this winter, &c.* are times which still last and are not yet elapsed.

To express an action recently past, we sometimes make use of the verb *venir* immediately followed by *de*, and the verb in the infinitive mood : ex.

*Je viens de le voir passer,* I have just seen him go by.  
*Le roi vient d'arriver,* The king is but just arrived.  
*Elle vient d'expirer,* She is but just dead.

The same tense may be expressed by the verb *faire*, preceded by the negation *ne*, and followed by the conjunction *que*, with an infinitive preceded by *de* : ex.

*Il ne fait que d'arriver,* He is but just arrived.  
*Je ne fais que de sortir,* I have but just gone out.

*N. B.* This particle *de* is here indispensable, because, without it, the expression would have quite another sense, and would express a continuation or a frequent reiteration in the action : ex.

*Vous*

*Vous ne faites que sortir,* You do nothing but go out.  
*Elle ne fait que jouer et danser,* She does nothing but play and dance.

### PRETERITE ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

This tense expresses an action past or done before another which is likewise past ; and it is for that reason it is called *anterior*. It is also named *definite*, not only for its being a compound of the preterite definite of the verb *avoir*, but because it expresses an action done at a time determined by the following sentence, which is the principal object of the attention. Thus, when we say,

*Quand ils eurent achevé de jouer, ils se mirent à chanter,* When they *had done* playing, they began singing,

we mean at first to convey that they *began singing*, and then that it was not till they *had done playing*, in which case the action of having done playing is subordinate to this, *they began singing*, and consequently the latter determines the time of the other.

The following observation is very plain, and will in some manner fix the use of the above tense, viz. that it is hardly ever used except after the conjunctions

<i>Aussitôt que,</i>	}	As soon as ;
<i>D'abord que,</i>		
<i>Dès que,</i>		
<i>Après que,</i>	}	After ;
<i>Lorsque,</i>		
<i>Quand,</i>		
	}	When ;

which never precede a preterpluperfect, unless the verb express a custom or habit.

Lastly, we must use the preterite anterior definite when the adverb *bientôt*, soon, precedes or follows the verbs *was* or *had*, to express an action or thing as done and accomplished : ex.

*L'affaire fut bientôt faite,* The business was *soon* over.  
*J'eus bientôt fini de manger,* I *soon* had done eating.

## P R E T E R P L U P E R F E C T.

The preterpluperfect expresses, as well as the above tense, an action past before another, which is past also, but with this difference, that the action expressed by this tense is the principal object of the person who speaks, and the following sentence is subordinate to that expressed by the preterpluperfect. So that, though the time of that subordinate sentence be defined, that of the principal sentence is not the less indeterminate, because the former has no influence on the latter. As, when we say,

*Nous avions diné lorsqu'il arriva,*      *We had dined when he arrived,*

our principal object is to express the action of dining as past, without determining at what time, but only before an action which is past also, without, however, the latter being a consequence of the former; for, we do not mean to say, that he stayed, or waited, till we had dined, to arrive.

## FUTURE PAST, or COMPOUND.

The name of this tense seems at first to convey a contradiction: what is meant by that, is not that an action can be future and past at the same time, but only that the action, which is to come, will be past when another action happens, or even before it happens: ex.

*Je serai parti quand vous reviendrez,*      *I shall be gone when you come back.*

*Quand vous aurez fini vos affaires vous viendrez me trouver,*      *When you have done your business you shall come to me.*

In the first sentence, *I shall be gone*, which is a future time with respect to the present we speak in, will be a past time by the time you will or purpose to arrive, &c.

## C O N D I T I O N A L P A S T.

This tense generally supposes a condition, as the conditional present, with this difference, that, the condition taking place, the action expressed by the verb in the conditional



conditional is accomplished, and consequently in a past time : ex.

*Je vous aurois écrit il y a un mois si j'eusse su votre adresse,* I would have written to you a month ago if I had known your direction.

The *indicative* mood has another tense, formed by the preterite indefinite of the verb *avoir*, joined to a participle passive, which has not been inserted in the preceding tenses on account of its being seldom used : ex.

*Quand j'ai eu diné, je suis parti,* When I have had dined, I set out.

But it is more elegant and more natural to say,  
*Après avoir diné, je suis parti,* After I had dined, I set out.

## TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE, OR CONJUNCTIVE, MOOD.

The subjunctive, or conjunctive, has no future distinguished from the *present*, because the present of the subjunctive likewise expresses a future tense : ex.

*Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne,* I do not think he will come.

Add the following observations to the latter.

1°. When the verb which precedes the conjunction is in the present or future of the indicative, and when we do not mean to express an action past in the second verb, we must put this last verb in the present of the subjunctive mood : ex.

*Je souhaite que vous réussissiez dans votre entreprise,* I wish you may succeed in your undertaking.  
*J'attendrai qu'il vienne,* I will wait till he come.

2°. When the verb, which is before the conjunction, is in some of the past tenses, or conditional, and we wish not to design, by the second verb, a past time more distant than the first verb's, we must put this second verb in the imperfect of the subjunctive : ex.



*Alexandre ordonna que tous  
ses sujets l'adorassent  
comme un dieu,*

*Je voulois que vous écrivis-  
siez à votre sœur,*

*Il souhaiteroit que vous pris-  
siez des mesures plus con-  
venables,*

Alexander ordered that all  
his subjects *should* wor-  
ship him like a god.

I wished you *to write* to  
your sister.

He would wish you *to take*  
more becoming mea-  
sures.

3°. The preterite of the subjunctive mood is used when we speak of an action past and accomplished, with regard to the tense of the verb which precedes the conjunction; and this tense is generally the present, preterite indefinite, or future, of the indicative: ex.

*Je doute qu'aucun philosophe  
ait jamais bien connu  
l'union de l'âme avec le  
corps,*

*Il a fallu que j'aie consulté  
tous les médecins,*

*Je n'aurai garde d'y aller  
que je n'aie reçu quelque  
assurance d'être bien ac-  
cueilli,*

I doubt whether any philo-  
sopher *have* ever well  
known the union of the  
soul with the body.

I was obliged *to consult* all  
the physicians.

I shall by no means go  
there till I *have received*  
some assurance of being  
welcome.

4°. After the imperfect, preterite, preterpluperfect, of the indicative, or one of the two conditionals, we use the preterpluperfect of the subjunctive mood; likewise after the conjunction *if*, when preceding a compound tense: ex.

*J'ignorois que vous eussiez  
embrassé cette profession-  
là,*

*Vous n'avez pas cru que je  
fusse arrivée avant vous,*

*Nous aurions été fâchés que  
vous vous fussiez adressé  
à d'autres qu'à nous,*

I did not know you *had*  
*embraced* that profession.

You did not believe I *should*  
*have arrived* before you.

We should have been sorry  
if you *had applied* to any  
other but us.

NUMBERS

## NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

A tense is composed of numbers ; that is, the singular and the plural.

That there are three persons has already been observed under the personal pronouns ; we have only to remark, that some of these three persons are always joined to the verb as its nominative case, therefore the verb must agree with that nominative in number and person : ex.

<i>Je fais,</i> I do.	<i>Nous faisons,</i> We do.
<i>Tu fais,</i> Thou dost.	<i>Vous faites,</i> You or ye do.
<i>Il fait,</i> He does.	<i>Ils font,</i> They do.

The pronoun *vous*, you, denotes the second person singular and plural, with this difference, that, when we speak to a person only, the attribute, or qualifying noun, must be put in the singular : ex.

*Vous êtes marié,* and not *You are married.*  
*mariés,*

*Vous étiez général de l'armée,* and not *généraux,* *You were general of the army,*

But we must say *mariés* and *généraux* if we speak to many.

When the verb has two or three nouns or pronouns as its nominative, it must be put in the plural, though all these nominatives be in the singular, because two or more nouns in the singular are equivalent to a plural, with regard to verbs as well as to adjectives : ex.

*Mon frère et ma sœur sont partis,* *My brother and sister are gone.*

That has already been mentioned in the adjectives.

If, among these nominatives, one is of the first person and the other of the second, or one is of the second and the others of the third, the verb must agree with the first in preference to the second, and with the second in preference to the third : we must therefore say,

*C'est vous et moi qui avons découvert tout ce complot,* *It is you and I who have discovered all that plot.*

*Ce n'est ni vous ni ma sœur* It is neither you nor my  
*qui avez ouvert la porte,* sister who have opened  
the door, &c.

The pronoun relative *qui*, in these and the like sentences, always takes place of the first or second person, and only agrees with the others in number: it is for that reason we must say,

*C'est moi qui suis cause de* It is I who am the cause of  
*ce malheur,* that misfortune;

*C'est vous qui avez révélé* It is you who have reveal-  
*ce secret,* ed that secret;

and not *qui a*, who has, as some people speak.

There are four conjugations in the French language. Each is distinguished by the termination of the verb in the infinitive mood.

The first makes	<i>er</i> ,	as <i>donner</i> , to give.
The second	<i>ir</i> ,	as <i>punir</i> , to punish.
The third	<i>evoir</i> ,	as <i>recevoir</i> , to receive.
The fourth	<i>re</i> ,	as <i>rendre</i> , to render.

*N. B.* It is necessary that the learner should be well acquainted with the manner of conjugating the two following verbs, because of the frequency of their occurrence in sentences and in forming the compound tenses of all other verbs.

## CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Preterite.
<i>Avoir</i> , to have.	<i>Avoir eu</i> , to have had.
Participle active.	Participle past.
<i>Ayant</i> , having.	<i>Ayant eu</i> , having had.
Participle passive.	
<i>Eu</i> , had.	

INDICA-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*J'ai*, I have.*Tu as*, thou hast.*Il a*, he has.*Elle a*, she has.

## Plural.

*Nous avons*, we have.*Vous avez*, you or ye have.*Ils ont*, they have.*Elles ont*, they have.

## Imperfect. Sing.

*J'avois*, I had.*Tu avois*, thou hadst.*Il avoit*, he had.

## Plural.

*Nous avions*, we had.*Vous aviez*, you had.*Ils avoient*, they had.

## Pret. defin. Sing.

*J'eus*, I had.*Tu eus*, thou hadst.*Il eut*, he had.

## Plural.

*Nous eûmes*, we had.*Vous eûtes*, you had.*Ils eurent*, they had.

## Future. Singular.

*J'aurai*, I shall or will have.*Tu auras*, thou wilt, &c. have.*Il aura*, he will, &c. have.

## Plural.

*Nous aurons*, we shall, &c. have.*Vous aurez*, you will, &c. have.*Ils auront*, they will, &c. have.

## Conditional-present. Singular.

*J'aurais*, I should, could, would, or might, have.*Tu aurais*, thou wouldest, &c. have.*Il auroit*, he would, &c. have.

## Plural.

*Nous aurions*, we should, &c. have.*Vous auriez*, you would, &c. have.*Ils auroient*, they would, &c. have.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive, *eu*, had, to the preceding: ex.

## Pret. indef.

*J'ai eu*, I have had, &c.

Pret.



Pret. ant. def.

*J'eus eu,* I had had, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

*J'avais eu,* &c. I had had, &c.

Future past.

*J'aurai eu,* &c. I will or shall have had, &c.

Cond. past.

*J'aurais eu,* &c. I would, should, could, or might, have had, &c.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Aie,* have thou.

*Qu'il aie,* let him have.

*Qu'elle aie,* let her have.

Plural.

*Ayons,* let us have.

*Ayez,* have ye or you.

*Qu'ils or elles aient,* let them have.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que j'aie,* that I may have, or have.

*tu aies,* thou mayest have.

*il ait,* he may have.

Plural.

*Que nous ayons,* that we may have.

*vous ayez,* you may have.

*ils aient,* they may have.

Imperfect. Singular.

*Que j'eusse,* that I might have, or had.

*tu eusses,* thou mightest have.

*il eût,* he might have.

Plural.

*Que nous eussions,* that we might have.

*vous eussiez,* you might have.

*ils eussent,* they might have.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive, *eu*, had, to the two preceding: ex.

Preterite.

Preterite.

*Que j'aie eu*, &c. that I may have had.

Preterpluperfect.

*Que j'eusse eu*, &c. that I might have had.

The learner ought to conjugate the preceding verb with a negation: ex.

*Je n'ai pas*, I have not;*Nous n'avons pas*, We have not;

always placing *ne* before the verb and *pas* after it.

## CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *ETRE*, TO BE.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

*Etre*, to be.

Participle active.

*Etant*, being.

Participle passive.

*Êté*, been.

Preterite.

*Avoir été*, to have been.

Participle past.

*Ayant été*, having been.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Je suis*, I am.*Tu es*, thou art.*Il est*, he is.

Plural.

*Nous sommes*, we are.*Vous êtes*, you are.*Ils sont*, they are.

Imperfect. Sing.

*J'étois*, I was.*Tu étois*, thou wast.*Il étoit*, he was.

Plural.

*Nous étions*, we were.*Vous étiez*, you were.*Ils étoient*, they were.

Pret. defm. Sing.

*Je fus*, I was.*Tu fus*, thou wast.*Il fut*, he was.

Plural.

*Nous fîmes*, we were.*Vous fûtes*, you were.*Ils furent*, they were.

Future. Singular.

*Je serai*, I shall or will be.*Tu seras*, thou wilt, &c. be.*Il sera*, he will, &c. be.

Plural.

## Plural.

*Nous serons*, we shall, &c. be.*Vous serez*, you will, &c. be.*Ils seront*, they will, &c. be.

## Conditional present. Singular.

*Je serois*, I would, could, should, or might, be.*Tu serois*, thou wouldst, &c. be.*Il seroit*, he would, &c. be.

## Plural.

*Nous serions*, we should, &c. be.*Vous seriez*, you would, &c. be.*Ils seroient*, they would, &c. be.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive of this verb, *été*, been, to the simple tenses of the indicative mood of the verb *avoir*: ex.

## Pret. indef.

*J'ai été*, &c. I have been, &c.

## Pret. anterior definite.

*J'eus été*, &c. I had been, &c.

## Preterpluperfect.

*J'avois été*, &c. I had been, &c.

## Future past.

*J'aurai été*, &c. I shall or will have been, &c.

## Conditional past.

*J'aurois été*, &c. I should, could, would, or might, have been, &c.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Sois*, be thou.*Qu'il soit*, let him be.

## Plural.

*Soyons*, let us be.*Soyez*, be ye.*Qu'ils soient*, let them be.

S U B-

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que je sois*, that I may be, or be.  
*tu sois*, thou mayest be.  
*il soit*, he may be.

Plural.

*Que nous soyons*, that we may be.  
*vous soyez*, you may be.  
*ils soient*, they may be.

Imperfect. Singular.

*Que je fusse*, that I might be, or were.  
*tu fusses*, thou mightest be.  
*il fût*, he might be.

Plural.

*Que nous fussions*, that we might be.  
*vous fussiez*, you might be.  
*ils fussent*, they might be.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle past of this verb, *été*, been, to the two simple tenses of the subjunctive mood of the verb *avoir*: ex.

Preterite.

*Que j'aie été*, that I may have been, &c.

Preterpluperfect.

*Que j'eusse été*, &c. that I might have been, &c.

This verb, as well as the preceding, is to be conjugated with the negation: ex.

*Je ne suis pas*, I am not.  
*Nous ne sommes pas*, We are not.

*N. B.* Here it is peculiarly necessary to observe, that the two above verbs, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be, are only auxiliaries when they are joined with some participle passive of another verb; otherwise, *être* may properly be called a *substantive-verb*; that is, a verb which only expresses the affirmation, without any inherent quality; and the verb *avoir* is an *active one*, which signifies to possess.

L

EXERCISES



## EXERCISES UPON THE TWO AUXILIARY VERBS.

## GENERAL OBSERVATION.

Every verb must agree with its nominative case in *person* and *number*; but, after collective nouns, such as *amas*, *foule*, *infinité*, *nombre*, *la plupart*, &c. followed by a genitive, the verb must agree with that genitive in *number*: ex.

*La plupart de ses amis l'ont abandonné,* Most of his friends have forsaken him.

In order to ease the learners, the different simple tenses are marked in the following exercises, as far as the irregular verbs, when it is hoped every difficulty will be removed by practice and attention. The second person singular, being seldom or never used in conversation, has been omitted throughout the exercises on the verbs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I have a book. — I am happy. — He has  
*livre, m.* *heureux, adj.*

a hat, which is too big. — We have no  
*chapeau, m.* *trop, adv.* *grand, adj.*

money. — We are not ambitious. — You have a  
*argent, m.* *ambitieux, adj.*

sword. — You are very proud. — Those girls  
*épée, f.* *orgueilleux, adj.* *filles, f.*

have modesty; they are virtuous.  
*modestie, f.* *vertueux, adj.*

IMP. I had a friend. — I was grateful. — My  
*ami, m.* *reconnoissant, adj.*

sister had no work, she was lazy. — We had  
*ouvrage, m.* *pareilleux, adj.*

a holiday, we were very glad of it. — You had  
*congé, m.* *aïse, adj.*

company, but you were not ready. — Your brothers  
*compagnie, f.* *mais, c.* *prêt, adj.*

2321-08177

had

had learning, they were loved by every body.

*savoir, m. aimé, p p. de*

PRET. (As soon as) I had a fine horse I

*Dès que, c. beau, adj. cheval, m.*

was merry. — My cousin had a little gar-

*de bonne humeur. cousin, m. petit, adj. jar-*

den, he was ingenious. — As soon as we had bread

*din, m. adroit, adj. pain, m.*

we were satisfied. — You had fine weather, you were

*rassasié, p. p. tems, m.*

pleased. — Your friends had beautiful flowers, they

*content, adj. beau, adj. fleur, f.*

were very careful of them.

*soigneux, adj.*

FUT. I shall have discretion; I shall be prudent.

— Miss White shall have a bird that will be very

*oiseau, m.*

tame. — We shall have no books; we shall not

*apprivoisé, adj.*

be learned. — You shall have pens, and paper; you

*savant, adj. plume, f. papier, m.*

will be busy. — The English will have a good

*occupé, adj.*

admiral; they will be victorious.

*amiral, m. victorieux, adj.*

COND. PRE. I could have a pretty dog. — I

*joli, adj. chien, m.*

would not be troublesome. — Mr. Thomas would have

*importun, adj.*

good wine; it would be a delicious thing. — We

*vin, m. ce délicieux, adj. chose, f.*

would have a dictionary; we would not be negligent.

*dictionnaire, m.*

— You would have good officers ; you would be in-  
*officier, m.* *in-*  
vincible. — These ladies should have a better re-  
*vincible, adj.* *dame, f.* *ac-*  
ception ; they would be thankful.  
*cueil, m.* *reconnoissant, adj.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Have patience, and be indulgent. — Let her have a  
gown ; let her be happy. — Let us have at least  
*robe, f.* *au moins, adv.*  
some gratitude ; let us be diligent. — Let them have  
*reconnoissance, f.*  
partridges ; let them be merry.  
*perdrix, f.* *joyeux, adj.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may have riches. — That I may  
*richesses, f. pl.*  
be charitable. — That he may have scholars. — That  
*écolier, m.*  
he may be attentive. — That we may have a good  
*attentif, adj.*  
house. — That we may be well lodged. — That  
*maison, f.* *bien, adj. logé, p. p.*  
you may have your money ; that you may be paid. —  
*argent, m.* *payé, p. p.*  
That they may have apples ; that they may be ripe.  
*pomme, f.* *mur, adj.*  
IMP. That I might have generosity. — That I  
*générosité, f.*  
might not be poor. — That he might have no plea-  
*pauvre, adj.* *plai-*  
sure. — That he might be uneasy. — That we might  
*sir, m.* *inquiet, adj.*  
have

have our share. — That we might not be deceived. —

*part, f.* *trompe, p.p.*

That you might have a couple of fowls. — That you

*couple, f.* *poulet, m.*

might be pleased. — That they might have no pen-

*content, adj.*

sion. — That they might not be rewarded.

*récompense, p.p.*

### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES UPON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

I have had (a great deal) of trouble; I have not

*bien, adv.* *peine, f.*

been rewarded. — Your brother would have had

*frère, m.*

leave if he had been diligent. — If you had mar-

*permission, f.* *épou-*

ried him, you would have had a tyrant instead

*se, p.p.* *tyran, m.* *au lieu, p.*

of a husband; you never could have been happy. —

*mari, m.* *ne jamais*

If we had fought we could not have been con-

*combattu, p.p.* *vain-*

quered. — Thomas has had two holidays because he

*cu, p.p.* *congé, m.* *parceque, c.*

has been very active. — Your friend could have had a

*actif, adj.*

better watch, he would not have been cheated. — Your

*montre, f.* *trompé, p.p.*

uncle and my brother have been wet. — You could

*oncle, m.* *mouillé, p.p.*

have killed a hare if you had had a gun.

*tué, p.p.* *lièvre, m.* *si, c.* *fusil, m.*



After these exercises, the learner ought to conjugate the two foregoing verbs, throughout the several tenses of the indicative mood only, first, with an interrogation affirmative, and then with an interrogation negative: ex.

## SINGULAR.

Affirmatively.

*Ai-je?* have I? *Suis-je?* am I?*A-t-il?* has he? *Est-il?* is he?*Mon frère a-t-il?* has my brother?*Sa fille est-elle?* is her daughter?

Negatively.

*N'ai-je pas?* have I not? *Ne suis-je pas?* am I not?*N'a-t-il pas?* has he not? *N'est-il pas?* is he not?*Ma sœur n'a-t-elle pas?* has not my sister?*Votre cousin n'est-il pas?* is not your cousin?

## PLURAL.

Affirmatively.

*Avons-nous?* have we? *Sommes-nous?* are we?*Avez-vous?* have you? *Etes-vous?* are you?*Ont-ils?* have they? *Sont-ils?* are they?*Vos frères ont-ils?* have your brothers? &c.*Ses filles sont-elles?* are his daughters? &c.

Negatively.

*N'avons-nous pas?* have we not?*N'avez-vous pas?* have you not?*N'ont-ils pas?* have they not?*Ses enfans n'ont-ils pas?* have not his children?*Ne sommes-nous pas?* are we not?*N'êtes-vous pas?* are you not?*Ne sont-ils pas?* are they not?*Mes sœurs ne sont-elles pas?* are not my sisters? &c.

N. B. In the interrogations, it must be observed, that, when there is a noun standing as a nominative to the verb, the pronouns, *il*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *ils*, *elles*, though not expressed in English, must be expressed in French immediately after the verb, according to the person and number; and, when the verb terminates with

with a vowel, a *-t-* is to be added, in the third person singular, between the verb and the pronoun, the noun beginning the phrase : ex.

*Votre oncle a-t-il des enfans?* Has your uncle any children?

that is, your uncle, has *he* any children?

*Mon cousin aura-t-il congé?* Will my cousin have a holiday?

that is, my cousin, will *he* have a holiday?

The same rule must be observed in the conjugation of the other verbs : ex.

*Votre frère joue-t-il du violon?* Does your brother play on the fiddle?

*Sa sœur dînera-t-elle ici aujourd'hui?* Will her sister dine here to-day? &c.

But, if the sentence begin with *que*, interrogative, or an *adverb*, the pronoun is not to be expressed, and the *noun* is to be put after the verb : ex.

*Que fait votre sœur?* What is your sister doing?

*Comment se porte votre frère?* How does your brother?

The learner will have no trouble in going through the other simple tenses of the indicative mood; and, as for the compounds, it needs only to be remarked, that *eu*, had, or *été*, been, is to be added to the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have : ex.

*Ai-je eu?* have I *had*?

*N'ai-je pas eu?* have I not *had*? &c.

*Ai-je été?* have I *been*?

*N'ai-je pas été?* have I not *been*? &c.

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

Have I my books? — Am I not unhappy to  
*malheureux*, adj. *de*  
 have

have lost his friendship? — Has he no money?  
*perdu, p.p. amitié, f.*

Is my sister arrived? — Has not your father a great  
*de vous arrivé, p.p.*

deal of friendship for you? — Have not your parents  
*amitié, f.*

sent you all the money you wanted? — Have  
*envoyé, p.p. avoir, v. besoin de*

we not a garden? — Are we not very happy? — Have  
*jardin, m.*

you a good gun? — Are you dexterous? — Have not  
*fusil, m. adroit, adj.*

my brother and sister a beautiful coach? — Are not  
*carrosse, m.*

Paul and Thomas two pretty children? — Are your  
*joli, adj.*

brothers arrived? — Are you not glad to see them?  
*de voir, v.*

— Have they spoken to you? — Had you not a little  
*parlé, p.p.*

dog? — Was not your paper very good? — Are not

the English ladies generally handsomer than the  
*généralement, adv.*

French? — Shall you have occasion for your dictio-  
*besoin, m. de*

ry? — Shall I not have the pleasure to see you to-  
*de voir, v. de-*

morrow? — Were you not in the room? — Shall we  
*main, adv. chambre, f.*

not have leave? — Will they not be angry? —  
*permission, f. fâché, adj.*

Could you not have had a better watch? — If France  
*Si, c.*

were

were as rich as England, would it not be the  
*riche, adj.* *ce, pro.*

best country in\* the world? — Will you not be asha-  
*pays, m.* *hon-*

med? — Has not your friend had bad weather?  
*teux, adj.* *mauvais, adj.* *tems, m.*

— Had not our admiral better seamen than yours? —  
*matelot, m.*

Has he been victorious? — Would not your hat be too  
*victorieux, adj.*

big? — Is not your sister older than mine? —  
*grand, adj.* *âgé, adj.*

Are you not happier than if you were married? —  
*marié, p.p.*

Shall not John have a holiday if he be diligent? —  
*Jean.*

Has not your cousin more money than you? — Was  
 not your wine very dear?

The learner will soon be convinced how necessary it is to know these two verbs perfectly well, because the compound tenses of all the others are formed with them. When he is well acquainted with their usage, he will only have to add the participle passive to any of their tenses: ex.

*J'ai aimé,* I have loved, or, did love.

*Je n'ai pas chanté,* I have not sung, or, I did not sing.

*Ai-je parlé?* have I spoken? or, did I speak?

*N'ai-je pas étudié?* have I not studied? or, did I not study?

*Avez-vous dansé?* have you danced? or, did you dance?

*N'avez-vous pas écrit?* have you not written? or, did you not write?

*Je suis puni,* I am punished.

*Je ne suis pas attendu,* I am not expected.

\* See the degrees of comparison.



*Suis-je aimé?* am I loved?

*Ne suis-je pas perdu?* am I not undone?

*Etes-vous marié?* are you married?

*N'êtes-vous pas convaincu?* are you not convinced?

# REMARK ON THE VERB *ETRE*, TO BE.

—In English, when this verb immediately precedes any noun, signifying *old*, *hungry*, *thirsty*, *cold*, *hot*, or *afraid*, it should be rendered into French by *avoir*, to have, and the adjective must be changed into its substantive: ex.

*Quel âge avez-vous?*

How *old* are you?

*J'ai sept ans,*

I am seven years old.

*Avez-vous faim?*

Are you *hungry*?

*Non, mais j'ai soif,*

No, but I am *thirsty*, &c.

## EXERCISES.

How old is your daughter? — She is seven years  
*Quel, pro. fille, f. an, m.*

old. — My son will be eleven years old (in the)  
*fil, m. an*

month of April. — I was very hungry when I  
*mois, m. Avril, m. grand, adj. quand, c.*

arrived. — Were you not very thirsty? — He is  
*suis arrivé, v. grand, adj.*

not afraid. — You will soon be warm. — Are  
*peur, f. bientôt, adv. chaud, m.*

you not cold? — How old are these two young chil-  
*froid, m. en-*

dren? — The one is three years old, and the other is  
*l'aut, m.*

not yet four. — Was not my sister more than  
*encore, adv.*

ten years old when she died?  
*quand, adv. mourut, v.*

FIRST

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Parl- <i>er</i> , to speak.
Participle active.	* <i>ant</i> , speaking.
Participle passive.	<i>é</i> , m. <i>ée</i> , f. spoken.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite.	<i>Avoir parlé</i> , to have spoken.
Part. past.	<i>Ayant parlé</i> , having spoken.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

<i>Je</i> parl- <i>e</i> ,	I speak, or, I do speak, or, am speaking.†
<i>Tu</i> <i>es</i> ,	thou speakest.
<i>Il</i> <i>e</i> ,	he speaks.

## Plural.

<i>Nous</i> * <i>ons</i> ,	we speak.
<i>Vous</i> <i>ez</i> ,	you speak.
<i>Ils</i> <i>ent</i> ,	they speak.

## Imperfect. Singular.

<i>Je</i> parl- <i>*ois</i> ,	I was speaking, spoke, or, did speak.
<i>Tu</i> <i>*ois</i> ,	thou wast speaking, &c.
<i>Il</i> <i>*oit</i> ,	he was speaking, &c.

## Plural.

<i>Nous</i> <i>ions</i> ,	we were speaking, &c.
<i>Vous</i> <i>iez</i> ,	you were speaking, &c.
<i>Ils</i> <i>*oient</i> ,	they were speaking, &c.

## Preterite. Singular.

<i>Je</i> parl- <i>*ai</i> ,	I spoke, or, did speak.
<i>Tu</i> <i>*as</i> ,	thou spokest.
<i>Il</i> <i>*a</i> ,	he spoke.

† When in English a participle active is joined to any of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *to be*, the auxiliary must be left out, in French, and the participle put in the same tense, &c. with the auxiliary that is suppressed: ex.

<i>Je parle</i> , I am speaking;	<i>Je priais</i> , I was desiring;
<i>Vous parlez</i> , you are speaking;	<i>Nous chantions</i> , we were singing;
and not <i>je suis parlant</i> , <i>vous êtes parlant</i> , <i>j'étais priant</i> , &c.	

## Plural.

## Plural.

*Nous* parl-*âmes*, we spoke.*Vous* *âtes*, you spoke.*Ils* *èrent*, they spoke.

## Future. Singular.

*Je* parl-*erai*, I shall or will speak.*Tu* *eras*, thou shalt or wilt speak.*Il* *era*, he shall or will speak.

## Plural.

*Nous* *erons*, we shall or will speak.*Vous* *erez*, you shall or will speak.*Ils* *eront*, they shall or will speak.

## Conditional present. Singular.

*Je* parl-*erois*, I should, would, could, or might, speak.*Tu* *erois*, thou shouldest, &c. speak.*Il* *eroit*, he should, &c. speak.

## Plural.

*Nous* *erions*, we should, &c. speak.*Vous* *eriez*, you should, &c. speak.*Ils* *eroient*, they should, &c. speak.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Pret. indefinite. *J'ai parlé*, I have spoken.Pret. ant. definit. *J'eus parlé*, I had spoken.Preterpluperfect. *J'avois parlé*, I had spoken.Future past. *J'aurai parlé*, I shall or will have spoken.Conditional past. *J'aurais parlé*, I should, would, could, have spoken.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

Parl-*e*, speak thou.*Qu'il* *e*, let him speak.

## Plural.

*\*ous*, let us speak.*ez*, speak ye.*Qu'ils* *ent*, let them speak.

## SUBJUNC-

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que je parl-e*, that I may speak, or, I speak.*tu es*, thou mayest speak.*il e*, he may speak.

Plural.

*nous ions*, that we may speak.*vous iez*, you may speak.*ils ent*, they may speak.

Imperfect. Singular.

*Que je parl-\*asse*, that I might speak, or, I spoke.*tu \*asses*, thou mightest speak.*il \*ât*, he might speak.

Plural.

*nous \*assions*, that we might speak.*vous \*assiez*, you might speak.*ils \*assent*, they might speak.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite. *Que j'aie parlé*, that I may have spoken.Preterpluper. *Que j'eusse parlé*, that I might have spoken.

After the same manner are conjugated about 2700 regular verbs. The following are excepted: viz.

*Aller*, being very irregular, will be seen among the irregular verbs.*Envoyer* is only irregular in the future and conditional present; as, instead of saying, *j'envoyerais*, I will send, &c. *j'envoyerois*, I would send, &c. according to the conjugation, we say;

Future.

Singular.

*J'envverrai*, I will send.*Tu envverras.**Il envverra.*

Plural.

*Nous envverrons.**Vous envverrez.**Ils envverront.*

\* Verbs of this conjugation, whose radix terminates in *c* or *c'*, immediately succeeded by *a* or *o*, require, for the softening of their sounds, that an *x* be added to the *c*, and a cedilla to the *c'*. Little stars are placed where these alterations are required.

M

Conditional



## Conditional present.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>J'enverrois</i> , I would send.	<i>Nous enverrions</i> .
<i>Tu enverrois</i> .	<i>Vous enverriez</i> .
<i>Il enverroit</i> .	<i>Ils enverroient</i> .

*Puer* is only irregular in the three persons of the present tense of the indicative mood ; as, *je pus*, *tu pus*, *il put*, instead of, *je pue*, &c. This verb is seldom used, for we say, *sentir mauvais*, instead of *puer*.

Verbs ending in *AYER* and *OYER*, as *essayer*, to try, *envoyer*, to send, change the *y* into *i* wherever the letter *y* is immediately followed by an *e* mute : ex. *j'essaie*, *tu essaies*, *il essaie* ; *j'envoie*, *tu envoies*, *il envoie*, &c.

The learner, having conjugated a verb affirmatively and negatively, ought to conjugate two others, with an interrogation affirmative and negative, in the indicative mood only, and so on through the other conjugations, before he makes the exercises : ex.

## Affirmatively.

*Manges-tu ?* dost thou eat ?

*Mange-t-il ?* does he eat ?

*Parlons-nous ?* do we speak ? &c.

## Negatively.

*Ne parlé-je pas ?* do-I not speak ?

*Ma sœur ne chante-t-elle pas ?* does not my sister sing ?

*N. B.* In many verbs, the common usage does not admit an interrogation in the first person singular, present, of the indicative mood. — Instead of saying,

*Manjé-je ?* Do I eat ? *Punis-je ?* Do I punish ? &c. we say, *Est-ce que je mange ?* *Est-ce que je punis ?* &c.

Some verbs, ending in *e* mute, in the first person singular, present, of the indicative mood, change the *e* mute into an *é* with an acute accent, and *je* after it ; as it is seen by *parlé-je*.

It

It has before been observed, that the compound tenses are easily formed, by adding the participle passive of the verb to any of the tenses of the auxiliaries, *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, as they have been conjugated, either affirmatively, negatively, or interrogatively: ex.

Affirmatively.

*J'ai dansé*, I have danced, or, I did dance.

Negatively.

*Je n'ai pas parlé*, I have not spoken, or, I did not speak.

Interrogatively affirmatively.

*Avez-vous chanté?* Have you sung? or, Did you sing?

Interrogatively negatively.

*N'a-t-il pas mangé?* Has he not eaten, or, Did he not eat?

Observe that we make use of

*Mener*, To take, to carry.

*Amener*, To bring,

*Emmener*, To carry or take away,

and all the compound verbs of *mener*, whenever we speak of rational or irrational beings to which nature has given the faculty of walking, or has not deprived them from it through illness or accident: in all other cases we make use of

*Porter*, To carry,

*Apporter*, To bring,

*Emporter*, To carry or take away,

and all the compounds of *porter*.

## EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I play sometimes but I never

*jou-er*, v. *quelquefois*, adv. *mais*, c. *ne jamais*, adv.

win. — How much does your brother give  
*gagn-er*, v. *Combien*, adv. *donn-er*, v.

for his board? — We do not command; we pray. —

*pen-sion*, f. *command-er*, v. *pri-er*, v.

You always borrow; you never lend. — You  
*toujours, adv. emprunt-er, v. prêt-er, v.*

are always speaking when I write. — Why  
*quand, adv. écris, v. Pourquoi, adv.*

do you not grant him that favour? — What do  
*accord-er, v. grace, f.*

they ask you?  
*demand-er, v.*

IMP. I was desiring them to sing a song. —  
*pri-er, v. de chant-er, v. chanson, f.*

She was not speaking to you. — Were we not joking? —  
*badin-er, v.*

Were you not scolding them when I came? — They  
*grond-er, v. vins, v.*

were eating fish.  
*mang-er, v. poisson, m.*

PRET. I spoke to them (a long while.) — Did not  
*long-temps, adv.*

the king forgive them? — We wept for joy  
*roi, m. pardonn-er, v. pleur-er, v. de joie, f.*

when we found her. — Why did you not play on  
*trouv-er, v.*

Friday last? — They fastened the man to a  
*Vendredi, m. dernier, adj. li-er, v.*

tree, knocked him down, and then robbed  
*arbre, m. assomm-er, v. ensuite, adv. vol-er, v.*

him of his watch, gold ring, and all the money he  
*montre, f. bagne, f.*

had in his pocket.  
*poch-er, v.*

FUT. I will buy a watch the first time I  
*achet-er, v. fois, f.*

go to London. — Will not your father send  
*vrai, v. envoy-er, v.*

you

you to school this winter? — What shall we give him?

*école, f. biver, m.*

— Will you not carry the children to the play? —

*men-er, v. enfant, m. comédie, f.*

They will empty the bottle if you do not take

*vid-er, v. bouteille, f. emport-er, v.*

it away.

COND. PRE. I would lend them money if they

*prêt-er, v.*

were not so idle. — Would not your mother de-

*pareffeux, adj.*

spise such a conduct? — Why should we send

*pris-er, v. tel, adj. conduite, f.*

them there? — I am sure you would marry her

*sûr, adj.*

*épous-er, v.*

if she were rich. — Would they not pay us if they

*riche, adj.*

*pay-er, v.*

had money?

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Bridle my horse, and bring him to me. —

*Brid-er, v. cheval, m. amen-er, v.*

Give a chair to that lady. — Let her not (come up,)

*chaise, f. dame, f. mont-er, v.*

for I am engaged. — Let us carry those peaches to Mrs.

*engagé, p.p.*

*pêche, f.*

D—— Do not neglect your affairs. — Let them

*néglig-er, v. affaire, f.*

hunt.

*chass-er, v.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may help you. — Thought he

*aid-er, v.*

*Quoique, c.*

Conjunctions which require the subjunctive mood.



do not approve of my plan. — Provided we  
*approuv-er, v.* *plan, m.* *Pourvu que, c.*  
 avoid their company. — That you may try  
*évit-er, v.* *compagnie, f.* *éprouv-er, v.*  
 that gun. — That they may not command.  
*fusil, m.*

IMP. That I might change my opinion. — That  
*chang-er, v.* *opinion, f.*  
 he might eat an apple. — That we might not fall  
*pourrait, f.* *tomb-er, v.*  
 into their hands. — That you might encourage the  
*dans, p.* *main, f.* *encourag-er, v.*  
 industrious. — That they might exercise their ta-  
*industrious, adj.* *exerc-er, v.* *tal-  
 ents, m.*

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

I have forgotten to bring your penknife. — He  
*oubli-er, v.* *de* *canif, m.*  
 has not yet spoken to us. — Has she brought her  
*encore, adv.*  
 work with her? — Have we not gained that cause? —  
*gagn-er, v.*  
 Why have you not yet begun your exercise? —  
*commenc-er, v.* *temps, f.*  
 You had taken the mustard away. — You would  
*mustarde, f.*  
 have judged more favourably of him. — Stay  
*jug-er, v.* *favorablement, adv.* *Rest-er, v.*  
 here till we have dined. — Could we not  
*ici, adv.* *jusqu'à ce que, c.* *pourrions-nous, v.*  
 have assisted that family? — They have broken their  
*aider, v.* *famille, f.* *cass-er, v.*  
 windows,

windows, because they had not illuminated as  
*fenêtre, f. parceque, c. illumin-er, v. comme, adv.*  
 it had been ordered. — I shall have dined soon. —  
*ordonn-er, v. bientôt, adv.*

We would have sent them to prison if they had  
*envoy-er, v. en prison, f.*

refused. — That we may have denied the fact. —  
*refus-er, v. ni-er, v. fait, m.*

Had you not imitated their manners. — They had not  
*imit-er, v. manière, f.*

executed his commands. — Had I not lighted  
*exécut-er, v. commandement, m. allum-er, v.*  
 the fire. — They would have carried him to the con-  
*feu, m.*

cert if I had not hindered them (from it.) — We  
*empêch-er, v.*

might have accepted of his offers.  
*accept-er, v. offre, f.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Pun-ir, to punish.  
 Participle active. *issant, punishing.*  
 Participle passive. *i, m, s, f. punished.*

### COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite. *Avoir puni, to have punished.*  
 Part. past. *Ayant puni, having punished.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Je pun-is, I punish, I do punish, or I am punishing.*

*Tu is.*

*Il it.*

*I have punished.*

Plural.

## Plural.

*Nous pun-issons*, we punish, &c.

*Vous issen.*

*Ils issent.*

## Imperfect. Singular.

*Je pun-issais*, I did punish, or I was punishing.

*Tu issais.*

*Il issait.*

## Plural.

*Nous issions*, we did punish, &c.

*Vous issiez.*

*Ils issaient.*

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je pun-is*, I punished, or I did punish.

*Tu is.*

*Il it.*

## Plural.

*Nous imes*, we punished, &c.

*Vous ites.*

*Ils irent.*

## Future. Singular.

*Je pun-irai*, I shall or will punish.

*Tu iras.*

*Il ira.*

## Plural.

*Nous irons*, we shall or will punish.

*Vous irez.*

*Ils iront.*

## Conditional present. Singular.

*Je pun-irois*, I should, would, could, or might, punish.

*Tu irois.*

*Il iroit.*

## Plural.

*Nous irions*, we should, &c. punish.

*Vous iriez.*

*Ils iroient.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Pret. indefin. *J'ai puni*, I have punished.

Pret.

Pret. ant. def. *J'en puni*, I had punished.  
 Preterpluperf. *J'avais puni*, I had punished.  
 Future past. *J'aurai puni*, I shall, &c. have punished.  
 Cond. past. *J'aurais puni*, I should, &c. have punished.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.  
*Pun-is*, punish thou.  
*Qu'il isse*, let him punish.  
 Plural.  
*issons*, let us punish.  
*issez*, punish ye.  
*Qu'ils issent*, let them punish.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.  
*Que je pun-isse*, that I may punish, or I punished.  
*tu isses.*  
*il isse.*  
 Plural.  
*nous issions*, that we may punish.  
*vous issiez.*  
*ils issent.*  
 Imperfect. Singular.  
*Que je pun-isse*, that I might punish, or I punished.  
*tu isses.*  
*il it.*  
 Plural.  
*nous issions*, that we might punish.  
*vous issiez.*  
*ils issent.*

### COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite. *Que j'ai puni*, that I may have punished.  
 Preterplu. *Que j'eusse puni*, that I might have punished.

After the same manner are conjugated about 200 regular verbs; the following are excepted, as being irregular.

*Acquérir,*



<i>Acquérir</i> , to acquire.	<i>Ouvrir</i> , to open.
<i>Affaillir</i> , to assault.	<i>Partir</i> , to set out.
<i>Bouillir</i> , to boil.	<i>Se repentir</i> , to repent.
<i>Courir</i> , to run.	<i>Sentir</i> , to smell.
<i>Cueillir</i> , to gather.	<i>Servir</i> , to serve.
<i>Dormir</i> , to sleep.	<i>Sortir</i> , to go out.
<i>Faillir</i> , to fail.	<i>Souffrir</i> , to suffer.
<i>Fuir</i> , to fly, to avoid.	<i>Tenir</i> , to hold.
<i>Mentir</i> , to lie.	<i>Venir</i> , to come.
<i>Mourir</i> , to die.	<i>Vêtir</i> , to clothe.
<i>Offrir</i> , to offer.	And their compounds.

## EXERCISES UPON THIS CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I always finish my work before  
*toujours, adv. fin-ir, v. ouvrage, m. avant, p.*  
the others.—Your friend does not succeed in his  
*ami, m. réussir-ir, v. dans, p.*  
undertaking.—Do we not furnish arms against  
*entreprise, f. fourner-ir, v. arms, f. contre, p.*  
ourselves?—Why do you hate him?—They  
*hater-ir, v.*  
cure the diseases of the body and not those of  
*guérir-ir, v. maladie, f. corps, m.*  
the mind.  
*esprit, m.*

IMP. I was building my house when you de-  
*bâtir-ir, v. maison, f. quand, adv. dé-*  
molished yours.—Was he not enjoying a good  
*molir-ir, v. jouir-ir de, v.*  
estate?—We hated him, because he did not act kind-  
*bien, m. parceque, c. agir-ir, v. bon-*  
ly towards us.—On what were you re-  
*assentiment, adv. envers, p. Sur, p. ré-*  
flecting?

resounding ? — The mountains were resounding with  
*fléch-ir, v. montagne, f. retent-ir, v. de*  
 their cries.  
*cri, m.*

PRET. I warranted them very good. — Did your  
*garant-ir, v.*

master accomplish his promise? — We (leaped over)  
*maître, m. accompl-ir, v. promesse, f. franch-ir, v.*  
 the ditch, and seized the guilty. — Why did you not  
*fossé, m. saïs-ir, v. coupable, adj.*

applaud that pretty actress? — Did not the soldiers  
*applaud-ir, v. joli, adj. actrice, f. soldat, m.*

obey the commands of their general?  
*obé-ir, v. à commandement, m.*

FUT. When shall I banish all these thoughts  
*bann-ir, v. tout, adj. pensée, f.*  
 from my mind? — This plant will soon blossom if you  
*plante, f. fleur-ir, v.*

water it often. — We shall warn your relations  
*arroser, v. souvent, adv. avert-ir, v. parent, m.*

of it. — Shall you not enjoy, as we do, the  
*comme, adv.*

pure pleasures of the country? — Her children will  
*pur, adj.*

bless her for it.

*bén-ir, v.*

COND. PRE. I would choose this cloth, if I were  
*chois-ir, v. drap, m.*

in your place. — Would he not blush if he acted  
*roug-ir, v.*

so? — We would not punish them if they were  
*ainsi, adv.*

diligent. — Would you not act with less seve-  
*avec, p. moins, adv. sévé-*  
 rity?

city? — They could furnish us with arms and troops  
*rité, f.* *troupe, f.*

if we wanted any.

*avoir besoin*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Do not fill the glasses. — Let him enjoy the  
*rempl-ir, v.* *verre, m.*

fruit of his labours. — Let us reflect on what we have  
*travail, m.*

to do. — Let them define the question.

*à faire, v.*

*défin-ir, v.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may not perish. — I wish he  
 *pér-ir, v.* *souhaiter, v.*

may succeed. — That we may not (bear hardships.) —  
*réuss-ir, v.* *pât-ir, v.*

That you may not hate us. — Provided they do not  
 (grow tall.)

*grand-ir, v.*

IMP. That I might refresh my memory. —  
*rafraich-ir, v.* *mémoire, f.*

That she might not roast the meat. — That we  
*rôt-ir, v.*

might (become younger.) — That you might punish  
*rajeun-ir, v.*

the idle. — That they might not (grow old.)

*vieillir, v.*

### COMPOUND TENSES.

I have filled my cellar with good wine. — Has  
*rempl-ir, v.* *cave, f.* *de*

he not leaped over the ditch? — We had finished our

work.

work. — They would have seized him. — We  
*ouvrage, m.*

should have perished without any assistance. — When  
*sans, p. secours, m.*

shall I have built my house? — I have (very much)  
*bât-ir, v. beaucoup, adv.*

weakened his courage. — Though they have adorn-  
*affoibl-ir, v. Quoique, c. em-*

ed their gardens to dazzle the vulgar, they  
*bell-ir, v. jardin, m. pour éblou-ir, v. vulgaire, m.*

have not succeeded, because they have disobeyed  
*parceque, c. désobé-ir, v. à*

their father and mother.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Rec-evoir, to receive:  
 Part. active. *évant*, receiving.  
 Part. passive. \**u, m. ue, f.* received.

#### COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite. *Avoir reçu*, to have received.  
 Part. past. *Ayant reçu*, having received.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Je reç-ois*, I receive, I do receive, or I am receiving.

*Tu ois.*

*Il oit.*

Plural.

*Nous evons*, we receive, &c.

*Vous evex.*

*Ils oivent.*

\* Verbs of this conjugation, whose radix terminates in *c*, require, for the softening of their sound, that a *ce* be added to the (*c*) whenever it is followed by *o* or *v*.

N

Imperfect.



## Imperfect. Singular.

*Je rec-evois*, I did receive, or I was receiving.*Tu avois*.*Il avoit*.

## Plural.

*Nous avions*, we did receive, &c.*Vous aviez*.*Ils avoient*.

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je reç-us*, I received, or I did receive.*Tu us*.*Il ut*.

## Plural.

*Nous âmes*, we received, &c.*Vous âtes*.*Ils urent*.

## Future. Singular.

*Je rec-eurai*, I shall or will receive.*Tu euras*.*Il eura*.

## Plural.

*Nous eurons*, we shall or will receive.*Vous eurez*.*Ils euront*.

## Conditional present. Singular.

*Je rec-eurois*, I should, would, could, or might, receive.*Tu eurois*.*Il euroit*.

## Plural.

*Nous eussions*, we should, &c. receive.*Vous eussiez*.*Ils eussent*.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Pret. indefin. *J'ai reçu*, I have received.Pret. ant. def. *J'eus reçu*, I had received.Preterpluperf. *J'avois reçu*, I had received.Future past. *J'aurai reçu*, I shall, &c. have received.Cond. past. *J'aurais reçu*, I should, &c. have received.

I M P E-

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Reç-ois, receive thou.

Qu'il oive, let him receive.

Plural.

evons, let us receive.

eviez, receive ye.

Qu'ils oivent, let them receive.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je reç-oive, that I may receive, or I receive.

tu oives.

il oive.

Plural.

nous evions, that we may receive.

vous eviez.

ils oivent.

Imperfect. Singular.

Que je reç-usse, that I might receive, or I received.

tu usses.

ilût.

Plural.

nous ussions, that we might receive.

vous ussiez.

ils ussent.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite. Que j'aie reçu, that I may have received.

Preterplu. Que j'eusse reçu, that I might have received.

Recevoir des nouvelles de To hear from somebody.  
quelqu'un,After the same manner are conjugated 7 verbs only;  
the following are excepted, being irregulars:

Assoir, to sit down.

Mouvoir, to move.

Déchoir, to decay.

Pleuvoir, (v. imp.) to rain.

Falloir, (verb impersonal,)

Pouvoir, to be able.

to be needful.

Savoir, to know.

*Valoir*, to be worth.*Voir*, to see.*Vouloir*, to be willing.

And their compounds.

## EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I entertain great hopes from his conduct. — I am to write to your brother to-morrow

*cont-evoir, v.* *espérance, f.* *con-*  
*duite, f.* \* *écrire, v.*

to let him know that your father is arrived. —

*pour faire, v.* *savoir, v.*

A commander ought to be intrepid in the midst

*commandant, m.* *d-evoir, v.* *au milieu, m.*

of dangers. — He is to go and breakfast at my

*aller, v.* *déjeuner, v.* *chez, p.*

uncle's next Sunday, and he is to come and sup

*venir, v.* *souper, v.*

with us. — We sometimes entertain a hatred for per-

*quelquefois, adv.* *haine, f.*

sons who deserve our friendship. — Do you not per-

*mériter, v.* *amitié, f.* *ap-*

ceive a mountain beyond that tree? — We are

*perc-evoir, v.* *derrière, p.*

to remit him the value in goods or in

*remettre, v.* *valeur, f.* *en, p.* *marchandise, f.*

money. — Are you not to dine with my father and mo-

ther to-morrow? — Men commonly owe their vir-

*demain, adv.* *d-evoir, v.*

\* When the verb *to be* is used in the present or imperfect tenses of the indicative mood, and pretends another verb in the infinitive mood, denoting a futurity in the action, it is to be rendered in French by the finite tenses of the verb *devoir*, and not by *être*: ex.

*Je dois aller au parc,*

I am to go to the park.

*Nous devons lui écrire,*

We want to write to him.

tues or their vices to education (as much as) to  
*autant que, c.*

nature. — Are these young ladies to go to the  
*aller, v.*

ball?

*bal, m.*

IMP. I owed four guineas to your aunt when she  
*guinée, f.*

died. — Was not your brother to receive that money  
*mourir, v.*

last Tuesday? — We received his tiresome visits  
*Mardi, m. ennuyant, adj.*

because we were obliged to it. — Were you not to let  
*obliger, v. faire, v.*

them know it sooner? — They were not to stay  
*savoir, v. rester, v.*

above six weeks.

*plus, adv.*

PRE. I received yesterday, with (a great deal) of  
*bien, adv.*

pleasure, the books you sent me. — As soon as we  
*envoyer, v.*

perceived the danger we warned him of it. — They  
*avertir, v.*

heard yesterday from your brother.

FUT. I shall entertain a bad opinion of you  
*mauvais, adj.*

if you do not avoid Mr. R——'s company. — We  
*éviter, v.*

shall owe him nothing more after this month. — I hope  
*après, p.*

you will receive all my letters during my absence.

*pendant, p.*



COND. PRE. I should answer your brother's  
\* *répondre, v. à*

letter, but I have not time. — Ought not your sister to  
*tenir, m.*

give your mother an account of all her actions? —  
*rendre, v. compte, m.*

She would soon perceive the danger, if she knew  
*bientôt, adv. savoit, v.*

the consequences of it. — Children should every day

learn something by heart. — You should not  
*apprendre, v. cœur, m.*

despise the advice that he gives you. — Should they,  
*mépriser, v. avis, m.*

after what they have done, expect to receive  
*après, p. fait, p. p. s'attendre, v. à*

favours?

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Receive this small present as a token of my  
*marque, f.*  
friendship.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP. Though I perceive ships  
*Quoique, c. vaisseau, m.*

\* When the word *should* expresses a duty or necessity, or can with propriety be turned by *ought*, it is rendered in French by the conditional present of the verb *devoir*: ex.

*Je devrois aller le voir, I should, or ought to, go and see him.*  
*Vous devriez le secourir dans sa misère, You should help him in his misery,*  
*fre, &c. &c.*

The words *should* or *ought*, when joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, must be rendered by the conditional past of the above verb, with the participle passive turned into the present of the infinitive mood: ex.

*J'aurais dû l'obliger à rester ici, I should, or ought to, have obliged him to stay here.*  
*Nous aurions dû revenir plutôt, We should have come back sooner.*  
(*afar*)

(afar off,) I cannot distinguish them. — He  
*de loin, adv. ne saurois, v.*

wrote to us by the first post, that we might  
*écrivait, v. ordinaire, m.*

receive his orders (in proper time.)  
*à tems, adv.*

### COMPOUND TENSES.

I have not yet received his answer. — You  
*encore, adv. réponse, f.*

should have (been making) your theme this morning  
*\* faire, v. matin, m.*

instead of playing. — He has entertained the hope  
*au lieu, p.*

of living here all his life. — She ought to have  
*vivre, v. ici, adv. vis, f.*

thanked him for the good advice he gave her. —  
*remercier, v. de, p.*

When did you hear from your sister? — We have  
 not heard from her since her departure. — Your  
*depuis, p. départ, m.*

uncle should not have obliged him to pay half the  
*oncle, m. \* à moitié, f.*

expenses. — We should have owed him a hundred  
*frais, m. pl.*

livres. — I beg your pardon, I ought not to have  
*livre, f. demander, v.*

made you wait so long. — Ought not we to  
*faire, v. attendre, v. long-tems, adv.*

have employed our time better than (we did) the  
*employer, v. nous n'avons fait*

last three months we were in France?

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Vend-*re*, to sell.  
 Part. active. *ant*, selling.  
 Part. passive. *u, m. ue, f. fold*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Je* vend-*s*, I sell, I do sell, or I am selling.  
*Tu* vend-*s*.  
*Il* vend.

## Plural.

*Nous* vend-*ons*, we sell, &c.

*Vous* *ez*.

*Ils* *ent*.

## Imperfect. Singular.

*Je* vend-*ois*, I did sell, or was selling.

*Tu* *ois*.

*Il* *oit*.

## Plural.

*Nous* *ions*, we did sell, &c.

*Vous* *iez*.

*Ils* *oient*.

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je* vend-*is*, I sold, or did sell.

*Tu* *is*.

*Il* *it*.

## Plural.

*Nous* *îmes*, we sold, &c.

*Vous* *îtes*.

*Ils* *irent*.

## Future. Singular.

*Je* vend-*rai*, I shall or will sell.

*Tu* *ras*.

*Il* *ra*.

## Plural.

*Nous* *rons*, we shall or will sell,

*Vous* *rez*.

*Ils* *ront*.

Conditional

## Conditional present. Singular.

*Je vend-rois, I should, could, would, or might, sell.**Tu rois.**Il roit.*

## Plural.

*Nous rions, we should, &c. sell.**Vous riez.**Ils roient.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Pret. indefin. *J'ai vendu, I have sold.*Pret. ant. def. *J'eus vendu, I had sold.*Preterpluperf. *J'avois vendu, I had sold.*Future past. *J'aurai vendu, I shall, &c. have sold.*Cond. past. *J'aurois vendu, I should, &c. have sold.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Vends, sell thou.**Qu'il vende, let him sell.*

Plural.

 *vendez, let us sell.* *vendez, sell ye.**Qu'ils vendent, let them sell.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que je vend-e, that I may sell, or I sell.**tu es.**il e.*

Plural.

*Que nous ions.**vous ez.**ils ent.*

Imperfect. Singular.

*Que je vend-isse, that I might sell, or I sold.**tu isses.**il it.*

Plural.



## Plural.

*Que nous vend-issions.**vous issiez.**ils issent.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite. *Que j'aie vendu*, that I may have sold.Preterplu. *Que j'eusse vendu*, that I might have sold.

After the same manner are conjugated about 40 verbs.  
The following are excepted as being irregular.

*Absoudre*, to absolve.*Battre*, to beat.*Boire*, to drink.*Circoncire*, to circumcise.*Conclure*, to conclude.*Conduire*, to conduct.And all the verbs ending  
in *uire*.*Confire*, to preserve.*Connoître*, to know.And all those ending in  
*oitre*.*Coudre*, to sew.*Craindre*, to fear.And all those ending in  
*indre*.*Croire*, to believe.*Dire*, to tell, to say.*Ecrire*, to write.*Faire*, to make, to do.*Frîre*, to fry.*Lire*, to read.*Mettre*, to put.*Moudre*, to grind.*Naitre*, to be born.*Paitre*, to graze, to feed.*Plaire*, to please.*Prendre*, to take.*Rire*, to laugh.*Suffire*, to suffice, to be  
sufficient.*Suivre*, to follow.*Se taire*, to hold one's  
tongue.*Traire*, to milk.*Vaincre*, to conquer.*Vivre*, to live.

And their compounds.

*N.B.* Verbs of this conjugation, whose radix terminates in *p*, as *romp-re*, *corromp-re*, &c. take a *t* in the third person singular of the present tense indicative mood: ex. *je romps*, *tu romps*, *il rompt*: the rest are conjugated as *vendre*.

## EXERCISES

## EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I do not mean to wrong him. —  
*prétend-re, v. & faire tort, v. lui, pro.*

Is your mother coming down? — We expect our  
*descend-re, v. attend-re, v.*

friend Mr. A — Do not you forbid her to  
*défend-re, v. de*

go there? — They sell bad fruit.  
*aller, v. mauvais, adj.*

IMP. Did I not interrupt him whilst he  
*interromp-re, v. pendant que, c.*

was answering them? — She was melting into tears  
*répond-re, v. fond-re, v. en, p. larme, f.*

when you arrived. — Were we not losing our time?  
*arriver, v. perd-re, v. tems, m.*

— You were not spreading your nets. — Did they  
*étend-re, v. filet, m.*

corrupt our manners?  
*corromp-re, v. mœurs, f. pl.*

PRET. (As soon as) I had received my money, I  
*Dès que, c.*

returned them what they had lent me. — Did he not  
*rend-re, v. prêter, v.*

hear you? — We (waited for) them a month,  
*entend-re, v. attend-re, v. mois, m.*

— (For how much) did you sell it to them? — They  
*Combien, adv.*

did spill all the wine.  
*répand-re, v.*

FUT. I shall shear my flock (in the) month  
*tond-re, v. troupeau, m. au'*

of

of May. — If you do not take care, the dog will  
*Mai, m. prenez, v. garde, f.*

bite you. — Shall we not lose if we play? — You  
*mord-re, v.*

will melt it, if you put it into the fire. —  
*fond-re, v. mettez, v. dans, p.*

They<sup>s</sup> shall<sup>s</sup> not<sup>s</sup> hear<sup>s</sup> of<sup>s</sup> me<sup>s</sup> (any<sup>s</sup> more.)  
*entend-re parler, v. plus, adv.*

COND. PRE. Should I not do him the jus-  
*rend-re, v.*

tice he deserves? — Would he not interrupt you? —  
*mériter, v.*

We would defend them if we could. — Why  
*defend-re, v. pouvions, v.*

would you not answer if I were speaking to you?  
*répond-re, v.*

— Your hens would (lay eggs) every day if they  
*poule, f. pond-re, v.*

were not so fat.  
*gras, adj.*

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Give<sup>s</sup> God<sup>s</sup> thanks<sup>s</sup>. — Let her not come  
*Rend-re, v. Dieu, m. grace, f.*

down. — Let us (give up) our accounts faithfully. —  
*rend-re, v. compte, m. fidèlement, adv.*

Do not lose my book. — Let them hear the voice of  
*voix, f.*  
 the Lord.

*Seigneur, m.*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP. Speak loud that I may hear  
*haut, adv.*

what you say. — She plays upon the harpsichord  
*dites, v. clavecin, m.*

though

though you forbid her to do it. — He wrote  
*quoique, c. défend-re, v. de faire, v. écrivit, v.*  
 to us that we might not expect him.  
*attend-re, v.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

I have lost my book; have you found it? —  
*perd-re, v. trouver, v.*  
 She has broken her fan. — Have you not inter-  
*ramp-re, v. éventail, m.*  
 rupted me several times? — I had not then an-  
*alors, adv. ré-*  
 swered his letter. — If they (had gone) there,  
*pond-re, v. a étoient allés, v.*  
 would they not have lost their time? — He says he  
*dit*  
 would have sold us very good wine. — Had you  
*vend-re, v.*  
 not forbidden her to speak? — That they might have  
*de*  
 waited for us.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE REGU-  
LAR VERBS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

**PRÉS.** I love attentive scholars, but I punish  
*attentif, adj. écolier, m. mais, c.*  
 severely laziness and inattention. — Your bro-  
*sevérement, adv. paresse, f.*  
 ther does not receive this news with pleasure. —  
*nouvelle, f.*  
 Do we not expect your mother to-day? — We  
*attendre, v.*  
 hope — (that) you will succeed in your undertaking. —  
*espérer, v. réussir, v.*



Why do you not fulfil your promise? —  
*Pourquoi, adv. accomplir, v. promesse, f.*

They perceive the danger, and they do not en-  
*appercevoir, v. tâ-*

deavour to shun it.  
*cher, v. de éviter, v.*

IMP. I was speaking of your aunt when you  
*tante, f.*

(came in,) and was doing her the justice she deserves.  
*entrer, v. rendre, v. mériter, v.*

—Mr. N. did not act towards your son with much  
*agir, v. fils, m.*

tenderness. — Mr. P. and I were answering your  
*tendresse, f.*

letters when you arrived. — You undoubtedly en-  
*arriver, v. sans doute, adv. con-*

tertained great hopes from his last voyage. —  
*cevoir, v. dernier, adj.*

They were spending their money in trifles, in-  
*dépenser, v. en, p. bagatelle, f. au*

stead of buying books.  
*lieu de, c. acheter, v.*

PRET. I built this house in one thousand seven  
 hundred and seventy-nine. — Your father yesterday  
*hier, adv.*

received agreeable news. — She burst into tears  
*fondre, v.*

after your cousin was gone. — We sent him a  
*après que, c. parti, p. p.*

great deal of money unknown to your mother. —  
*à l'insçu, p. de*

Why did you not finish your work sooner? —  
*finir, v.*

(As

(As soon as) they perceived us, they (ran away.)  
*Dès que, c. priront la fuite.*

FUT. I will (give up) my accompts (at the) be-  
*rendre, v. au*

ginning of next week. — My friend, Mrs. R.  
*prochain, adj. semaine, f.*

will dine with me next Wednesday. — We shall seize  
*Mercredi, m. saisir, v.*

the first opportunity to thank him for his kind-  
*occasion, f. pour remercier, v. de bon-*

nesses. — You will soon entertain a better opinion  
*té, f. bientôt, adv.*

of him. — Will not your sisters (come down) to-day?  
*descendre, v.*

COND. PRÉS. I would lay two guineas your  
*gager, v.*

uncle is not yet arrived. — If my father were rich, he  
*arriver, v.*

would rebuild his country-house. — Should we not ex-  
*rebâtir, v. Devoir, v. ex-*

press our gratitude towards those who do us  
*primer, v. reconnaissance, f. font, v.*

good? — If you would, you could render great ser-  
*bien, m. vouliez, v. rendre, v.*

vices to your country. — I am certain (that) they would  
*pays, m.*

reward you if you deserved it.  
*récompenser, v. mériter, v.*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Discharge with equity the duties of your office. —  
*Remplir, v. équité, f. devoir, m. charge, f.*

Let him receive the punishment due to his crime. —  
*punition, f. dû, p. p.*

Let us give God thanks for the good news we re-  
*rendre, v.* *grace, f. de*

ceived yesterday. — Imitate the great actions of your  
*hier, adv.*

ancestors. — Let them enjoy the fruit of their  
*ancêtres, m.* *jouir, v. de*

labours.  
*travail, m.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. Write to me by the first post, that  
*Ecrivez, v.* *ordinaire, m. afin que, c.*

I may receive your letter before my departure from  
*avant, p.* *départ, m.*

London. — Though he hear what you say, yet  
*Quoique, c.* *entendre, v.* *dites, v.*

he does not understand you. — She is never pleased  
*comprendre, v.* *content, adj.*

though we obey her in (every thing.) — I will tell  
*en, p.* *tout.* *dirai, v.*

it to you, provided you do not speak of it to your  
*pourvu que, c.*

sister. — He will pay them, provided they wait a  
*attendre, v.*

little longer.

*long-temps, adv.*

IMP. I wrote to your father (sometime ago.)  
*écrivis, v.* *il y a quelque temps,*

that he might engage Mr. W. to come here and  
*afin que, c.*

spend the holidays with us. — That she might reflect  
*passer, v.* *vacances, f.*

on her own conduct, and not on that of others. —  
*propre, adj.*

He

He would not come to see us, lest we should  
*craindre, v. de peur que, c.*

perceive his bad designs. — Your uncle desired that  
*ordonner, v.*

you might sell his two horses to Mr. B. — I should be

very sorry if they fell into bad hands.  
*que, c. tomber, v.*

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

I have spoken to my father of it, but he has not

yet given me any answer. — Have I not faith-  
*encore, adv.*

fully executed your orders? — Has your sister succeeded

in her undertaking? — We have not yet received any

remittance from America. — Mrs. N. told me you had  
*remise, f.*

already sold the half of your goods. — Why  
*déjà, adv. moitié, f. marchandise, f.*

did you not pay those poor people? — He would  
*gens, m. et f. pl.*

have been punished if I had not defended his right. —  
*droit, m.*

They have sold him four dozen of handkerchiefs at an  
*marchandise, m.*

exorbitant price, but they have warranted them fine  
*prix, m. garantir, v.*

and well worked. — We thought you would have  
*travailler, v. croyions, v.*

brought your brother with you. — Have we not been  
*amener, v.*



obliged to (wait for) Miss A. ? — If you had trusted  
*de attendre, v.* *confier, v.*

them with your goods, they would have stolen the  
*v. voler, v.*

greatest part of them. — It was for that reason my  
*partie, f.* *Ce, pro.*

father has not (thought fit) to send them to you. —  
*juger, v. à-propos*

Mr. D. had represented to him all the danger of it. —

Mrs. F. has gained her cause, but she has lost all  
*gagner, v.* *perdre, v.*

her wealth. — Had I not finished my work when  
*bien, m.* *ouvrage, m.*

she came in ? — You would have received your money  
*entrer, v.*

(a month ago) if the mail had not been robbed. —  
*si vous n'aviez pas été volé, v.* *malle, f.*

Mrs. P. told me she would have paid you some time  
*vous auriez payé*

ago if she had sold her goods.  
*si elle avait vendu ses marchandises*

## CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

Verbs passive are very easily conjugated; it requires only that the participle passive of the verb, which is to be conjugated, be joined to the auxiliary verb *être*, to be, through all its moods, tenses, numbers, and persons. It is to be observed, that (in French) the participle passive varies according to the gender and number of the noun or pronoun, which stands as the nominative to the verb: ex.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

M. F.

*être aimé, m. f.* — *être, to be loved.*  
*être puni, m. f.* — *être, to be punished.*

*étant*

étant *aim-é*, *ée*, being loved,  
 étant *pun-i*, *ie*, being punished,  
 avoir été *aim-é*, *ée*, to have been loved.  
 avoir été *pun-i*, *ie*, to have been punished.  
 ayant été *aim-é*, *ée*, having been loved.  
 ayant été *pun-i*, *ie*, having been punished.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Singular. M. F.

*Je suis* *aim-é*, *ée*, &c. I am loved.  
*Je suis* *pun-i*, *ie*, &c. I am punished.  
 Plural  
*Nous sommes* *aim-és*, *ées*, &c. we are loved.  
*Nous sommes* *pun-is*, *ies*, &c. we are punished.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

M. F.

*J'ai été* *pardonn-é*, *ée*, I have been forgiven.  
*J'ai été* *pun-i*, *ie*, I have been punished.  
*Nous avons été* *aim-és*, *ées*, We have been loved, &c.

## OF NEUTER VERBS.

The conjugations of the above verbs are, like all others, distinguished by their terminations, and conjugated in the same manner.

Learners may easily know a neuter verb from an active one, because the latter generally has, or can always have, a direct case after it; whereas the neuter verb never has, nor can have, but an indirect case; for instance,

*Dormir*, to sleep,

*Venir*, to come,

*Voyager*, to travel,

are neuter verbs, because we cannot say,

*Dormir une maison*, to sleep a house,

*Venir un livre*, to come a book,

*Voyager la chambre*, to travel the room, &c.

In the same manner,

*Jouer*, to enjoy,

*Profiter*,

*Profiter*, to profit by, to take advantage of,  
*Parvenir*, to attain, to reach,

are neuter verbs, because they can only govern an indirect case: ex.

*Jouis d'une grande réputation,* To enjoy a great reputation.

*Profiter du tems,* To take advantage of the weather.

*Parvenir à son but,* To attain one's end.

As it is impossible for the neuter verbs to govern an absolute case, it follows that every verb of this kind, which governs an absolute case, can no longer be looked upon as a neuter: ex.

*Pleurer*, to weep, to bewail,

*Sortir*, to go out,

*Monter*, to go up, to come up,

*Plaider, &c.* to plead,

are neuter verbs, but become active when they govern any object in the absolute case or accusative: ex.

*Elle pleure ses péchés,* She bewails her sins.

*Sortez ce cheval,* Bring out that horse.

*Il plaide sa cause lui-même,* He himself pleaded his cause.

But there are some neuter verbs which can never have an active signification, and which we are obliged to conjugate with the verb *faire*, when we wish to express an action passing from the subject who acts: ex.

*Ferai-je bouillir ou rôtir cette viande?* Shall I boil or roast that meat?

*Faites-la bouillir,* Boil it.

Some of the neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses by the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have, others by the verb *être*, to be.

The general rule, to know what neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses with the auxiliary *avoir*, and which are the others that are conjugated with the verb *être*, is to pay attention to the participle passive of the neuter verb which is conjugated.

If that participle be declinable, that is, if it can be applied to a man or a woman, or any other animate object, the compounds of its verbs are conjugated with the verb *être*: ex.

*Arriver*, to arrive,

*Tomber*, to fall,

*Mourir*, to die,

*Venir*, &c. to come,

*Naître*, to be born,

take the auxiliary verb *être*, because we can say,

*Un homme arrivé*, a man arrived.

*Une femme morte*, a woman dead.

*Un enfant né*, a child born.

*Un cheval tombé*, &c. a horse fallen.

If, on the contrary, the participle be indeclinable, that is, if it cannot be said of any animate object, the compound tenses of that verb must be conjugated with the verb *avoir*: ex.

*Dormir*, to sleep,

*Régner*, to reign,

*Languir*, to languish, to linger, | *Vivre*, &c. to live,

take the auxiliary verb *avoir*, because we cannot say,

*Un homme dormi*, a man slept.

*Une femme languie*, a woman languished, or lingered.

*Un enfant régné*, a child reigned.

*Un cheval vécu*, &c. a horse lived.

The verb *courir* is in this last class, when it signifies the rapid motion of the body, moving in a certain direction with all the swiftness of its legs; as we cannot, in this sense, say,

*Un homme couru*, a man run;

*Une femme courue*, a woman run;

nor, *je suis couru*, *j'étais couru*, &c. but *j'ai couru*, *j'avais couru*, &c.

When we say in French *un homme couru*, *une femme courue*, we mean a man or woman much sought after; a person or thing we are very eager to see: ex.

*Ce prédicateur est fort couru*;

*Cette danseuse est fort courue*;

that



that is, people are very eager to hear that preacher, to see that dancer.

In the above general rule are not included some neuter verbs, which sometimes take the auxiliary *avoir*, and sometimes the auxiliary *être*: these are,

<i>Monter</i> , to go or come up.	<i>Demeurer</i> , to live, to remain.
<i>Descendre</i> , to go or come down.	<i>Périr</i> , to perish.
<i>Sortir</i> , to go out.	<i>Passer</i> , to pass, to go by.
<i>Rester</i> , to stay, to remain.	<i>Echapper</i> , to escape.

*Monter* and *descendre* often govern an absolute regimen; in which case they are considered as active verbs and conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*: ex.

<i>J'ai monté les degrés,</i>	I have ascended the stairs, or gone up the stairs.
<i>Nous avons descendu la montagne,</i>	We have come down the hill.

When the above verbs are employed without regimen, their compounds are conjugated with *être*: ex.

<i>Je suis monté,</i>	I am up.
<i>Elle est déjà descendue,</i>	She is down already.

*Sortir* is conjugated with the verb *être*, when it signifies to quit, to leave the place wherein one was dwelling, or living; but it is conjugated with the verb *avoir*, when we wish to convey that we have been from home, and that we are come back again: ex.

<i>Il est sorti de prison,</i>	He is out of prison.
<i>J'ai sorti ce matin à dix heures,</i>	I went out this morning at ten o'clock.
<i>Avez-vous sorti ce matin?</i>	Did you go out this morning?
<i>Nous n'avons pas sorti de tout le jour,</i>	We have not been out all day.
<i>Le roi n'a pas sorti de sa chambre,</i>	The king has not been out of his room.

*Demeurer*

*Demeurer* and *rester* take the auxiliary *avoir*, when we mean that we were, but are no longer, in a place: ex.

*J'ai demeuré deux ans à la campagne,* I lived two years in the country.

*Il a resté vingt ans à Rome,* He resided twenty years at Rome.

On the contrary, they take the auxiliary *être*, while the person or persons are still in a place: ex.

*Il est demeuré à Londres* He has remained in London to solicit a bishopric.

*Nous sommes restés à York* We have tarried at York to conclude our affairs.

*Périr* indifferently takes either the auxiliary *avoir* or *être*: ex.

*Il est péri deux vaisseaux sur mer,* Two ships have perished at sea.

*Trois hommes ont péri par cette tempête,* Three men have perished by that storm.

*La plupart des équipages sont périés dans les ondes, le reste est péri de misère,* Most of the crews perished in the waves, the rest perished with misery.

It seems however that the auxiliary *avoir* is more generally used.

*Passer* sometimes governs an indirect case, or is immediately followed by the preposition *par*, or some other, attended by a noun or pronoun; in which case its compounds are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, whether it be used in its proper signification or in a figurative sense: ex.

*Le roi a passé par Kensington pour aller à Windsor,* The king went through Kensington to go to Windsor.

*Nous avons passé devant l'église,* We went by the church.

*Elle a passé près du parc de St. Jacques,* She went by St. James's park.

*La couronne de Naples a passé dans la maison de Bourbon,* The crown of Naples passed in the house of Bourbon.

In all other cases, *passer* takes the auxiliary *être*: ex.

*Le roi est passé, vous ne sauriez le voir,* The king is gone by, you cannot see him.

*Le beau tems est passé,* The fine weather is over.

*Vos chagrins sont passés,* Your sorrows are over.

We sometimes say, *ce mot est passé*, when we mean that it is no longer in use; but when we say, *ce mot a passé*, we understand in the language, which signifies that it has been received or adopted.

*Passer* is often a reflected passive verb, when its compound tenses follow the rule of the reflective verbs.

*Passer*, in several cases, becomes an active verb and governs an absolute case: ex.

*Passer cela sur le feu,* Pass that over fire.

*Les ennemis ont passé la rivière,* The enemies have crossed the river.

*Passer l'épée au travers du corps,* To run one through the body.

*Echapper* has two significations; sometimes it is used in the sense of *éviter*, to avoid, when it is conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*, and governs the dative case; sometimes it signifies to come or go out by force or stratagem from a place in which one was confined or shut up: in this case, it takes the verb *être* for auxiliary: ex.

*Vous avez échappé là à un grand danger,* You have escaped a great danger.

*Il a échappé à la mort,* He has escaped death.

*Ils sont échappés de leur prison, or,* They have escaped from their prison, or, made their escape.

*Ils se sont échappés de leur prison,* They had her for some days, but she has escaped, or, made her escape.

N. B.

N. B. Exercises on the neuter verbs will be found among the irregular whenever they occur.

## REFLECTED VERBS.

We call *reflected*, or *reflective*, a verb whose subject and object are the same person or thing; so that the subject, that acts, acts upon itself, and is at the same time the agent and the object of the action: ex.

*Je me connois,*

I know myself,

*Tu te loues,*

Thou praisest thyself,

*Il se blesse,*

He wounds himself,

*Nous nous chauffons,*

We warm ourselves,

are reflected verbs, because it is I who know and who am known; thou who praisest and who art praised; he who wounds and who is wounded; &c.

In order to express the relation of the nominative to the verb with its regimen or object, we always make use of the conjunctive pronouns, *me, te, se*, myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, for the singular; *nous, vous, se*, ourselves, yourselves, themselves, for the plural. But it frequently happens, that, in English, the second pronoun is implied though it must be expressed in French: ex.

*Je me souviens,*

I remember.

*Elle ne veut pas se marier,*

She will not marry.

*Nous nous plaignons, &c.*

We complain, &c.

The reflected verbs may be divided in the following manner: viz.

*Verbes réfléchis par la signification,*

Verbs reflective by signification.

*Verbes réfléchis par l'expression,*

Verbs reflective by expression.

*Verbes réfléchis directs,*

Verbs reflective direct.

*Verbes réfléchis indirects,*

Verbs reflective indirect.

*Verbes réfléchis passifs,*

Verbs reflective passive.

A verb reflective by signification is properly a verb wherein the person or thing that acts is at the same time the object of the action: ex.



*Je me chauffe,* I warm myself.  
*Elle se blesse,* She wounds herself, &c.

A verb is reflexive by expression when we add to it the double pronoun without the person or thing that acts being the object of the action: such as,

*Je me repens,* I repent;  
*Il s'en va,* He is going away;  
*Elle se meurt,* She is dying;  
*Nous nous apercevons de* We perceive our error;  
*notre erreur,*

which merely signify *je suis repentant, il va, elle meurt, nous apercevons notre erreur.*

When the conjunctive pronoun is the objective case of the verb reflexive by expression, we say it is a *verb reflexive direct*; when the same conjunctive pronoun is the indirect regimen, (that is, governed in the dative case,) we call it *reflexive indirect*: thus,

*Je me flatte,* I flatter myself,  
*Tu te vantes,* Thou boastest,  
*Il se félicite,* He congratulates himself, &c.

are verbs *reflexive direct*. On the contrary,

*Il se donne des louanges,* He gives himself praise,  
*Nous nous promettons un* We promise ourselves good  
*bon succès,* success,  
*Vous vous arrachez une* You draw one of your  
*dent, &c.* teeth, &c.

are verbs *reflexive indirect*, because it is as if we said, *il donne des louanges à soi, nous promettons un bon succès à nous, vous arrachez une dent à vous, &c.*

*Verb reflexive passive.* This verb is so called, because it not only expresses a passive sense, but that sense can only be rendered by a passive verb: ex.

*Cela se voit tous les jours,* That is seen every day.  
*Cela ne se dit point,* That is not said.  
*Ce livre se vend bien,* That book sells well.  
*Ce bruit se répand,* That rumour is spread.

*Ces fruits se mangent en hiver,*

These fruits are eaten in winter.

*Cet homme s'est trouvé innocent du crime dont on l'accusoit,*

That man has been found innocent of the crime with which he was accused.

It is as if there were *cela est vu tous les jours, cela n'est point dit, &c.* which exactly correspond with the idiom of the English language.

This last verb is of great use in the French language, because, as it has been observed before, there are properly no passive verbs in that language, and we are often obliged to supply the want of them by the above verb, or by the pronoun general *on*, to avoid ambiguity or false sense: if, for instance, instead of saying, *ces fruits se mangent en hiver*, ou *on mange ces fruits en hiver*, I said, *ces fruits sont mangés en hiver*, one might understand that those fruits are already eaten; whereas I only wish to express the proper season for eating those fruits.

Some authors call *réiproque*, reciprocal, all those reflected verbs; but this denomination to me has appeared insufficient to well determine the nature and use of these verbs. Others limit the reciprocal verb to signify what two persons or two things reciprocally do to each other: thus,

*Pierre et Jean se battent,*

Peter and John are fighting or beating each other,

*Paul et Robert s'aiment,*

Paul and Robert love each other,

*Le feu et l'eau se détruisent,*

Fire and water destroy each other,

are reciprocal verbs, because it is as if we said, *Pierre et Jean se battent réciproquement l'un l'autre, Paul et Robert s'aiment réciproquement, &c.*

This distinction of the reciprocal verbs may be adopted, observing at the same time that we often prefix the preposition *entre* to the verb, the better to express the reciprocity: ex.

*Pierre et Jean s'entraiment,*

Peter and John love each other.

<i>Ils s'entrelovent,</i>	They praise one another.
<i>Elles s'entrehaïssent,</i>	They hate each other.
<i>Le feu et l'eau s'entredétruisent, &amp;c.</i>	Fire and water destroy each other.

All the reflected and reciprocal verbs, without exception, are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *être*; hence it may be believed how much French people are shocked to hear any one, who has learned that language, say,

<i>Je m'ai acheté un cheval,</i>	I bought myself a horse;
<i>Je m'avois blessé, or</i>	I had hurt myself;
<i>Il s'a fait mal,</i>	He has hurt himself;
<i>Elle s'avoit moqué de moi, &amp;c.</i>	She had laughed at me, &c.

too common expressions made use of by many English people who speak without principles; whereas we must say,

*Je me suis acheté un cheval.*

*Je m'étois blessé, or*

*Il s'est fait mal.*

*Elle s'étoit moquée de moi.*

*Nous nous sommes informés,* We have inquired.

*Ils se sont promenés,* They have walked.

*Il s'est passé d'étranges choses depuis votre départ,* Strange things have happened since your departure.

*Il s'est passé bien des années depuis que j'ai ouï parler de cette affaire,* Many years have elapsed since I heard of that affair.

It must be owned that, in the compounds of most part of these verbs, the verb *être* is but the substitute of the verb *avoir*; but it is impossible to use *avoir* as auxiliary to a verb which has for its objective case a conjunctive pronoun which relates to the principle of the action of that verb, and which precedes the auxiliary; for, though we say,

*Il a voulu se tuer,* He would kill himself;

yet, if we change the place of the pronoun, we must say, *Il s'est voulu tuer*, which is the idiom of the language.

CON-

## CONJUGATION OF THE REFLECTED VERBS.

The conjugation of the following verb may serve as a model for all the reflected or reciprocal verbs.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Se promener*, to walk.

Part. act. *Se promenant*, walking.

M. Sing. F.

Part. pass. *promen-é*, *ée*, walked.

Plural.

Part. pass. *promen-és*, *ées*, walked.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Preterite. *S'être promené*, to have walked.

Part. past. *S'étant promené*, having walked.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Je me promène*, I walk, or do walk, or am walking.

*Tu te promènes.*

*Il se promène.*

Plural.

*Nous nous promenons*, we walk, &c.

*Vous vous promenez.*

*Ils se promènent.*

Imperfect. Singular.

*Je me promenais*, I did walk, or walked, or was walking.

*Tu te promenais.*

*Il se promenoit.*

Plural.

*Nous nous promenions*, we did walk, &c.

*Vous vous promeniez.*

*Ils se promenoient.*

Preterite. Singular.

*Je me promenai*, I did walk, or walked.

*Tu te promenais.*

*Il se promena.*



## Plural.

*Nous nous promenâmes, we did walk, &c.**Vous vous promenâtes.**Ils se promènèrent.*

## Future. Singular.

*Je me promènerai, I shall or will walk.**Tu te promèneras.**Il se promènera.*

## Plural.

*Nous nous promènerons, we shall or will walk.**Vous vous promèneriez.**Ils se promèneront.*

## Conditional present. Singular.

*Je me promènerois, I would, should, or could, walk.**Tu te promènerois.**Il se promèneroit.*

## Plural.

*Nous nous promènerions, we would, &c. walk.**Vous vous promèneriez.**Ils se promèneroient.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## M. F.

*Pret. indefin. Je me suis promen-é, ée, I have walked.**Pret. ant. def. Je me fus promen-é, ée, I had walked.**Preterpluperf. Je m'étois promen-é, ée, I had walked.**Future past. Jeme serai promen-é, ée, I shall or will have walked.**Cond. past. Jeme serois promen-é, ée, I should, &c. have walked.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Promène toi,\* walk thou.**Qu'il se promène, let him walk.*

\* When the verb is conjugated with a *negation*, these three pronouns are put before the verb : ex. *ne vous promenez pas*, do not walk ; and *toi* changed into *te* : ex. *ne te promène pas*.

Plural.

## Plural.

*Promenons nous,\** let us walk.*Promenez vous,\** walk ye.*Qu'ils se promènent,* let them walk.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Que je me promène,* that I may walk.*tu te promènes.**il se promène.*

## Plural.

*nous nous promenions,* that we may walk.*vous vous promeniez.**ils se promènent.*

## Imperfect. Singular.

*Que je me promenasse,* that I might walk.*tu te promenasses.**il se promenât.*

## Plural.

*nous nous promenassions,* that we might walk.*vous vous promenassiez.**ils se promenassent.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## M. F.

Preterite. *Que je me sois promen-é, ée,* that I may have walked.Preterpluperf. *Que je me fusse promen-é, ée,* that I might have walked.

The learner may here be again reminded, that it is necessary to conjugate this verb with a negation and interrogation : ex.

*Je ne me promène pas,* I do not walk.*Vous promenez-vous ?* do you walk ?*Ne se promène-t-il pas ?* does he not walk ?

## COMPOUND TENSES.

*Me suis-je promené ?*

Have I walked ? or did I walk ?

*Ne*

*Ne vous êtes-vous pas chauffé ?* Have you not warmed yourself? or did you not warm yourself?

*Mon cousin s'est-il informé ?* Has my cousin inquired? or did my cousin inquire?

*Votre frère ne s'est-il pas repenti ?* Has not your brother repented? or did not your brother repent?

We say in French,

*Se promener à cheval, en carrosse,* To take a ride, an airing, on horseback, in a coach.

*Se promener sur l'eau, sur la rivière,* To go upon the water, on the river.

### EXERCISES UPON THE REFLECTED VERBS.

N. B. Verbs marked \* are irregular: see the irregular verbs.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I rise (early) every morning.  
*se lever, v. de bonne heure, adv. matin, m.*

— Does not your brother remember to have  
*se souvenir, v. \**

seen me? — My sister is not well, she applies her-  
*on, p. p. sœur, f. † s'appliquer, v.*

self (too much) to study. — We rejoice at the good  
*trop, adv. étude, f. se réjouir, v. de*

news he has brought us. — When do you in-  
*nouvelle, f. apporté, p. p. se pro-*

tend to go and see Mrs. H.? — Do you not  
*passer, v. de aller, v. voir, v.*

repent of what you have done to her? — I  
*se repentir, v. \* de fait, p. p.*

† When we mean to express the state of a person's health, instead of the verb *être*, we must use the reflected one *se porter*: ex.

*Ma sœur ne se porte pas bien,* My sister is not well.

believe your brothers are not well ; for, I have not  
*croire, v.\** † *car, c.*

seen them this week,  
*vu, p. p.* *semaine, f.*

IMP. I was riding on horseback in the park when  
*parc, m. quand, c.*

I met him. — Was he not warming himself  
*rencontrer, v.* *se chauffer, v.*

when you (came in?) — We did not imagine he  
*entrer, v.* *s'imaginer, v.*

would succeed so well. — You were boasting too  
*réussir, v.* *se vanter, v.*

much of what you had done for him. — They did  
*fait, p. p.*

not expect that they should meet us.  
*s'attendre, v.*

PRÉT. I inquired after you yesterday. — Did  
*s'informer, v. de* *bien, adv.*

not my son behave well in the last war? —  
*fils, m. se comporter, v.* *dernier, adj. guerre, f.*

Corn was sold yesterday for — a bushel. — We  
*se vendre, v.*

saw ourselves surrounded by more than twenty  
*se voir, v.\** *entouré, p. p.*

persons in an instant. — Did you not find  
*en, p.* *se trouver, v.*

yourselves obliged to go there? — They did not  
*obligé, p. p. de aller, v.*

stop one minute.  
*s'arrêter, v.* *minute, f.*

FUT. I will not complain of you if you pro-  
*se plaindre, v.\** *pro-*

mise me to behave better. — Will your bird  
*mettre, v.\** *de* *mieux, adv.* *oiseau, m.*

(grow



(grow tame?) — Shall we submit ourselves to  
*s'apprivoiser, v.* *se soumettre, v.\**

his judgement? — You will ruin yourselves if you  
*jugement, m.* *se ruiner, v.*

continue (gaming.) — Will they not perceive  
*continuer, v.* *de jouer, v.* *s'appertrevoir, v.*

it (as soon as) they come into the room?  
*dès que, c.* *entrer, v.* *chambre, f.*

COND. PRES. If I were in your place I would not  
*à*

vex myself. — Would she not (make her  
*se chagriner, v.* *s'échapper,*

escape?) — We would embark (this day) if the  
*per, v.* *s'embarquer, v.* *aujourd'hui*

weather (would permit.) — Why would you expose  
*temps, m.* *le permettoit, v.* *s'exposer, v.*

yourselves to their fury? — They would agree  
*fureur, f.* *s'accorder, v.*

very well if they were not so proud.  
*bien, adv.* *orgueilleux, adj.*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

I give you leave to go out, but do not  
*donner, v.* *permission, f.* *de sortir, v.* *mais, c.*

overheat yourself. — Let him amuse himself a  
*s'échauffer, v.* *s'amuser, v.* *un*

little in my garden. — Let us remember what  
*peu, adv.* *jardin, m.* *se souvenir de, v.\**

we are to do. — Endeavour to please your master,  
*† faire, v.* *S'efforcer, v.* *de plaire, v.* *à maître, m.*

and do not so often mistake in the tenses, numbers,  
*se tromper, v.*

† See the reference\* in the exercises upon the third conjugation, page 136.

and persons, of the verbs. — Let them (fall asleep.)  
*s'endormir, v.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

**Pres.** I must apply myself to the French  
*Il faut que s'applique, v.*

language. — I will hide it, lest she should  
*langue, f. cacher, v. de peur que, c.*

perceive it. — Provided we remember to  
*s'apercevoir, v. en, pro. Pourquoi que, c. de*

ask him how his mother does. —  
*demand, v. comment, adv. se porter, v.*

(In order that) you may not boast (so much.)  
*Afin que, c. se vanter, v. tant, adv.*

— I have told them who you are, that they may  
*dit, p.p. afin que, c.*

behave better another time.  
*se comporter, v. fois, f.*

**IMP.** That I might not ruin myself. — That  
*se ruiner, v.*

he might not meddle with my affairs. — That we  
*se mêler, v. de*

might excuse ourselves. — That you might not go  
*s'excuser, v. s'en*

away. — That they might not repent too late.  
*aller, v. se repentir, v. trop tard, adv.*

### COMPOUND TENSES.

I have inquired after you and your sister. — He  
*s'informer, v. de*

says you have not been well while you were in  
*dit, v. pendant que, c. à*

the country. — Has not your cousin laughed at  
*campagne, f. cousin, m. se moquer, v. de*

me? — Did we not get up at six (o'clock?) — They  
*se lever, v. à heure, f.*

have

have perceived the trick, but it was too late. — Did  
*detour, m.*

you remember me? — I had not applied  
*se ressouvenir, v. de s'appliquer, v.*

myself enough. — Had not your sister imagined that  
*assez, adv. s'imaginer, v.*

they would have found themselves obliged to go  
*se trouver, v. obligé, p.p. de*

to France? — Many things have been said of them  
 † *se dire, v.*

which are not true. — We had thought ourselves  
*se croire, v.\**

able to resist them, but we have (been de-  
*capable, adj. de résister, v. mais, c. se trom-*

ceived.) — Did you not hide yourselves in order  
*per, v. se cacher, v.*

to surprise them? — When I (shall) have walked  
*de surprendre, v. Quand, adv.*

five or six minutes in the garden I will rest  
*se reposer, v.*

myself. — Why did you exhaust yourself as you have  
*s'épuiser, v.*

done? — Our sailors would have behaved with  
*fait, p.p. se comporter, v.*

more resolution. — Would you not have excused  
*s'excuser, v.*

yourself? — When they have repented (of) their faults  
*se repentir, v.*

I will forgive them. — If I had been in your place, I  
 †

would not have meddled with their affairs. — Your  
*se mêler, v. de*

† See the indefinite article.

CONFIDENTIAL - THE IRREGULAR

VERB OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

4 L. D. H. 19 00.

## INFINITELY MOOD.

THE MOON

Sing. *Fain* 2nd 1st 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th 11th 12th 13th 14th 15th 16th 17th 18th 19th 20th 21st 22nd 23rd 24th 25th 26th 27th 28th 29th 30th 31st 32nd 33rd 34th 35th 36th 37th 38th 39th 40th 41st 42nd 43rd 44th 45th 46th 47th 48th 49th 50th 51st 52nd 53rd 54th 55th 56th 57th 58th 59th 60th 61st 62nd 63rd 64th 65th 66th 67th 68th 69th 70th 71st 72nd 73rd 74th 75th 76th 77th 78th 79th 80th 81st 82nd 83rd 84th 85th 86th 87th 88th 89th 90th 91st 92nd 93rd 94th 95th 96th 97th 98th 99th 100th 101st 102nd 103rd 104th 105th 106th 107th 108th 109th 110th 111th 112th 113th 114th 115th 116th 117th 118th 119th 120th 121st 122nd 123rd 124th 125th 126th 127th 128th 129th 130th 131st 132nd 133rd 134th 135th 136th 137th 138th 139th 140th 141st 142nd 143rd 144th 145th 146th 147th 148th 149th 150th 151st 152nd 153rd 154th 155th 156th 157th 158th 159th 160th 161st 162nd 163rd 164th 165th 166th 167th 168th 169th 170th 171st 172nd 173rd 174th 175th 176th 177th 178th 179th 180th 181st 182nd 183rd 184th 185th 186th 187th 188th 189th 190th 191st 192nd 193rd 194th 195th 196th 197th 198th 199th 200th 201st 202nd 203rd 204th 205th 206th 207th 208th 209th 210th 211th 212th 213th 214th 215th 216th 217th 218th 219th 220th 221st 222nd 223rd 224th 225th 226th 227th 228th 229th 230th 231st 232nd 233rd 234th 235th 236th 237th 238th 239th 240th 241st 242nd 243rd 244th 245th 246th 247th 248th 249th 250th 251st 252nd 253rd 254th 255th 256th 257th 258th 259th 260th 261st 262nd 263rd 264th 265th 266th 267th 268th 269th 270th 271st 272nd 273rd 274th 275th 276th 277th 278th 279th 280th 281st 282nd 283rd 284th 285th 286th 287th 288th 289th 290th 291st 292nd 293rd 294th 295th 296th 297th 298th 299th 300th 301st 302nd 303rd 304th 305th 306th 307th 308th 309th 310th 311th 312th 313th 314th 315th 316th 317th 318th 319th 320th 321st 322nd 323rd 324th 325th 326th 327th 328th 329th 330th 331st 332nd 333rd 334th 335th 336th 337th 338th 339th 340th 341st 342nd 343rd 344th 345th 346th 347th 348th 349th 350th 351st 352nd 353rd 354th 355th 356th 357th 358th 359th 360th 361st 362nd 363rd 364th 365th 366th 367th 368th 369th 370th 371st 372nd 373rd 374th 375th 376th 377th 378th 379th 380th 381st 382nd 383rd 384th 385th 386th 387th 388th 389th 390th 391st 392nd 393rd 394th 395th 396th 397th 398th 399th 400th 401st 402nd 403rd 404th 405th 406th 407th 408th 409th 410th 411th 412th 413th 414th 415th 416th 417th 418th 419th 420th 421st 422nd 423rd 424th 425th 426th 427th 428th 429th 430th 431st 432nd 433rd 434th 435th 436th 437th 438th 439th 440th 441st 442nd 443rd 444th 445th 446th 447th 448th 449th 450th 451st 452nd 453rd 454th 455th 456th 457th 458th 459th 460th 461st 462nd 463rd 464th 465th 466th 467th 468th 469th 470th 471st 472nd 473rd 474th 475th 476th 477th 478th 479th 480th 481st 482nd 483rd 484th 485th 486th 487th 488th 489th 490th 491st 492nd 493rd 494th 495th 496th 497th 498th 499th 500th 501st 502nd 503rd 504th 505th 506th 507th 508th 509th 510th 511th 512th 513th 514th 515th 516th 517th 518th 519th 520th 521st 522nd 523rd 524th 525th 526th 527th 528th 529th 530th 531st 532nd 533rd 534th 535th 536th 537th 538th 539th 540th 541st 542nd 543rd 544th 545th 546th 547th 548th 549th 550th 551st 552nd 553rd 554th 555th 556th 557th 558th 559th 560th 561st 562nd 563rd 564th 565th 566th 567th 568th 569th 570th 571st 572nd 573rd 574th 575th 576th 577th 578th 579th 580th 581st 582nd 583rd 584th 585th 586th 587th 588th 589th 590th 591st 592nd 593rd 594th 595th 596th 597th 598th 599th 600th 601st 602nd 603rd 604th 605th 606th 607th 608th 609th 610th 611th 612th 613th 614th 615th 616th 617th 618th 619th 620th 621st 622nd 623rd 624th 625th 626th 627th 628th 629th 630th 631st 632nd 633rd 634th 635th 636th 637th 638th 639th 640th 641st 642nd 643rd 644th 645th 646th 647th 648th 649th 650th 651st 652nd 653rd 654th 655th 656th 657th 658th 659th 660th 661st 662nd 663rd 664th 665th 666th 667th 668th 669th 670th 671st 672nd 673rd 674th 675th 676th 677th 678th 679th 680th 681st 682nd 683rd 684th 685th 686th 687th 688th 689th 690th 691st 692nd 693rd 694th 695th 696th 697th 698th 699th 700th 701st 702nd 703rd 704th 705th 706th 707th 708th 709th 710th 711th 712th 713th 714th 715th 716th 717th 718th 719th 720th 721st 722nd 723rd 724th 725th 726th 727th 728th 729th 730th 731st 732nd 733rd 734th 735th 736th 737th 738th 739th 740th 741st 742nd 743rd 744th 745th 746th 747th 748th 749th 750th 751st 752nd 753rd 754th 755th 756th 757th 758th 759th 760th 761st 762nd 763rd 764th 765th 766th 767th 768th 769th 770th 771st 772nd 773rd 774th 775th 776th 777th 778th 779th 780th 781st 782nd 783rd 784th 785th 786th 787th 788th 789th 790th 791st 792nd 793rd 794th 795th 796th 797th 798th 799th 800th 801st 802nd 803rd 804th 805th 806th 807th 808th 809th 810th 811th 812th 813th 814th 815th 816th 817th 818th 819th 820th 821st 822nd 823rd 824th 825th 826th 827th 828th 829th 830th 831st 832nd 833rd 834th 835th 836th 837th 838th

Plur. *Alumina*, *Alumina*, *Alumina*

... I did not know of this going

7-10-1964

Sing \_\_\_\_\_  
Pls \_\_\_\_\_

1990

**Continued**



have perceived the trick, but it was too late. — Did  
*detour, m.*

you remember me? — I had not applied  
*se ressouvenir, v. de* *s'appliquer, v.*

myself enough. — Had not your sister imagined that  
*assez, adv.* *s'imaginer, v.*

they would have found themselves obliged to go  
*se trouver, v.* *obligé, p.p. de*

to France? — Many things have been said of them  
† *se dire, v.*

which are not true. — We had thought ourselves  
*se croire, v. \**

able to resist them, but we have (been de-  
*capable, adj. de résister, v.* *mais, c.* *se trom-*

ceived.) — Did you not hide yourselves in order  
*per, v.* *se cacher, v.*

to surprise them? — When I (shall) have walked  
*de surprendre, v.* *Quand, adv.*

five or six minutes in the garden I will rest  
*se reposer, v.*

myself. — Why did you exhaust yourself as you have  
*s'épuiser, v.*

done? — Our failors would have behaved with  
*fait, p.p.* *se comporter, v.*

more resolution. — Would you not have excused  
*s'excuser, v.*

yourself? — When they have repented (of) their faults  
*se repentir, v.*

I will forgive them. — If I had been in your place, I  
*à*

would not have meddled with their affairs. — Your  
*se mêler, v. de*

† See the indefinite article.

friend would not have complained of you, and you  
*se plaindre, v.*  
 never would have fallen out for so small a matter.  
*se brouiller, v. chaise, f.*

## CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

These are called *irregulars* because their conjugation deviates from the general rule, either by their terminations, or the want of some of their moods, tenses, persons, or numbers.

### VERB OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

**ALLER, to go.**

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Aller, to go.*  
 Part. act. *Allant, going.*  
 Part. pass. *Allé, gone.*

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Vais, vas, va, I go, or am going.*  
 Plur. *Allons, allez, vont.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Allois, allois, alloit, I did go, or was going.*  
 Plur. *Allions, alliez, alloient.*

Preterite.

Sing. *Allai, allas, alla, I went, or did go.*  
 Plur. *Allâmes, allâtes, allerent; or,*

Sing. *Fus, fus, fut, I went, or did go.*  
 Plur. *Fûmes, fûtes, furent.*

Future.

Sing. *J'ai, iras, ira, I shall or will go.*  
 Plur. *Irons, iras, iront.*

Q

Conditional

## Conditional present. Singular.

Sing. *Irais, irois, iroit*, I should, could, would, or might, go.

Plur. *Irions, iriez, iroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Va, aille*, go thou.

Plur. *Allons, allez, aillent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que aille, que ailles, que aille*, that I may go.

Plur. *Allions, alliez, aillent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Allasse, allasses, allât*, that I might go.

Plur. *Allassions, allassiez, allassent*.

Among the compound tenses of this verb, it is to be remarked that those which are formed by the participle *allé* signify that we are or were yet in the place mentioned at the time we are or were speaking. Whence it follows that the first person of the preterite indefinite,

*Je suis allé*, I have gone, &c.

*Tu es allé*, &c.

can seldom be used in discourse, for, we cannot naturally say that we are still in a place which can only be mentioned in a past time, after we have left it; therefore we make use of the compound tenses of the verb *être*, as, *j'ai été, tu as été, j'eus été, j'avois été, j'aurois été*, &c. for, when we say,

*Il est allé à Londres*, He is gone to London, we give to understand that he is still in London, or is on his way going to London; on the contrary,

*Il a été à Londres*, He has been or gone to London, means that he has gone to London, but is returned.

The

The above verb is also conjugated as a reflected one with the particle *en*: ex.

*S'en aller*, to go away.

*Je m'en vais*, I go or am going away.

*Tu t'en vas*, thou goest or art going away.

*Il s'en va*, he goes or is going away.

*Nous nous en allons*, we go or are going away.

*Vous vous en allez*, you go or are going away.

*Ils s'en vont*, they go or are going away.

Negatively.

*Je ne m'en vais pas*, I am not going away.

*Il ne s'en va pas*, he is not going away.

*Nous ne nous en allons pas*, we are not going away.

*Vous ne vous en allez pas*, &c. you are not going away, &c.

Interrogatively.

*S'en va-t-il?* is he going away?

*Vous en allez-vous?* &c. are you going away? &c.

*Ne s'en vont-ils pas?* &c. are they not going away? &c.

Its compound tenses are,

*Je m'en suis allé*, I have gone away.

*Je m'en fus allé*, I had gone away.

*Je m'en étois allé*, I had gone away.

*Je m'en serai allé*, I shall have gone away, &c.

## VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

### *ACQUERIR*, TO ACQUIRE.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Acquérir*, to acquire.

Part. act. *Acquérant*, acquiring.

Part. pass. *Acquis*, acquired.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Acquiers*, *acquiers*, *acquiert*, I acquire, or am acquiring.

Plur. *Acquérons*, *acquérez*, *acquièrent*.

Imperfect.



## Imperfect.

Sing. *Acquérois, acquérois, acqueroit*, I did acquire, or  
was acquiring.

Plur. *Acquériers, acquériez, acquéroient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Acquis, acquis, acquit*, I acquired, or did

Plur. *Acquîmes, acquîtes, acquirent*. acquire.

## Future.

Sing. *Acquerrai, acquerras, acquerra*, I shall or will

Plur. *Acquerrons, acquerrez, acquerront*. acquire.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Acquerrois, acquerrois, acquerroit*, I should, would,  
or could, acquire.

Plur. *Acquerriens, acquerriez, acquerrieroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Acquiers, acquiers, acquies* thou.

Plur. *Acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que que que* *Acquière, acquières, acquière*, that I may ac-  
quire.

Plur. *Acquériers, acquériez, acquièrent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Acquisse, acquisses, acquît*, that I might acquire.

Plur. *Acquissions, acquissiez, acquissent*.

## QUÉRIR, TO FETCH.

The primitive of the above verb, is never used but  
in the present of the infinitive mood: ex.

*Envoyez-moi quérir*, send for me.

**CONQUERIR**, TO CONQUER; **REQUERIR**, TO REQUIRE; are conjugated like **ACQUERIR**.

## **BOUILLIR**, TO BOIL.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Bouillir*, to boil.

Part. act. *Bouillant*, boiling.

Part. pass. *Bouilli*, boiled.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Present.

Sing. *Bous*, *bous*, *bout*, I boil, or am boiling.

Plur. *Bouillons*, *bouillez*, *bouillent*.

#### Imperfect.

Sing. *Bouillois*, *bouillois*, *bouilloit*, I did boil, or was

Plur. *Bouillions*, *bouilliez*, *bouilloient*. boiling.

#### Preterite.

Sing. *Bouillis*, *bouillis*, *bouillit*, I boiled, or did

Plur. *Bouillimes*, *bouillites*, *bouillirent*. boil.

#### Future.

Sing. *Bouillirai*, *bouilliras*, *bouillira*, I shall or will

Plur. *Bouillirons*, *bouillirez*, *bouilliront*. boil.

#### Conditional present.

Sing. *Bouillirois*, *bouillirois*, *bouilliroit*, I should, would, or could, boil.

Plur. *Bouillirions*, *bouilliriez*, *bouilliroient*.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Bous*, *bouille*, boil thou.

Plur. *Bouillons*, *bouillez*, *bouillent*.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### Present.

Sing. *Bouille*, *bouilles*, *bouille*, that I may boil.

Plur. *Bouillions*, *bouilliez*, *bouillent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Bouillisse, bouillisses, bouillit*, that I might boil.Plur. *Bouillissions, bouillissiez, bouillissent*.

This verb, as well as its compound *rebouillir*, to boil again, is but seldom used, except in the third person singular or plural, and its infinitive mood, which is commonly joined to the verb *faire*: ex.

Faites *bouillir* cette viande, boil that meat.

## COURIR, TO RUN.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Courir*, to run.Part. act. *Courant*, running.Part. pass. *Couru*, run.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Cours, cours, court*, I run, or am running.Plur. *Courons, courez, courent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Courois, courais, courait*, I did run, or was run-Plur. *Courions, couriez, couraient*. ning.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Courus, courus, courut*, I ran, or did run.Plur. *Courûmes, courûtes, coururent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Courrai, courras, courra*, I shall or will run.Plur. *Courrons, courrez, courront*.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Courrois, courrais, courroit*, I should, would, orPlur. *Courrions, courriez, courroient*. could, run.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Cours, cours*, run thou.Plur. *Courons, courez, courent*.

S U B-

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Coure, courés, coure,* that I may run.  
 Plur. *Courions, couriez, courent.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Courusse, courusses, courût,* that I might run.  
 Plur. *Courussions, courussiez, courussent.*

The compounds of this verb are,

*Accourir,* to run to. *Parcourir,* to run over.  
*Concourir,* to concur. *Recourir,* to have recourse  
*Discourir,* to discourse. *Secourir,* to succour, to assist.  
*Encourir,* to incur.

## COUVRIR, TO COVER.

See *OUVRIR,* TO OPEN.

## CUEILLIR, TO GATHER.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Cueillir,* to gather.  
 Part. act. *Cueillant,* gathering.  
 Part. pass. *Cueilli,* gathered.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Cueille, cueilles, cueille,* I gather, or am ga-  
 Plur. *Cueillez, cueillez, cueillent.* thering.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Cueillois, cueillois, cueilloit,* I did gather, or was  
 Plur. *Cueillions, cueilliez, cueilloient.* gathering.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Cueilli, cueilli, cueilli,* I gathered, or did  
 Plur. *Cueillimes, cueillimes, cueillimes.* gather.

Future.



## Imperfect.

Sing. *Bouillir, bouillir, bouillir, that I might boil.*  
 Plur. *Bouillissions, bouillissiez, bouillissent.*

This verb, as well as its compound *rebouillir*, to boil again, is but seldom used, except in the third person singular or plural, and its infinitive mood, which is commonly joined to the verb *faire*.

*Faites bouillir cette viande, boil that meat.*

## COURIR, TO RUN.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Courir, to run.*

Part. act. *Courant, running.*

Part. pass. *Couru, run.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Cours, cours, cours, I run, or am running.*

Plur. *Courons, courez, courent.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Courais, courais, courais, I did run, or was run-*

Plur. *Courions, couriez, couraient.* ning.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Courus, courus, courus, I ran, or did run.*

Plur. *Courûmes, courûtes, coururent.*

## Future.

Sing. *Courrai, courras, courra, I shall or will run.*

Plur. *Courrons, courrez, courront.*

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Courrais, courrais, courrait, I should, would, or*

Plur. *Courrions, courriez, courraient.* could, run.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Cours, cours, run.*

Plur. *Courons, courez, run.*

S U B

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

How to Bend I *Subjunctive* *Present* *Future* *Plur.*  
*Que* *qua* *que*  
 Sing. *Coure*, *coures*, *coure*, that I may run.  
 Plur. *Courons*, *courez*, *courent*.

**Imperfect.**

Sing. *Courusse*, *courusses*, *courut*, that I might run.  
 Plur. *Courussions*, *courussiez*, *courussent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Accourir*, to run to. *Parcourir*, to run over.  
*Concourir*, to concur. *Recourir*, to have recourse  
*Discourir*, to discourse. *Secourir*, to succour, to assist.  
*Encourir*, to incur.

**COVERIR, TO COVER.**

See **OUVRIR, TO OPEN.**

**CUEILLIR, TO GATHER.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Cueillir*, to gather.  
 Part. act. *Cueillant*, gathering.  
 Part. pass. *Cueilli*, gathered.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

Present.  
 Sing. *Cueille*, *cueilles*, *cueille*, I gather, or am gathering.  
 Plur. *Cueillons*, *cueillez*, *cueillent*.

**Imperfect.**

Sing. *Cueillais*, *cueillais*, *cueillais*, I did gather, or was gathering.  
 Plur. *Cueillions*, *cueilliez*, *cueillions*.

**Pluperfect.**

Sing. *Cueillais*, *cueillais*, *cueillais*, I gathered, or did gather.  
 Plur. *Cueillions*, *cueillions*, *cueillions*.

Future.

## FUTURE.

Sing. *Cueillerai, cueillera, cueillera*, I shall or will  
 Plur. *Cueillerons, cueilleront, cueilleront*. gather.

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

Sing. *Cueillerois, cueillerois, cueilleroit*, I should, would,  
 or could, gather.

Plur. *Cueillerions, cueilleriez, cueilleroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Cueille, cueille*, gather thou.  
 Plur. *Cueillons, cueillez, cueillent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

*Que* *cueille, cueilles, cueille*, that I may gather.  
 Plur. *Cueillions, cueilliez, cueillent*.

## IMPERFECT.

Sing. *Cueillisse, cueillisses, cueillist*, that I might ga-  
 Plur. *Cueillissions, cueillissiez, cueillissent*. ther.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Accueillir*, to make wel- *Recueillir*, to gather toge-  
 come. (Very little used.) ther.

## DORMIR, TO SLEEP.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Dormir*, to sleep.  
 Part. act. *Dormant*, sleeping.  
 Part. pass. *Dormi*, slept.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

Sing. *Dors, dors, dors*, I sleep, or am sleeping.  
 Plur. *Dormons, dormez, dorment*.

## IMPERFECT.

Sing. *Dormois, dormois, dormais*, I did sleep, or was  
 Plur. *Dormions, dormiez, dormaient*. sleeping.

Preterite.

**Preterite.**

Sing. *Dormis, dormis, dormit*, I slept, or did sleep.

Plur. *Dormîtes, dormîtes, dormaient*.

**Future.**

Sing. *Dormirai, dormiras, dormira*, I shall or will sleep.

Plur. *Dormirez, dormirez, dormiront*.

**Conditional present.**

Sing. *Dormirois, dormirois, dormiroit*, I would, could, or should, sleep.

Plur. *Dormirions, dormiriez, dormirioient*.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing. *Dors, dors, dors*, sleep thou.

Plur. *Dormez, dormez, dormez*.

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

**Present.**

Sing. *Dorme, dorme, dorme*, that I may sleep.

Plur. *Dormez, dormez, dormez*.

**Imperfect.**

Sing. *Dormisse, dormisses, dormît*, that I might sleep.

Plur. *Dormissent, dormissent, dormissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Endormir*, to make sleep. *Se rendormir*, to fall asleep again.

*S'endormir*, to fall asleep.

## EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Where are you going? — I am going to the

On, adv.

I would go with you if I had time. — Why

collidis, f.

are they going away to soon? — Will not your father

tôt, adv.

be



be angry if you go there without him? — We were  
*fâché, adj.*

going to Miss D——'s when we met you. —  
*chez, p. rencontrer, v.*

These men went yesterday from house to house. —  
*en, p.*

Believe me, sir, do not go to see them. — Your fa-  
*Croire, v. voir, v.*

ther told me you will go to France and Italy as soon  
*dire, v.*

as the war (is over.) — My sister and I went last  
*sera finis. dernier, adj.*

Wednesday to Rapelagh. — If you had gone (there)

an hour sooner you would have heard fine music.  
*plutôt, adv. entendre, v.*

— Your uncle has acquired a great name in Ameri-  
*nom, m.*

ca. — Go and fetch me the letter I left in my room.  
*laisser, v.*

— Boil this chicken and roast that goose. — At last  
*poulet, m. rôti, v. oie, f. Enfin, adv.*

we have conquered. — This water will soon boil.  
*bientôt, adv.*

— Boil that meat again, it is not done enough. —  
*cuit, p. p.*

Do not run so fast, you will be tired. — They al-  
*vite, adv. fatigué, p. p.*

ways run when they go to see their aunt. — Your bro-  
*tante, f.*

ther runs faster than I. — Let us not discourse any  
*vite, adv.*

more on that subject. — I would assist him with all my  
*aider, m.*

heart

heart if I could. — This gentleman is a great tra-  
*pouvoir, v.*

veller, he has run over all Europe. — If you do  
*yageur, m.*

it, you will incur your father's displeasure. — That  
*déplaisir, m.*

would concur to the public good. — When children  
*bien, m.*

are guilty, they generally have recourse to some  
*coupable, adj.*

falsehood. — For whom are you gathering those  
*menfonge, m.*

charming flowers? — I gather them for my mother.  
*fleur, f.*

— Why do they not gather some roses? — Mrs. P.  
*rose, f.*

would have gathered some, but the gardener told  
*jardinier, m.*

her he would gather them himself. — Of all nations

none has welcomed the poor French clergy better  
*clergé, m.*

than the English. — Do not make any noise, for  
*faire, v.*

my sister is asleep. — I hope she will sleep better  
*car, c.*

to-night. — She would sleep much better if she  
*ce soir, m.*

were in her bed. — If I do not walk a little  
*lit, m.*

I shall fall asleep. — My mother, sister, brother, and  
*se promener, v.*

I, went yesterday to Croydon to see Miss  
*hier, adv.*

*Mademoiselle, f.*

H—,

Will you go there without him? — We were

Met D——'s when we met you. —  
*rencontrer, v.*

They went yesterday from house to house. —  
*en, p.*

Do not go to see them. — Your fa-  
*voir, v.*

as you will go to France and Italy as soon

(to you.) — My sister and I went last  
*dernier, adj.*

Monday to Ranelagh. — If you had gone (there)

you would have heard fine music.  
*entendre, v.*

Your uncle has acquired a great name in Ameri-  
*nom, m.*

Go and fetch me the letter I left in my room.  
*laisser, v.*

Put this chicken and roast that goose. — At last  
*roûti, m. rôti, v. oie, f. Enfin, adv.*

Our soup is spoiled. — This water will soon boil.  
*bientôt, adv.*

That meat again, it is not done enough. —  
*cuit, p. p.*

When you go to bed, you will be tired. — They al-  
*fatigué, p. p.*

They will go to see their aunt. — Your bro-  
*tante, f.*

Let us not discourse any  
*plus, adv.*

I would assist him with all my  
*de*

heart

heart if I could. — This gentleman is a great tra-  
*pouvoir, v.* *vo-*

veller, he has run over all Europe. — If you do  
*yageur, m.* *faire, v.*

it, you will incur your father's displeasure. — That  
*déplaisir, m.*

would concur to the public good. — When children  
*bien, m.*

are guilty, they generally have recourse to some  
*coupable, adj.*

falsehood. — For whom are you gathering those  
*mensonge, m.*

charming flowers? — I gather them for my mother.  
*fleur, f.*

— Why do they not gather some roses? — Mrs. P.  
*rose, f.*

would have gathered some, but the gardener told  
*jardinier, m.*

her he would gather them himself. — Of all nations

none has welcomed the poor French clergy better  
*clergé, m.*

than the English. — Do not make any noise, for  
*faire, v.* *car, c.*

my sister is asleep. — I hope she will sleep better

to-night. — She would sleep much better if she  
*ce soir, m.*

were in her bed. — If I do not walk a little  
*lit, m.* *se promener, v.*

I shall fall asleep. — My mother, sister, brother, and

I, went yesterday to Croydon to see Miss  
*bien, adv.* *Mademoiselle, f.*

H—.



H——. — Did you go there on foot? — No, my  
 mother and sister went in a coach, and my bro-  
 ther and I on horseback.  
*à cheval, m.*

**FUIR, TO RUN AWAY, TO SHUN, TO AVOID,  
 TO FLY, OR FLEE.**

**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Fuir, to fly.*

Part. act. *Fuyant, flying.*

Part. pass. *Fui, fled.*

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

Present.

Sing. *Fuis, fuis, fuit, I fly.*

Plur. *Fuyons, fuyez, fuient.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Fuyois, fuyois, fuyois, I fled, or did fly.*

Plur. *Fuyions, fuyiez, fuyoient.*

Preterite.

This tense is conjugated with the verb *prendre* and  
 the substantive *suite*: ex.

*Je pris la suite, I fled, or ran away.*

Future.

Sing. *Fuirai, fuirai, fuirai, I shall or will fly.*

Plur. *Fuirons, fuirez, fuiront.*

Conditional present.

Sing. *Fuirais, fuirais, fuirait, I should, would, or*

Plur. *Fuirions, fuiriez, fuiraient. could, fly.*

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing. *Fuis, fuis, fly thou.*

Plur. *Fuyons, fuyez, fuient.*

SUB-

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Fue, que fue, que* that I may fly.  
 Plur. *Fuyions, fuyiez, fussent.*

Imperfect.

*Je prisse la fuite, &c.* that I might fly.

## MENTIR, TO LIE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Mentir, to lie.*Part. act. *Mentant, lying.*Part. pass. *Menti, lied.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Mens, mens, ment, I lie.*Plur. *Mentons, mentez, mentent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Mentois, mentois, mentoit, I did lie, or was lying.*Plur. *Mentions, mentiez, mentoient.*

Preterite.

Sing. *Mentis, mentis, mentit, I lied, or did lie.*Plur. *Mentimes, mentites, mentirent.*

Future.

Sing. *Mentirai, mentiras, mentira, I shall or will lie.*Plur. *Mentirons, mentirez, mentiront.*

Conditional present.

Sing. *Mentirois, mentirois, mentiroit, I would, could, or should, lie.*

Plur. *Mentirions, mentiriez, mentiroient.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Mens, mente, lie thou.*Plur. *Mentons, mentez, mentons.*

R

SUB-

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que* *que* *que* *Mente* *mentas*, *mente*, that I may lie.  
 Plur. *Mentions*, *mentiez*, *mentent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Mentisse*, *mentisses*, *mentit*, that I might lie.  
 Plur. *Mentissions*, *mentissiez*, *mentissent*.

The compound of this verb is,  
*Démentir*, to give one the lie, to belie, to contradict.

## MOURIR, TO DIE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Mourir*, to die.  
 Part. act, *Mourant*, dying.  
 Part. pass, *Mort*, died.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Meurs*, *meurs*, *meurt*, I die, or am dying.  
 Plur. *Mourons*, *maurez*, *meurent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Mourois*, *mourois*, *mouroit*, I was dying.  
 Plur. *Mourions*, *mouriez*, *mouroient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Mourus*, *mourus*, *mourut*.  
 Plur. *Mourûmes*, *mourûtes*, *moururent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Mourrai*, *mourras*, *mourra*, I shall or will die.  
 Plur. *Mourrons*, *mourrez*, *mourront*.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Mourrois*, *mourrois*, *mourroit*, I should, could,  
 or would, die.  
 Plur. *Mourrions*, *mourrions*, *mourraient*.

IMPE-

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Meurs, meure, die thou.*Plur. *Mourons, mourez, meurent.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Meure, meures, meure, that I may die.*Plur. *Mourions, mouriez, meurent.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Mourusse, mourusses, mourât, that I might die.*Plur. *Mourussions, mourussiez, mourussent.**Se mourir, to be dying.*

## OFFRIR, TO OFFER.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Offrir, to offer.*Part. act. *Offrant, offering.*Part. pass. *Offert, offered.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Offre, offres, offre, I offer, or am offering.*Plur. *Offrons, offrez, offrent.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Offrois, offrois, offroit, I did offer, or was offer-*Plur. *Offrions, offriez, offroient.* ing.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Offris, offris, offrit, I offered, or did offer.*Plur. *Offrimes, offrites, offrirent.*

## Future.

Sing. *Offrirai, offriras, offrira, I shall or will offer.*Plur. *Offrirons, offririez, offriront.*



## Conditional present.

Sing. *Offrirois, offrirois, offriroit*, I would, could, or should, offer.

Plur. *Offririons, offririez, offriroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Offres, offre, offer thou*.

Plur. *Offrons, offrez, offrent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que que que* *Offre, offres, offre*, that I may offer.

Plur. *Offrions, offriez, offrent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Offrisse, offrisse, offrit*, that I might offer.

Plur. *Offrissions, offrissez, offrirent*.

## O U I R, TO HEAR.

This verb is never used but in its participle passive joined to some of the tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have, preceding the verb *dire*, to say: ex.

*J'ai ouï dire que*, I have heard that, &c.

In general we make use of *apprendre*.

## O U V R I R, TO OPEN.

This verb, as well as its compounds,

*Couvrir*, to cover,

*Recouvrir*, to cover again,

*Découvrir*, { to discover,  
                  { to uncover,

is conjugated like *OFFRIR*.

*PARTIR*,

**PARTIR**, TO SET OUT, TO GO AWAY,

And its compounds,

**Départir**, to depart, to **Repartir**, to set out again,  
impart, to reply,

**Se REPENTIR**, TO REPENT,

**SENTIR**, TO FEEL, TO SMELL,

And its compounds,

**Consentir**, to consent, to **Resentir**, to be sensible of,  
agree, to resent,

**Pressentir**, to have a fore-  
sight of,

are conjugated like **MENTIR**,

## EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

As soon as they saw us coming they ran away.  
*voir, v. venir, v.*

— Avoid bad company. — He does not love your  
*compagnie, f.*

sister because she lies. — If you forgive me this time  
*parceque, c. fois, f.*

I never will lie any more. — I cannot believe him;  
*pouvoir, v.*

for, he contradicts himself at every instant. — Tell me  
*car, c. instant, m. Dire, v.*

what she has done to you; but, above all, do not lie.  
*sur, p.*

— If you do not behave better your mother will  
*se comporter, v.*

die with grief. — Mrs. S. died at Paris on the seventh  
*de chagrin, m. à*

of August, one thousand seven hundred and eighty. —  
*Moût, m.*

Were I in your place I would not offer her any money.  
*à place, f.*

— Why do you not open your sister the door?  
*Pourquoi, adv. porte, f.*

— Your brother was no sooner arrived in London than  
*plutôt, v. à*

I offered him my services. — Your actions never belie  
 your words. — Open the window. — I had heard you  
*fenêtre, f.*

were going to Holland at the beginning of next  
*commencement, m.*

month. — I hope you will never discover what I have  
*espérer, v.*

told you. — Cover my hat, and put it upon that  
*dire, v. mettre, v.*

chair. — I will set out to-morrow morning at seven  
*chaise, f.*

(o'clock.) — Do not set out without me. — Let us go and  
*heure, f.*

see Mrs. D —, I have heard she is dying. — Your sister  
 repents much for having sold her books. — Gather that

pink, it smells charmingly. — Her mother says she  
*œillet, m. bon, adv.*

never will consent to it. — If you do not take  
*prendre, v.*  
 care, you will repent of your imprudence soon or  
*garde, f. tôt, adv.*

late. — Let us die for our country, and our death will  
*tard, adv. patrie, f.*

be

be glorious. — I should die satisfied if I knew  
*glorieux, adj.* *I should die content, adj. savoir, v.*  
 you were happy. — You soon felt the effect of it. —  
 (by the subj.) *effet, m.*

My cousin set out from here yesterday morning at  
*ici, adv.*

nine o'clock. — I offer you my house, it is at your  
*maison, f.*

service. — You may rely upon her, she  
*pouvoir, v. compter, v.*

never will discover your secrets. — I never will offer  
*secret, m.*

you my horse any more. — He will feel it in his  
*cheval, m.*

turn, when he is old.

*tour, m.* (by the fut.)

## SERVIR, TO SERVE, TO HELP ONE TO.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Servir*, to serve.

Part. act. *Servant*, serving.

Part. pass. *Servi*, served.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Present.

Sing. *Sers, sers, sert*, I serve, or am serving.

Plur. *Servons, servez, servent*.

#### Imperfect.

Sing. *Servois, servois, servoit*, I did serve, or was

Plur. *Servions, serviez, servoient*. serving.

#### Preterite.

Sing. *Servis, servis, servit*, I did serve, or served.

Plur. *Servîmes, servîtes, servirent*.

#### Future.

Sing. *Servirai, serviras, servira*, I shall or will serve.

Plur. *Servirons, servirez, serviront*.

#### Conditional



Conditional present.  
 Sing. *Servirois, servirois, servirois*, I would, should, or  
 Plur. *Servirions, servirions, servirions* could, serve.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Sers, serve, serve* thou.  
 Plur. *Servons, servez, servent*.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### Present.

Sing. *Serve, serves, serve*, that I may serve.  
 Plur. *Servions, serviez, servent*.

#### Imperfect.

Sing. *Servisse, servisses, servis*, that I might serve.  
 Plur. *Servissions, servissiez, servissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,  
*Desservir*, to do an ill office, to clear a table.  
*Se servir*, to make use of, to use.

**SORTIR**, TO GO OUT,  
 is conjugated like **MENTIR**.

**SOUFFRIR**, TO SUFFER,  
 is conjugated like **OFFRIR**.

**TENIR**, TO HOLD, TO KEEP.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Tenir*, to hold.

Part. act. *Tenant*, holding.

Part. pass. *Tenu*, held.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Present.

Sing. *Tiens, tiens, tiens*, I hold, or am holding,  
 Plur. *Tenons, tenez, tiennent*.

#### Imperfect.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Tenois, tenois, tenoit*, I did hold, or was holding.  
 Plur. *Tenions, teniez, tenoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Tins, tins, tint*, I held, or did hold.  
 Plur. *Tinmes, tintes, tinrent*.

Future.

Sing. *Tiendrai, tiendras, tiendra*, I shall or will hold.  
 Plur. *Tiendrons, tiendrez, tiendront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Tiendrais, tiendrais, tiendrait*, I should, could, or would, hold.  
 Plur. *Tiendrions, tiendriez, tiendroient*.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Tiens, tiens, hold thou*.  
 Plur. *Tenons, tenez, tiennent*.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Tienne, tiennes, tienne*, that I may hold.  
 Plur. *Tenions, teniez, tiennent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Tinsses, tinsses, tint*, that I might hold.  
 Plur. *Tinssions, tinssiez, tinssent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*S'abstenir*, to abstain.

*Appartenir*, to belong.

*Contenir*, to contain.

*Detenir*, to detain.

*Entretenir*, to keep, to entertain.

*Maintenir*, to maintain.

*Obtenir*, to obtain.

*Retenir*, to retain, to keep.

*Soutenir*, to maintain, to hold, to support.

TRES.

**TRESSAILLIR, TO START, TO LEAP FOR.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**Present. *Tressaillir*, to start.Part. act. *Tressaillant*, starting.Part. pass. *Tressailli*, started.**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

Present.

Sing. *Tressaille*, *tressailles*, *tressaille*, I start.Plur. *Tressaillons*, *tressaillez*, *tressailent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Tressaillois*, *tressaillois*, *tressailloit*, I did start.Plur. *Tressaillions*, *tressailliez*, *tressailloient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Tressaillis*, *tressaillis*, *tressaillit*, I started.Plur. *Tressaillimes*, *tressaillites*, *tressaillirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Tressaillirai*, *tressailliras*, *tressaillira*, I shall or  
will start.Plur. *Tressaillirons*, *tressaillirez*, *tressailliront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Tressaillirois*, *tressaillirois*, *tressailliroit*, I should,  
would, &c. start.Plur. *Tressaillirions*, *tressailliriez*, *tressailliraient*.**IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.****SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

Present.

Sing. *Tressaille*, *tressailles*, *tressaille*, that I may start.Plur. *Tressaillions*, *tressailliez*, *tressailent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Tressaillisse*, *tressaillisses*, *tressaillist*, that I mightPlur. *Tressaillissions*, *tressaillissiez*, *tressaillissent*, start.**SAILLIR,**

**SAILLIR**, TO JUT, TO JET OUT, (term in architecture,) is conjugated as **TRESSAILLIR**, but is only used in the third person of some tenses and its infinitive mood.

**ASSAILLIR**, TO ASSAULT, is conjugated as above.

N. B. **SAILLIR**, TO GUSH OUT, (speaking of any liquids,) is regular, and conjugated as **PUNIR**.

### **V E N I R**, TO COME,

And its compounds,

<b>Convenir</b> , to agree, to be-	<b>Provenir</b> , to proceed,
come, to fit, to suit,	<b>Revenir</b> , to come back, to
<b>Contrevenir</b> , to infringe,	return,
<b>Devenir</b> , to become,	<b>Se souvenir</b> , to remember,
<b>Disconvenir</b> , to disagree,	to remind,*
<b>Intervenir</b> , to intervene,	<b>Se ressouvenir</b> , to recollect,
<b>Parvenir</b> , to attain to,	<b>Souvenir</b> , to relieve, to assist,
<b>Prévenir</b> , to prevent, to	<b>Survenir</b> , to befall, to hap-
prejudice, to anticipate,	pen unexpectedly, to
to prepossess,	come to,

are conjugated like **TENIR**.

### **V E T I R**, TO CLOTHE.

This verb is seldom used but in the present of the infinitive mood, and participle passive, **vêtu**, clothed; therefore the conjugation of its compound **REKETIR**, TO INVEST WITH, TO GIVE OTHER CLOTHES, will be given in lieu of it.

\* When this verb, in English, governs a noun or pronoun in the accusative case, it must be put in the infinitive mood, and preceded by the verb *faire* in the same tense, number, and person, as the verb *to remind*: ex.

*Faites-moi souvenir de passer chez* Remind me to call upon your aunt.

*Où, je vous en ferai souvenir,* Yes, I will remind you of it.

INFI-



## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Revêtir*, to invest.Part. act. *Revêtant*, investing.Part. pass. *Revêtu*, invested.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Revêts*, *revêts*, *revêt*, I invest.Plur. *Revêtons*, *revêtez*, *revêtent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Revêtois*, *revêtois*, *revêtoit*, I did invest.Plur. *Revétions*, *revétiez*, *revêtoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Revêtis*, *revêtis*, *revêtit*, I invested, or did invest.Plur. *Revêtimes*, *revêtiâtes*, *revêtirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Revêtirai*, *revêtiras*, *revêtira*, I shall or will invest.Plur. *Revêtirez*, *revêtirez*, *revêtiront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Revêtirais*, *revêtirais*, *revêtirait*, I should, would, &c. invest.Plur. *Revêtiriez*, *revêtiriez*, *revêtiraient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Revêts*, *revête*, invest thou.Plur. *Revêtons*, *revêtez*, *revêtent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Revête*, *revêtes*, *revête*, that I may invest.Plur. *Revêtions*, *revêtiez*, *revêtent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Revêtisse*, *revêtisses*, *revêtisse*, that I might invest.Plur. *Revêtissions*, *revêtissiez*, *revêtissent*.

EXER.

# EXERCISES UPON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Your friend Mr. A — does not serve me well. —  
*ami, m.*

Shall I help you to a little bit of lamb? —  
*morceau, m. agneau, m.*

We would serve him with all our heart if we could. —  
*pouvoir, v.*

I shall go out in half an hour. — If we go to-day  
*aujourd'hui, adv.*

to Richmond we will make use of your coach. — My  
*carrosse, m.*

sister went out this morning at nine o'clock and is not  
*matin, m.*

yet returned. — Nobody knows what we suffered in our  
*savoir, v.*

last voyage. — If I were as ill as you I would  
*voyage, m. malade, adj.*

not go out of my room. — Why do not you  
*chambre, f. Pourquoi, adv.*

serve your friends, since you may do it? — I  
*puisque, c. pouvoir, v.*

would make use of your horse, if you would be so kind  
*avoir la bonté*

as to lend it to me. — The more we are above  
*de au-dessus de, p.*

others, the more it becomes us to be modest and hum-

ble. — My aunt and I came yesterday to see you,  
*tante, f. voir, v.*

but you were not at home. — I hope you will keep  
*logis, m. espérer, v.*

your word, and come to-morrow. — I assure you  
*parole, f.                      demain, adv.                      assure, v.*

Mr. R——'s father holds the first rank in the town,  
*rang, m.                      ville, f.*

but his son will never attain to his father's reputation.

— I maintain, and will always maintain, that you will

not be happy without virtue. — We were coming  
*heureux, adj. sans, p.*

to see you, but you have anticipated all my designs. —

She leapt for joy when she saw her. — At last she has  
*de                      Enfin, adv.*

agreed to pay her an annual pension of twenty pounds.  
*de*

— Her mother started up at those words, and became  
*à, p.                      parole, f.*

furious. — Come on Friday morning at nine  
*furieux, adj.                      Vendredi, m.*

o'clock. — This house will belong to me after her  
*après, p.*

death. — You will obtain leave to go out ano-  
*mort, f.                      permission, f. de*

ther time if you come back soon. — This box con-  
*fois, f.                      bientôt, adv.                      boîte, f.*

tains all my jewels. — I agree Miss N. is the prettiest  
*bijoux, m. pl.*

of the family. — Who knows whether they will re-  
*savoir, v.                      si, c.*

member it or not? — They assaulted the town in the  
*au*

\* See the neuter verbs for the formation of the compound tenses.

middle of the night, and all their officers, even  
*milieu, m. même, adv.*

the general, agree that they have acquired much glory.

— Your illness proceeds from a great heat. — The  
*maladie, f. chaleur, f.*

first time you come to see me I will keep you  
 (by the fut.) *voir, v.*

two or three days. — Mr. B. desired me to tell you  
*jour, m. prier, v. de*

that he will not come back to-day. — When the

surgeon had opened his vein, the blood gushed  
*chirurgien, m. sang, m.*

out with an extraordinary impetuosity. — That poor

man will bless you, if you give him new clothes. —  
*benir, v.*

He is so prepossessed against me, that he will not  
*contre, p. vouloir, v.*

agree he is in the wrong. — We would certainly  
*certainement, adv.*

have come back yesterday had we had time. — You will  
*hier, adv.*

become a great man if you continue to study with  
*grand, adj. continuer, v. de*

the same assiduity. — He would have come to see us  
*assiduité, f.*

last week if it had not rained. — The first time  
*semaine, f. plu, p.p. fois, f.*

I go out, remind me to call on your bro-  
 (by the fut.) *de passer, v. chez, p.*

ther. — That hat would suit you very well, if you



were a little taller. — Do not go out to-day, you

will suffer much if you do. — I should not suffer  
*beaucoup, adv. faire, v.*

(so much) if it were fine weather. — Why do not  
*tant, adv. faisoit*

you abstain from drinking? — The king has invested  
*boire, v.*

that nobleman with all his authority. — You may  
*seigneur, m. de pouvoir, v.*

set out this morning, but remember to come back  
*de*

at night. — Were I in your place I would detain  
*ce soir, m. place, f.*

him here a little longer; for, he always keeps  
*long-temps, adv. car, c.*

himself shut up in his house. — I do not think that  
*enfermé, p. p. croire, v.*

colour suits your sister. — When will she return  
*Quand, adv.*

from the country? — She wrote she would come next  
*campagne, f.*

Saturday if the weather were fine.  
*tems, m.*

## VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

### ASSEOIR, TO SIT DOWN.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Assoir, to sit down.*  
 Part. act. *Assoyant, sitting down.*  
 Part. pass. *Assis, sat down; (or seated.)*

INDI-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Assieds, assieds, assied*, I sit down.Plur. *Assieyons, assieyez, assieient*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Assieyois, assieyois, assieyoit*, I did sit, or was sit-Plur. *Assieyions, assieyiez, assieyaient*. ting, down.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Assis, assis, assit*, I sat down.Plur. *Assimes, assites, assirent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Asseyerai, asseyeras, asseyera*, I shall or will sitPlur. *Asseyerons, asserez, asseyeront*. down.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Asseyeróis, asseyeróis, asseyeróit*, I should, would,  
or could, sit down.Plur. *Asseyerions, asseyeriez, asseyeróient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Assieds, assie, sit down*.Plur. *Assieyons, assieyez, assieient*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Assie, assies, assie*, that I may sit down.Plur. *Assieyions, assieyiez, assieient*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Assiesse, assiesse, assit*, that I might sit down.Plur. *Assissions, assissiez, assissent*.

The compound of this verb, is,

*Se rasseoir*, to sit down again.

**SEOIR**, TO FIT WELL, TO BECOME, TO SIT,  
the primitive of *asseoir*, is never used in the present of  
its infinitive mood; and in its other tenses is conjuga-  
ted as follows:

Part. act. *Séant*, fitting well, fitting, or becoming.Part. pass. *Sis*, never used but in the sense of situated,  
or lying.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

- Present. *Il sied, ils sient*, it becomes, they become, &c.  
 Imperfect. *Il sèyoit, ils sèyoient*, it was becoming, &c.  
 Preterite wanting.  
 Future. *Il sièra, ils sièrant*, it or they will become.  
 Cond. Pres. *Il sièroit, ils sièraient*, it or they would become.

The other tenses are never used.

**SURSEOIR**, TO SUPERSEDE, TO PUT OFF, a compound of *sèoir*, is only used in law, and is thus conjugated:

Part. act. *Sursoyant.*

Part. pass. *Surfis.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

*Je sursois, &c. nous sursoyons, &c.*

Imperfect.

*Je sursoyois, &c. nous sursoyions, &c.*

Preterite.

*Je surfis, &c. nous surfimes, &c.*

Future.

*Je surseoirai, &c. nous surseoirons, &c.*

Conditional present.

*Je surseoirais, &c. nous surseoirions, &c.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Sursois, &c. sursoyons, &c.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

*Que je surseois, &c. que nous sursoyions, &c.*

Imperfect.

*Que je surfisse, &c. que nous surfissions, &c.*

**DECHOIR,**

**DECHOIR, TO DECAY, TO DECLINE.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**Present. *Déchoir*, to decay.

Part. act. wanting.

Part. pass. *Déchu*, decayed.**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

Present.

Sing. *Déchois*, *déchois*, *déchoit*, I decay.Plur. *Déchoyons*, *déchoyez*, *déchoient*.

Imperfect is wanting.

Preterite.

Sing. *Déchus*, *déchus*, *déchut*, I decayed, or did de-Plur. *Décbûmes*, *décbûtes*, *déchurent*. cay.

Future.

Sing. *Décherrai*, *décherras*, *décherra*, I shall or willPlur. *Décherrons*, *décherez*, *décherront*. decay.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Décherrois*, *décherrois*, *décherroit*, I should,  
would, or could, decay.Plur. *Décherriens*, *décherriez*, *décherroient*.**IMPERATIVE MOOD** is wanting.**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

Present.

Sing. *Déchoie*, *déchoie*, *déchoie*, that I may decay.Plur. *Déchoyions*, *déchoyiez*, *déchoient*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Décbusse*, *décbusses*, *décbût*, that I might de-Plur. *Décbussions*, *décbussiez*, *décbussent*. cay.**CHOIR**, the primitive of the above verb, is obsolete.**ECHOIR**, TO FALL OUT, TO CHANCE, is conjugated like **DECHOIR**. Its part. act. is *écbiant*.**MOUVOIR**,



## MOUVOIR, TO MOVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Mouvoir*, to move.Part. act. *Mouvant*, moving.Part. pass. *Mu*, moved.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Meus*, *meus*, *meut*, I move.Plur. *Mouvons*, *mouvez*, *meuvent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Mouvois*, *mouvois*, *mouvoit*, I did move.Plur. *Mouvions*, *mouviez*, *mouvoient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Mus*, *mus*, *mut*, I moved, or did move.Plur. *Mûmes*, *mûtes*, *murent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Mourrai*, *mourras*, *mourra*, I shall or will move.Plur. *Mourrons*, *mouurez*, *mourront*.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Mourrois*, *mourrois*, *mourroit*, I should, could,  
or would, move.Plur. *Mourrions*, *mourriez*, *mourroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Meus*, *meuve*, move thou.Plur. *Mouvons*, *mouvez*, *meuvent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Meuve*, *meuve*, *meuve*, that I may move.Plur. *Mouvions*, *mouviez*, *meuvent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Musse*, *musses*, *mût*, that I might move.Plur. *Mussions*, *mussiez*, *mussent*.

The compound of this verb is,

*Emouvoir*, to stir up, to move.

## POUVOIR, TO BE ABLE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Pouvoir*, to be able.  
 Part. act. *Pouvant*, being able.  
 Part. pass. *Pu*, been able.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Puis*, or *peux*, *peux*, *peut*, I am able, I can or  
 Plur. *Pouvons*, *pouvez*, *peuvent*. may.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Pouvois*, *pouvais*, *pouvait*, I was able, or I could.  
 Plur. *Pouvions*, *pouviez*, *pouvoient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Pus*, *pus*, *put*, I was able, or I could.  
 Plur. *Pûmes*, *pûtes*, *purent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Pourrai*, *pourras*, *pourra*, I shall or will be able.  
 Plur. *Pourrons*, *pourrez*, *pourront*.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Pourrois*, *pourrais*, *pourrait*, I should be able, I  
 could or might.  
 Plur. *Pourrions*, *pourriez*, *pourroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD wanting.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Puisse*, *puisses*, *puisse*, that I may be able, or  
 Plur. *Puissions*, *puissiez*, *puissent*. I may.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Pusse*, *pusse*, *pût*, that I might be able, or I  
 Plur. *Pussions*, *pussez*, *pusseut*. might.

When the words *can*, *may*, *could*, or *might*, express  
 an absolute or permissive power, or a possibility of do-  
 ing

ing a thing, *can* and *may* are rendered by the present tense of the indicative of this verb : ex.

*Je puis vous vendre un bon cheval si vous en avez besoin d'un,* I can sell you a good horse if you want one.

*Vous pouvez aller au bal, mais revenez à dix heures,* You may go to the ball, but come back at ten o'clock.

N. B. *May*, expressing a wish, is rendered by the present tense of the subjunctive : ex.

*Puissiez-vous être heureux,* May you be happy.

*Could* is rendered by one of the following tenses, viz. the imperfect, preterite definite or indefinite, or conditional present ; and *might* by the last tense : ex.

*Je ne pouvois pas mieux faire,* I could not do better.

*Il ne put pas venir avec nous la semaine passée,* He could not come with us last week.

*Vous pourriez vous tromper aussi bien que lui,* You might mistake as well as he.

*Could* or *might*, being joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, must be rendered by the conditional past of the above verb, with the participle turned into the present of the infinitive mood : ex.

*J'aurais pu vous le dire hier au soir,* I could have told it to you last night.

*Vous auriez pu le faire en trois jours,* You might have done it in three days.

## SAVOIR, TO KNOW something.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Savoir*, to know.

Part. act. *Sachant*, knowing.

Part. pass. *Su*, known.

INDI-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Sais, sais, sait*, I know.Plur. *Savons, savez, savent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Savois, savois, savoit*, I did know, or knew.Plur. *Savions, saviez, savoient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Sus, sus, fut*, I knew, or did know.Plur. *Sûmes, sûtes, surent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Saurai, sauras, saura*, I shall or will know.Plur. *Saurons, saurez, sauront*.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Sauroit,\* saurois, sauroit*, I should, would, orPlur. *Saurions, sauriez, sauroient*. could, know.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Saches, sache*, know thou.Plur. *Sachez, sachez, sachent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que que que*  
*Sache,† saches, sache*, that I may know.Plur. *Sachions, sachiez, sachent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Susse, fusses, fût*, that I might know.Plur. *Sussions, fussiez, fussent*.\* This tense, conjugated negatively, is often Englished by *cannot* : ex.*Je ne saurois vous le dire, I cannot tell it to you.*† We sometimes employ the present of the subjunctive of this verb instead of the indicative ; but it is never to be used without the negation *pas*, and most commonly in answering a question : ex.*Le roi ira-t-il à la comédie ?**Will the king go the play ?**Pas que je sache,**Not that I know of.*



## VALOIR, TO BE WORTH.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Valoir*, to be worth.  
 Part. act. *Valant*, being worth.  
 Part. pass. *Valu*, been worth.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Vaux*, *vaux*, *vaut*, I am worth.  
 Plur. *Valons*, *valez*, *valent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Valois*, *valois*, *valoit*, I was worth.  
 Plur. *Valions*, *valiez*, *valoient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Valus*, *valus*, *valut*, I was worth.  
 Plur. *Valûmes*, *valûtes*, *valurent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Vaudrai*, *vaudras*, *vaudra*, I shall or will be worth.  
 Plur. *Vaudrons*, *vaudrez*, *vaudront*.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Vaudrois*, *vaudrois*, *vaudroit*, I should, &c. be worth.  
 Plur. *Vaudrions*, *vaudriez*, *vaudroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vaux*, *vaille*, be thou worth.  
 Plur. *Valons*, *valez*, *vailent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Vaille*, *vailles*, *vaille*, that I may be worth.  
 Plur. *Valions*, *valiez*, *vailent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Valusse*, *valussez*, *valût*, that I might be worth.  
 Plur. *Valussions*, *valussiez*, *valussent*.

The

The compound of this verb is,

*Prévaloir*, to prevail, which is conjugated as *VALOIR*, but we say much better in the present tense of the subjunctive,

*Que je préval-e, es, e ; ions, iez, ent.*

## *V O I R*, TO SEE.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Voir*, to see.

Part. act. *Voyant*, seeing.

Part. pass. *Vu*, seen.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Vois, vois, voit*, I see.

Plur. *Voyons, voyez, voient*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Voyois, voyois, voyoit*, I did see.

Plur. *Voyions, voyiez, voyoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Vis, vis, vit*, I saw or did see.

Plur. *Vimes, vîtes, virent*.

Future.

Sing. *Verrai, verras, verra*, I shall or will see.

Plur. *Verrons, verrez, verront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Verrois, verrois, verroit*, I should, &c. see.

Plur. *Verriens, verriez, verroient*.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vois, vois*, see thou.

Plur. *Voyons, voyez, voient*.

T

SUB-

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que que que*  
*Voie, voies, voie*, that I may see.  
 Plur. *Voyions, voyiez, voient*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Visse, visses, vît*, that I might see.  
 Plur. *Vissions, vissiez, vissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of. *Prévoir*, to foresee.  
*Revoir*, to see again. *Pourvoir*, to provide.

*PREVOIR* differs from *VOIR* in the future : ex.

Sing. *Prévoirai, prévoiras, prévoira*.  
 Plur. *Prévoirons, prévoirez, prévoiront*. And,

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Prévoirois, prévoirois, prévoiroit*.  
 Plur. *Prévoirions, prévoiriez, prévoiroient*.

*POURVOIR* makes in the preterite,

Sing. *Pourvus, pourvus, pourvut*.  
 Plur. *Pourvûmes, pourvûtes, pourvurent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Pourvoirai, pourvoiras, pourvoira*.  
 Plur. *Pourvoirons, pourvoirez, pourvoiront*.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Pourvoirois, pourvoirois, pourvoiroit*.  
 Plur. *Pourvoirions, pourvoiriez, pourvoiroient*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Pourvusse, pourvusses, pourvût*.  
 Plur. *Pourvussions, pourvussiez, pourvussent*.

*VOULOIR*,

**VOULOIR, TO BE WILLING.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**Present. *Veuloir*, to be willing.Part. act. *Veulant*, being willing.Part. pass. *Veulu*, been willing.**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

Present.

Sing. *Veux, veux, veut*, I am willing, or I will.Plur. *Veulons, voulez, veulent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Veulois, voulois, vouloit*, I was willing, or IPlur. *Veulions, vouliez, vouloient*. would.

Preterite.

Sing. *Veulus, voulus, voulut*, I was willing, or IPlur. *Veulumes, voulûtes, voulurent*. would.

Future.

Sing. *Veudrai, vaudras, vaudra*, I shall be willing, orPlur. *Veudrons, vaudrez, vaudront*. I will.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Veudrois, vaudrois, vaudroit*, I should be wil-

ling, or I would.

Plur. *Veudrions, vaudriez, vaudroient*.**IMPERATIVE MOOD** is wanting.**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

Present.

Sing. *Que veuille, que veuilles, que veuille*, that I may be willing.Plur. *Veulions, vouliez, veuillent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Veulusse, voulusse, voulût*, that I might bePlur. *Veulussions, voulussiez, voulussent*. willing.When the words *will* or *would* express a will, choice, or deliberation, in the agent, and can be turned by *choose*



or *chose*, will is rendered in French by the present of the indicative mood, or future of this verb : ex.

*Je veux y aller et lui parler moi-même,* I will, or *choose to*, go there and speak to him myself:  
*Il ne veut pas manger,* He will not eat, or does not *choose* to eat :

and *would* by one of the following tenses, viz. the imperfect, preterite definite or indefinite, or conditional present : ex.

*Si je voulois, je vous dirois où elle demeure,* If I *would*, or *chose*, I could tell you where she lives.  
*Il voulut absolument partir hier,* He *would* absolutely, or absolutely *chose* to, set out yesterday.  
*Que voudriez-vous que je fisse?* What *would* you have me do?

When *would* is joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, they are to be rendered by the preterpluperfect or conditional past of the above verb, with the participle passive turned into the present of the infinitive mood : ex.

*Si j'avois voulu lui parler,* If I *would have* spoken to him, or *had I chosen* to speak to him.  
*Vous n'auriez pas voulu prendre les armes, si, &c.* You *would not have* taken up arms, if, &c.  
*Nous aurions pu l'arrêter si nous eussions voulu,* We could have stopped him if we *would*, or *had chosen*.

## EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Why do not you sit down, sir? — You  
*Pourquoi, adv.*

come to see me very seldom. — Let us sit down upon  
*rarement, adv.*

the

the grass. — Do not make (so much) noise, I cannot  
*berbe, f. faire, v. tant, adv.*

learn my lesson. — Do you know what has hap-  
*apprendre, v. arri-*

pened to her? — As soon as he saw he could not  
*ver, v. Aussitôt que, c.*

make her hear reason he went away. — We  
*entendre, v. s'en aller, v.*

went there ourselves, and we soon knew what she  
*bientôt, adv.*

asked. — See the letter she wrote me. — We will not  
*écrire, v.*

sit down till you have determined to set out. —  
*que ne se déterminer, v. à*

The first time I saw your sister she pleased me. —  
*fois, f. plaire, v.*

I would sit down upon the grass if it were not so

damp. — Mrs. P. desired me to tell you she could  
*humide, adj. prier, v. dire, v.*

not come to see you this week, but she would cer-  
*semaine, f. cer-*

tainly come at the beginning of next  
*tainement, adv. commencement, m.*

month. — Cannot you lend me three or four  
*mois, m. prêter, v.*

guineas? — If I would, I soon could know  
*guinée, f. bientôt, adv.*

whether Mrs. D. has seen your aunt or not. —  
*fr, c. tante, f.*

The last time I was in the park, I could not distin-

guish her on account of the trees that were between  
*à cause, p.*

her and me; (I had only a) glimpse of her. —  
*je n'ai fait que*

This cloth is not worth five shillings a yard, but its  
*drap, m.*

colour becomes you very well. — Do not you see the

defects of it? — When you know your lesson,  
*défaut, m.* (by the fut.)

come and repeat it to me. — Did you not know that  
*répéter, v.*

Mr. A. was to marry Miss B.? — I knew it, but  
*épouser, v.* *mais, c.*

I was not willing to tell him of it, — I believe you  
*parler, v.*

could learn your lessons much better if you  
*apprendre, v.* *beaucoup, adv.*

would. — Could you lend me your horse for two or  
*prêter, v.*

three days? — If your brother come with me, will he  
*jour, m.* *avec, p.*

be able to follow me? — This room can contain  
*suivre, v.*

about a hundred people. — Could they see so great an  
*environ, p.* *personne, f.*

alteration without being vexed (at it?) — It is  
*changement, m.* *sans, p.* *fâché, p.p.* *en, pro.*

better to be unfortunate than to be criminal. — He is  
*malheureux, adj.*

incapable of commanding others who cannot command

himself. — His best coat was not worth two-pence  
*habit, m.* *sou, m.*

when he arrived from Germany. — We saw them yes-  
*Allemagne, f.* *bi-*

terday.

terday. — They did not foresee what would happen to  
*er, adv. arriver, v.*

them. — We ought to make a judicious choice  
*devoir, v. faire, v. judicieux, adj. choix, m.*  
 of those friends to whom we intend to give our con-  
*vouloir, v. con-*

fidence. — Do you know where Miss B. lives? — Yes,  
*fiance, f. où, adv. demeurer, v.*

I do (know it,) and I see her every day at her window.  
*fenêtre, f.*

— Why will you not tell it me? — She would marry  
*épouser, v.*

him in spite of all her relations. — It is for that  
*en, p. dépit, m. parent, m. Ce, pro.*

reason her father says he will never see her again. —  
*dire, v.*

All the finest talents reunited are not worth a virtue. —

Virtue is a quality which we cannot praise too much. —  
*on, pro. louer, v. trop, adv.*

Severity and rigour may excite fear, but not love. —  
*Sévérité, f. rigueur, f. crainte, f. amour, m.*

You saw with what goodness she received him. — I  
*bonté, f. recevoir, v.*

would not tell her what I think about it, for fear of  
*de, p.*

giving her any subject of complaint. — If you foresee the  
*plainte, f.*

danger, why do you not endeavour to avoid it? —  
*tâcher, v. de éviter, v.*

They were willing to withdraw, but your brother  
*se retirer, v.*

hindered them (from it,) and desired them to sit down  
*empêcher, v. prier, v. de*

again.



again, — You can speak to Mr. B. whenever you  
*parler, v. quand, adv.*

please, but I may not take that liberty. — He  
*vouloir, v. prendre, v.*

would not sell me these buckles under four  
*vendre, v. boucle, f. à moins de, p.*

guineas. — I will not see your brother (any more,)  
*plus, adv.*

but I will see you again as soon as I can. —  
 (by the fut.)

Every body thinks that if they would have pursued  
*poursuivre, v.*

the enemy briskly they might have ended the  
*vigoureusement, adv. finir, v.*

war on that day. — Should we see ourselves reduced  
*réduire, v.*

to so great difficulties? — If I would have believed  
*croire, v.*

him, he would have persuaded me to go to Italy with  
*de*

him. — He could have done his work in less than  
*faire, v. en, p.*

ten minutes if he had not amused himself in reading.  
*s'amuser, v. à lire, v.*

— If you want that book you may take it, it is  
*avoir besoin de*

at your service. — If he sold all his horses now, the  
*à*

best of them would not be worth ten guineas. — We

might have danced till (twelve o'clock) if that  
*jusqu'à, p. minuit, m.*

had not happened. — Oh! my children, may you be

happy,

happy, and never bewail the moment of your  
*heureux*, adj. *pleurer*, v.

birth! — I spoke to her (a long while,) but could  
*naissance*, f. *long-tems*, adv.

not persuade her to come with me. — May I go  
*de*

and see him? — Yes, but come back as soon as  
*aussitôt que*, c.

you can.

(by the fut.)

## VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

### *ABSoudre*, TO ABSOLVE.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Absoudre*, to absolve.

Part. act. *Absolvant*, absolving.

Part. pass. *Absous*, absolved.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present.

Sing. *Absous*, *absous*, *absout*, I absolve.

Plur. *Absolvons*, *absolvez*, *absolvent*.

##### Imperfect.

Sing. *Absolvois*, *absolvois*, *absolvoit*, I did absolve.

Plur. *Absolvions*, *absolviez*, *absolvoient*.

Preterite is wanting.

##### Future.

Sing. *Absoudrai*, *absoudras*, *absoudra*, I shall or will

Plur. *Absoudrons*, *absoudrez*, *absoudront*. absolve.

##### Conditional present.

Sing. *Absoudrois*, *absoudrois*, *absoudroit*, I should, &c.

Plur. *Absoudrions*, *absoudriez*, *absoudroient*. absolve.

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Absous*, *absolve*, absolve thou.

Plur. *Absolvons*, *absolvez*, *absolvent*.

S U B.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Absolve, absolvet, absolvet, that I may absolve.*  
 Plur. *Absolvions, absolviez, absolvient.*

Imperfect is wanting.

**S O U D R E**, TO SOLVE, the primitive of this verb, is only used in the present tense of the infinitive mood.

The other compounds are,

*Dissoudre*, to dissolve. *Résoudre*, to resolve.

*Dissoudre* has the same tenses wanting as *absoudre*.  
*Résoudre* has its participle passive, *résolu*: its preterite,

Sing. *Résolus, résolu, résolut.*

Plur. *Résolûmes, résolûtes, résolurent.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Résolusse, résolusses, résolût.*

Plur. *Résolussions, résolussiez, résolussent.*

**A S T R E I N D R E**, TO OBLIGE,

**A T T E I N D R E**, TO REACH, TO HIT, TO ATTAIN,  
 TO OVERTAKE, and

**A V E I N D R E**, TO REACH, TO FETCH OUT,  
 are conjugated as **C R A I N D R E**.

The three above verbs grow obsolete.

**B A T T R E**, TO BEAT.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Battre*, to beat.

Part. act. *Battant*, beating.

Part. pass. *Battu*, beaten.

INDI-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Bats, bats, bat*, I beat, or am beating.Plur. *Battons, battez, battent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Battois, battois, battoit*, I did beat, or was beat-Plur. *Battions, battiez, battoient*. ing.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Battis, battis, battit*, I did beat, or beat.Plur. *Battîmes, battîtes, battirent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Battrai, battras, battrà*, I shall or will beat.Plur. *Battrons, battriez, battront*.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Battrois, battrois, battrait*, I should, &c. beat.Plur. *Battrions, battriez, battroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Bats, batte*, beat thou.Plur. *Battons, battez, battent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que que que* *Batte, battes, batte*, that I may beat.Plur. *Battions, battiez, battent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Battisse, battisses, battît*, that I might beat.Plur. *Battissions, battissiez, battissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Abattre*, to pull down. *Rabattre*, to abate, to beat*Combattre*, to fight. down.*Débattre*, to debate. *Rebattre*, to beat again.*Se débattre*, to struggle.**B O I R E, TO DRINK.**

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Boire*, to drink.Part. act. *Bouvant*, drinking.Part. pass. *Bû*, drunk.

INDI-



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Bois, bois, boit*, I drink or am drinking.Plur. *Buvons, buvez, boivent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Buvois, buvois, buvoit*, I did drink, or wasPlur. *Buvions, buviez, buvoient*. drinking.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Bus, bus, but*, I drank, or did drink.Plur. *Bûmes, bûtes, burent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Boirai, boiras, boira*, I shall or will drink.Plur. *Boirons, boirez, boiront*.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Boirois, boirois, boiroit*, I should, &c. drink.Plur. *Boirions, boiriez, boiroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Bois, boive*, drink thou.Plur. *Buvons, buvez, boivent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que que que Boive, boives, boive*, that I may drink.Plur. *Buvions, buviez, boivent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Busse, busse, bût*, that I might drink.Plur. *Bussions, bussiez, bussent*.

## CEINDRE, TO GIRD,

And its compound, *Enceindre*, to inclose, to encompass, are conjugated like *CEINDRE*.

## CIRCONCIRE, TO CIRCUMCISE,

Is conjugated like *CONFIRE*, but has its participle passive ending in *is* instead of *it*.

## CONCLURE,

**CONCLURE, TO CONCLUDE.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Conclure, to conclude.*  
 Part. act. *Concluant, concluding.*  
 Part. pass. *Conclu, concluded.*

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing. *Conclus, conclus, conclut, I conclude.*  
 Plur. *Concluons, concluez, concluent.*

**Imperfect.**

Sing. *Concluois, concluois, concluoit, I did conclude.*  
 Plur. *Concluions, concluez, concluoient.*

**Preterite.**

Sing. *Conclus, conclus, conclut, I did conclude, or*  
 Plur. *Conclûmes, conclûtes, conclurent. concluded.*

**Future.**

Sing. *Conclurai, concluras, conclura, I shall or will*  
 Plur. *Conclurons, conclurez, conclurant. conclude.*

**Conditional present.**

Sing. *Conclurois, conclurois, concluroit, I should, &c.*  
 Plur. *Conclurons, concluriez, concluraient. conclude.*

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing. *Conclus, conclue, conclude thou.*  
 Plur. *Concluons, concluez, concluent.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

*Que* Sing. *Conclue, conclues, conclue, that I may con-*  
 Plur. *Concluions, concluez, concluent. clude.*

**Imperfect.**

Sing. *Conclusse, conclusses, conclût, that I might con-*  
 Plur. *Conclussions, conclussiez, conclussent. clude.*

U

CONDUIRE,

**CONDUIRE, TO CONDUCT, TO LEAD, TO CARRY.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Conduire*, to conduct.  
 Part. act. *Conduisant*, conducting.  
 Part. pass. *Conduit*, conducted.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing. *Conduis*, *conduis*, *conduit*, I lead, &c.  
 Plur. *Conduisons*, *conduisez*, *conduisent*.

**Imperfect.**

Sing. *Conduisois*, *conduisois*, *conduisoit*, I did lead.  
 Plur. *Conduisions*, *conduisiez*, *conduisoient*.

**Preterite.**

Sing. *Conduisis*, *conduisis*, *conduisit*, I lead.  
 Plur. *Conduisimes*, *conduisites*, *conduisirent*.

**Future.**

Sing. *Conduirai*, *conduiras*, *conduira*, I shall or will  
 Plur. *Conduirons*, *conduirez*, *conduiront*. lead.

**Conditional present.**

Sing. *Conduirois*, *conduirois*, *conduiroit*, I should, &c.  
 Plur. *Conduirions*, *conduiriez*, *conduiroient*. lead.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing. *Conduis*, *conduise*, lead thou.  
 Plur. *Conduisons*, *conduisez*, *conduisent*.

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Conduise*, *conduises*, *conduise*, that I may lead.  
 Plur. *Conduisions*, *conduisiez*, *conduissent*.

**Imperfect.**

Sing. *Conduisiffe*, *conduisiffes*, *conduisift*, that I might  
 Plur. *Conduisiffions*, *conduisiffiez*, *conduisiffent*. lead.

**Its compound is,***Reconduire*, to lead again.**CONFIRE,**

## CONFIRE, TO PRESERVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Confire*, to preserve.  
 Part. act. *Confissant*, preserving.  
 Part. pass. *Confit*, preserved.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Confis*, *confis*, *confit*, I preserve.  
 Plur. *Confissons*, *confissent*, *confissent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Confissois*, *confissois*, *confissoit*, I did preserve.  
 Plur. *Confissions*, *confissions*, *confissaient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Confis*, *confis*, *confit*, I preserved.  
 Plur. *Confistes*, *confistes*, *confirent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Confirai*, *confiras*, *confira*, I shall or will pre-  
 Plur. *Confirons*, *confirons*, *confiront*. serve.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Confirais*, *confirais*, *confirait*, I should, &c. pre-  
 Plur. *Confirions*, *confirions*, *confiraient*. serve.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Confis*, *confis*, preserve thou.  
 Plur. *Confissez*, *confissez*, *confissent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Confise*, *confise*, *confise*, that I may preserve.  
 Plur. *Confissent*, *confissent*, *confissent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Confisse*, *confisse*, *confisse*, that I might preserve.  
 Plur. *Confissent*, *confissent*, *confissent*.



**CONNOITRE, TO KNOW, TO BE ACQUAINTED WITH, somebody.**

**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Connoître, to know.*  
 Part. act. *Connoissant, knowing.*  
 Part. pass. *Connu, known.*

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

**Present.**

Sing. *Connois, connois, connoit, I know.*  
 Plur. *Connoissons, connoissez, connoissent.*

**Imperfect.**

Sing. *Connoissois, connoissais, connoissait, I did know.*  
 Plur. *Connoissions, connoissiez, connoissaient.*

**Preterite.**

Sing. *Connus, connus, connut, I knew.*  
 Plur. *Connûmes, connûtes, connurent.*

**Future.**

Sing. *Connoîtrai, connoîtras, connoîtra, I shall, &c.*  
 Plur. *Connoîtrons, connoîtrez, connoîtront. know.*

**Conditional present.**

Sing. *Connoitrois, connoitrais, connoitroit, I should, &c.*  
 Plur. *Connoitriens, connoitriez, connoitraient. know.*

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing. *Connois, connoisse, know thou.*  
 Plur. *Connoissons, connoissez, connoissent.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

**Present.**

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Connoisse, connoisses, connoisse, that I may know.*  
 Plur. *Connoissions, connoissiez, connoissent.*

**Imperfect.**

Sing. *Connusse, connusses, connût, that I might know.*  
 Plur. *Connussions, connussiez, connussent.*

The

The compounds of this verb are,  
*Méconnoître*, to take for another. *Reconnoître*, to acknowledge, to know again.

**CONSTRUIRE**, TO CONSTRUCT, TO BUILD,  
 is conjugated as **CONDUIRE**.

**CONTRAINdre**, TO CONSTRAIN, TO COMPEL,  
 TO FORCE,  
 is conjugated as **CRaindre**.

**COUDRE**, TO SEW, TO STITCH.

**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Coudre*, to sew.

Part. act. *Cousant*, sewing.

Part. pass. *Cousu*, sewed.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

**Present.**

Sing. *Couds*, *couds*, *coud*, I sew, or am sewing.

Plur. *Cousent*, *cousez*, *cousent*.

**Imperfect.**

Sing. *Cousais*, *cousais*, *cousais*, I did sew, or was sewing.

Plur. *Cousions*, *cousiez*, *cousaient*.

**Preterite.**

Sing. *Cousis*, *cousis*, *cousis*, I sewed.

Plur. *Cousîmes*, *cousîtes*, *cousirent*.

**Future.**

Sing. *Coudrai*, *coudrai*, *coudrai*, I shall or will sew.

Plur. *Coudrez*, *coudrez*, *coudront*.

**Conditional present.**

Sing. *Coudrais*, *coudrais*, *coudrais*, I should, &c. sew.

Plur. *Coudriez*, *coudriez*, *coudraient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Couds, couse, sew thou.*Plur. *Cousons, cousez, cousent.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Couse, couses, couse, that I may sew.*Plur. *Cousons, cousez, cousent.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Coufisse, coufisses, coust, that I might sew.*Plur. *Coufissions, coufissiez, coufissent.*

Its compounds are,

*Découdre, to unsew. Récoudre, to sew again.*

## EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

I know several persons in this country who  
*plusieurs, adj. pays, m.*speak as good French as if they had been brought  
*bien, adv. elle-*up in France. — Do you know Mr. A.? —  
*vé, p. p.*Yes, we know him very well; and, though he be  
*Oui, adv.*

rich, I assure you he is not the more charitable for

it. — He has been beaten (soundly.) — If you  
*comme il faut,*knew the question, you would resolve it in two  
*question, f.*words. — I will soon conclude, if you think  
*mot, m. comme, adv.*

your

your brother does. — We should beat them if they  
 did not fight in their own country. — Do not  
*propre, adj.*

beat him any more, he acknowledges his fault. —  
*faute, f.*

We ran for *plus de, adv.* above two hours; but, at last,  
*enfin, adv.*

your brother overtook him, and brought him back. —  
*ramener, v.*

You would never see him again if you knew him. —

He struggled a long while, but he was soon obliged  
*tems, m.*

to (cry for) mercy. — Mr. R. told me some time  
*de demander, v. grace, f.*

ago that he would build a ship on a new plan. —

What will you drink? — I will drink nothing but  
*ne que*

water. — Do not drink so much. — If your fa-  
*tant, adv.*

ther were here you would not drink (at all.) —  
*du tout.*

Let us fill our glasses and drink our friend's health. —  
*verre, m. santé, f.*

We beat them because our troops were better dis-  
*parceque, c. dis-*

ciplined than theirs. — Come with us, we shall  
*cipline, p.p.*

see whether she will know you again or not. — If you  
*si, c.*

knew her, I am certain she would please you. —  
*plaire, v.*

The



The English drink as much tea as the Venetians  
*autant, adv. thé, m. Vénitien, m.*

drink coffee. — After tea we conducted the ladies  
*café, m.*

to the concert. — When they had explained to us

all that had passed, we acknowledged we (were in the  
*se passer, v. avoir*

wrong.) — Unsew that gown. — I will sew it to-mor-  
*tort.*

row. — The Jews and Mahometans circumcise  
*Juif, m. Mahométan, m.*

their children a few days after their birth. — Why  
*peu, adv. naissance, f.*

do not you preserve some fruits this year? — He could  
*année, f.*

not know you if he saw you now. — Did you ask  
*à-présent, adv.*

him whether he were acquainted with any of these  
*sc.*

ladies? — I know Mr. Y. but I do not trust to  
*se fier, v.*

him. — You will force your father to punish you  
*à*

if you do not behave better. — The last time  
*se comporter, v.*

we went to Vauxhall we drank three bottles of Cham-  
*pagne.*

paign wine. — The enemies beat us on the eigh-  
*teen.*

teenth, but we beat them again two days after. —

What will you drink, ladies? — We shall willingly  
*madams, f. volon-*

ly

ly drink some wine; for, we have not drunk any  
*tiens, adv.*

since our departure from France. — I would  
*depuis, p. départ, m.*

have preserved some fruits this year, but sugar is

too dear. — Thence we concluded you could  
*trop, adv. De là, adv.*

not come to-day. — I know nobody in this neighbour-  
*voisi-*

hood. — I knew your sister again as soon as I saw her.  
*nage, m.*

— Though you should take three dozen of them I  
*Quand, c. douzaine, f.*

could not abate a farthing. — The wind was so great  
*liard, m. vent, m.*

that it has thrown down one or two trees in our gar-  
den.

# **CRAINdre, TO FEAR, TO BE FEARED.**

## **INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Craindre*, to fear.  
Part. act. *Craignant*, fearing.  
Part. pass. *Craint*, feared.

## **INDICATIVE MOOD.**

Present.  
Sing. *Crains*, *crains*, *craint*, I fear, or am afraid.  
Plur. *Craignons*, *craignez*, *craignent*.

## **Imperfect.**

Sing. *Craignais*, *craignais*, *craignoit*, I did fear, or was  
Plur. *Craignions*, *craigniez*, *craignoient*, afraid.

## **Preterite.**

## Præterite.

Sing. *Craignis, craignis, craignit*, I feared.Plur. *Craignimes, craignites, craignirent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Craindrai, craindrai, craindrai*, I shall or will  
Plur. *Craindrons, craindrez, craindront*. fear.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Craindrois, craindrois, craindroit*, I should, &c.Plur. *Craindriens, craindriez, craindraient*. fear.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Crains, craigne*, fear thou.Plur. *Craignons, craignez, craignent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Craigne, craignes, craigne*, that I may fear.Plur. *Craignent, craignent, craignent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Craignisse, craignisses, craignisse*, that I might  
Plur. *Craignissent, craignissent, craignissent*. fear.

## CROIRE, TO BELIEVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Croire*, to believe.Part. act. *Croyant*, believing.Part. pass. *Cru*, believed.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Crois, crois, crois*, I believe.Plur. *Croyons, croyez, croient*.

## Imperfect.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Croyois, croyais, croyais*, I did believe.Plur. *Croyions, croyiez, croyaient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Crus, crus, crus*, I believed.Plur. *Crûmes, crûtes, crurent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Croirai, croiras, croira*, I shall or will believe.Plur. *Croirons, croirez, croiront*.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Croirais, croirais, croirait*, I should, &c. believe.Plur. *Croirions, croiriez, croiraient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Crois, croie*, believe thou.Plur. *Croyons, croyez, croient*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que que que* *Croie, croies, croie*, that I may believe.Plur. *Croyons, croyez, croient*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Crusse, crusses, crût*, that I might believe.Plur. *Crussions, crussiez, crussent*.

## CROÎTRE, TO GROW,

And its compounds,

*Accroître*, to accrue,*Raccroître*, to grow again,*Décroître*, to decrease, to  
grow less,are conjugated like *CONNOÎTRE*.*CUIRE*,



**CUIRE**, TO BAKE, TO BOIL, often Englished by  
TO DO,

And its compound *Recuire*, to boil again,

**DEDUIRE**, TO DEDUCT, TO ABATE,

and **DETRUIRE**, TO DESTROY,

are conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

**DIRE**, TO SAY, TO TELL.

**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Dire*, to say.

Part. act. *Disant*, saying.

Part. pass. *Dit*, said.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

Present.

Sing. *Dis*, *dis*, *dit*, I say, or am saying.

Plur. *Disons*, *dites*, *disent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Disois*, *disois*, *disoit*, I did say, or was saying.

Plur. *Disions*, *disiez*, *disoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Dit*, *dit*, *dit*, I did say, or said.

Plur. *Dîmes*, *dîtes*, *dirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Dirai*, *diras*, *dira*, I shall or will say.

Plur. *Diront*, *diront*, *diront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Dirois*, *dirais*, *dirait*, I should, &c. say.

Plur. *Dirions*, *diriez*, *diraient*.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing. *Dis*, *dis*, say thou.

Plur. *Disons*, *dites*, *disent*.

SUB-

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Dise, dise, dise, dise* that I may say.  
 Plur. *Dissent, dissent, dissent, dissent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Dise, dise, dise, dise* that I might say.  
 Plur. *Dissent, dissent, dissent, dissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Contredire*, to contradict. *Interdire*, to interdict, to forbid.  
*Se désire*, to unsay, to retract, to retract. *Prédire*, to foretell.  
*Médire*, to slander, to speak ill. *Rédire*, to say, or tell, again.  
*Maudire*, to curse.

\* All the above compounds (*Rédire* excepted, which is conjugated like its primitive) make *issent* instead of *ites*; and *Maudire* doubles *ss* through the whole verb: ex. *Nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils maudissent, &c.*

## ECLORE, TO HATCH, TO OPEN, TO COME TO LIFE.

This verb is seldom used but in the infinitive mood, present tense, and the third persons of the following tenses.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Eclorre*, to open, to hatch, to come to life.  
 Part. pass. *Eclot*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Il eclot*.  
 Plur. *Ils eclotent*.

X

Future.

## Future.

Sing. *Il écrira.*Plur. *Ils écriront.*

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Il écrirait.*Plur. *Ils écriraient.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Qu'il écrive.*Plur. *Qu'ils écrivent.*

It is only used when speaking of oviparous animals or of flowers.

The primitive of the above verb is *clorre*, to shut, to surround, and another compound, *enclorre*, to shut, to surround, with walls, hedges, or ditches,

## E C R I R E, TO WRITE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Ecrire*, to write.Part. act. *Ecrivant*, writing.Part. pass. *Ecrit*, written.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Ecris, écris, écrit*, I write, or am writing.Plur. *Ecrivons, écrivez, écrivent.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Ecrivais, écrivais, écrivait*, I did write, or wasPlur. *Ecrivions, écriviez, écrivaient.* writing.

## Præterite.

Sing. *Ecrivis, écrivis, écrivit*, I wrote, or did write.Plur. *Ecrivîmes, écrivîtes, écrivirent.*

## Future.

## Future.

Sing. *Ecrirai, écriras, écrira*, I shall or will write.Plur. *Ecriront, écriront, écriront*.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Ecrirais, écrirais, écrirait*, I should, &c. write.Plur. *Ecriraient, écririez, écriraient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Ecris, écrive*, write thou.Plur. *Ecrivez, écrivez, écrivent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que que que*  
*Ecrive, écrives, écrive*, that I may write.Plur. *Ecrivent, écrivent, écrivent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Ecrivisse, écrivisses, écrivit*, that I might write.Plur. *Ecrivissent, écrivissent, écrivissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Décrire*, to describe.*Inscrire*, to inscribe.*Prescrire*, to prescribe.*Prescrire*, to proscribe, to outlaw.*Souscrire*, to subscribe.*Transcrire*, to transcribe.

---

**ENDUIRE**, TO DO OVER,  
is conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

---

**ETEINDRE**, TO PUT OUT,  
is conjugated like **CRAINDRE**.

---



**EXCLURE, TO EXCLUDE,**is conjugated like **CONCLURE**.Its participle passive is *exclus*.**FAIRE, TO MAKE, TO DO.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**Present. *Faire, to make.*Part. act. *Faisant, making.*Part. pass. *Fait, made.***INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**Sing. *Fais, fais, fais, I make, or am making.*Plur. *Faisons, faites, font.***Imperfect.**Sing. *Faisais, faisais, faisais, I did make, or was making.*Plur. *Faisions, faisiez, faisaient.***Preterite.**Sing. *Fis, fis, fis, I made, or did make.*Plur. *Fîmes, fîtes, firent.***Future.**Sing. *Ferai, feras, fera, I shall or will make.*Plur. *Ferons, ferez, feront.***Conditional present.**Sing. *Ferais, ferais, ferais, I should, &c. make.*Plur. *Ferions, feriez, feraient.***IMPERATIVE MOOD.**Sing. *Fais, fais, fais, make.*Plur. *Faites, faites, faites.*

SUB.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Fasse, fasses, fasse*, that I may make.  
 Plur. *Fassions, fassiez, fassent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Fisse, fissiez, fissent*, that I might make.  
 Plur. *Fissions, fissions, fissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Contrefaire*, to counterfeit, *Refaire*, to do, or make  
 to mimic, up, again.  
*Désfaire*, to undo. *Redésfaire*, to undo again.  
*Se désfaire*, to get rid of, *Satisfaire*, to satisfy.  
 to part with. *Sursaire*, to exact, to ask  
 too much.

**FEINDRE**, TO FEIGN, TO DISSEMBLE,  
 TO PRETEND,  
 is conjugated like **CRAINDRE**.

**FRIRE**, TO FRY.

This verb is more elegantly used in its present infinitive with the verb *faire* conjugated: ex.

*Faites frire ce poisson*, Fry that fish.

Its participle passive is *frit*, fried.

**INDUIRE**, TO INDUCE,  
**INSTRUIRE**, TO INSTRUCT,  
 and **INTRODUIRE**, TO INTRODUCE,  
 are conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

**TO JOIN.**

And its compound, *Enjoindre*, to enjoin,  
are conjugated like **GRAINDRE**.

**TO READ.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

*lire*, to read.  
SING. *lis*, *lis*, *lis*, I read, or am reading.  
PLUR. *lisez*, *lisez*, *lisez*, you read.  
SING. *lis*, *lis*, *lis*, I read, or am reading.  
PLUR. *lisez*, *lisez*, *lisez*, you read.

**PRESENT.**  
SING. *lis*, *lis*, *lis*, I read, or am reading.  
PLUR. *lisez*, *lisez*, *lisez*, you read.

**IMPERFECT.**  
SING. *lisais*, *lisais*, *lisais*, I was reading.  
PLUR. *lisiez*, *lisiez*, *lisiez*, you were reading.

**PAST.**  
SING. *lis*, *lis*, *lis*, I did read, or read.  
PLUR. *lisez*, *lisez*, *lisez*, you did read, or read.

**CONDITIONAL PRESENT.**  
SING. *liserais*, *liserais*, *liserais*, I should, would, &c. read.  
PLUR. *liseriez*, *liseriez*, *liseriez*, you should, would, &c. read.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**  
SING. *lis*, *lis*, *lis*, I read, or am reading.  
PLUR. *lisez*, *lisez*, *lisez*, you read.

**CONDITIONAL PRESENT.**  
SING. *liserais*, *liserais*, *liserais*, I should, would, &c. read.  
PLUR. *liseriez*, *liseriez*, *liseriez*, you should, would, &c. read.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**  
SING. *lis*, *lis*, *lis*, I read, or am reading.  
PLUR. *lisez*, *lisez*, *lisez*, you read.

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

Sing. *Lif, a lif, lif, that I may read.*  
Plur. *Lif, a lif, lif, that I may read.*

Sing. *Lif, a lif, lif, that I might read.*  
Plur. *Lif, a lif, lif, that I might read.*

Its compounds are,  
*Elly, to do. Aft, to read again.*

**UTTER, TO URINE.**

And its compound *Relure, to glitter,*  
Are conjugated as **CONDUIRE**; but take no *s* at the  
end of their principal passive; as *Lis, lained.*

**METTER, TO PUT.**

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Mett, to put.*  
Part. act. *Mettant, putting.*

**PRESENT MOOD.**

Sing. *Mett, met, I put, or am putting.*  
Plur. *Mett, mett, we put, or are putting.*  
Sing. *Mettis, mettis, mettis, I did put, or was put-*  
Plur. *Mettions, mettions, mettions, ting.*

Sing. *Mett, mett, I put, or put.*  
Plur. *Mett, mett, we put, or put.*

Sing. *Mett, mett, I shall put.*  
Plur. *Mett, mett, we shall put.*

Conditional



## Conditional present.

Sing. *Mettrois, mettrois, mettrois*, I should, would,  
 Plur. *Mettrions, mettriez, mettroient*. *See*, put.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Mets, mets, mets*, put thou.  
 Plur. *Mettons, mettez, mettent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Mette, mette, mette*, that I may put.  
 Plur. *Mettons, mettiez, mettent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Misses, misses, miss*, that I might put.  
 Plur. *Missions, missiez, missent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Admettre</i> , to admit.	<i>Permettre</i> , to permit.
<i>Commettre</i> , to commit.	<i>Promettre</i> , to promise.*
<i>Compromettre</i> , to compromise.	<i>Rendre</i> , to deliver up, to put back again, to collect, to put off.
<i>Démettre</i> , to turn out, to remove.	<i>Soumettre</i> , to submit.
<i>Se démettre de</i> , to resign.	<i>Transmettre</i> , to transmit.
<i>Omettre</i> , to omit.	

\* The participle of this verb (promising), when used adjectively, and expressing the mental qualities of somebody, is rendered in French by *qui promet*, or *prometteur*, *beaucoup*, or *dont il y a*, or *avait*, *beaucoup à espérer*: ex.

*Majeur A. étoit un officier qui promettoit beaucoup, or dont il y avoit beaucoup à espérer.* Major A. was a very promising officer.

## MOUDRE, TO GRIND.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Moudre*, to grind.  
 Part. act. *Moulu*, grinding.  
 Part. pass. *Moulu*, ground.

INDI-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*, I grind, or am grinding.  
 Plur. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*.

Sing. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*, I did grind, or was grinding.  
 Plur. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*, I ground, or did grind.  
 Plur. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*.

## Future.

Sing. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*, I shall or will grind.  
 Plur. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*, I should, would, or might grind.  
 Plur. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*, grind thou.

Plur. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Now, you may see the difference between the indicative and subjunctive moods.  
 Sing. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*, that I may grind.  
 Plur. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*.

Sing. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*, that I might grind.  
 Plur. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*.

The compound of this verb are,  
*Adhāt, to what. Adhāt, to grind again.*

## EXERCISES ON THE VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Now, you may see the difference between the indicative and subjunctive moods.  
 Sing. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*, that I may grind.  
 Plur. *Adhāt, aadhāt, aadhāt*.

will

will speak to her to <sup>oblige</sup> you, but I know she does  
*pour, p.*

not fear me. — Why do you not believe me? — They  
(are afraid) of being exposed to some dangers. — We  
*être, v.*

would not believe him though he should tell the truth. —  
*quand, c. vérité, f.*

These flowers would grow much better if you watered  
*fleur, f. arroser, v.*

them oftener. — Put out the candle, and do not pretend

to sleep. — Were I in town, I would tell them all that  
*de en, p.*

I know (about it.) — Say nothing to her, believe me.  
*en, pro. ne rien*

— I will tell it to you to-morrow. — I esteem your  
*estimer, v.*

daughter much, because she told me sincerely that she

would do neither. — They, who say all they know, will

readily say what they do not know. — Tell the  
*volentiers, adv.*

truth with modesty: they, who do not love it, will always

respect and fear it. — If I see your father, shall I tell him

you are afraid of not succeeding? — Do you think me

capable of forgetting my friends so soon? — You always  
*oublier, v.*

contradict me when I speak. — It is prudent and hu-

maie not to speak ill of any body; but it is a meanness  
*basseſſe, f.*

to speak ill of your benefactors. — Will you tell me,  
*bienfaiteur, m.*

after this, that I am not your friend? — I hope she  
*après, p. que, c.*

will not tell them what happened to me yesterday. —

I do not like Miss D. because she speaks ill of every  
*parceque, c.*

body. — Her father has transmitted her all his fortune,

but not his virtues. — Does Mr. R. write to you

(now and then) from Paris? — Do you know his  
*de tems en tems, adv.*

direction? — Would you not write to him if you knew  
*adresse, f.*

it? — We were writing while they slept. — If  
*pendant que, c.*

your brother come here, detain him, and tell him that

I have something to shew him. — The last time they  
*à faire voir.*

wrote to him, they desired him to send them the invoice  
*prier, v. de facture, f.*

of the goods, and he has still omitted it in this  
*encore, adv.*

letter. — What are you doing now? — I am ma-  
*maintenant, adv.*

king a cap for your sister. — Do not do that, I will do

it myself. — I would do it with all my heart if I could.  
*de*

— What



— What would you have done, if you had been in  
*si, c. à, p.*

my place? — Why do you not try that? — The first

time you come to see me, I will show you some  
*fais, f. (by the fut.)*

flowers in my garden which will surprise you.  
*surprendre, v.*

Silk - worms generally hatch at the beginning of the  
*Seie, f. ver, m.*

spring. — These rose-trees grow perceptibly,  
*printent, m. refer, m. à vue d'œil, adv.*

and those tulips would soon open, if it were a little  
*faisoit, v.*

warmer. — Though they should deduct ten per  
*chand, adj. Quand, c.*

cent, they would get still enough. — I  
*gagner, v. encore, adv.*

never buy any thing at Mr. B's; for, he always  
*acheter, v. car, c.*

asks too much for his goods. — I will send my  
*merchandise, f.*

gown to-morrow, and do it up again immediately. —  
*sur le champ, adv.*

The first time you mimic any one, I will punish  
*(by the fut.)*

you severely. — I would introduce your sister to Mrs. F.

if I knew her. — She would consent to that, if you

would persuade her to come here. — They were playing

while you instructed them. — You really — join  
*croient, adv.*

what

what is useful to what is agreeable. — Did not our sol-

diers join dexterity to valour? — If you do not take  
*adresse, f. prendre, v.*

great care of your flowers, the frost will destroy them.  
*gelée, f.*

— Mr. S. says he will get rid of his horse at the

beginning of next month. — You would put out  
*commencement, m.*

the fire, if, &c. — Undo that, and make it up again

before dinner. — Your daughter joins to the love of  
*avant, p.*

study the desire of surpassing her companions. — She  
*compagne, f.*

reads the History of England every day from three

o'clock to five. — I will read your letter as soon  
*heure, f. jusqu'à, p.*

as I am dressed. — The inhabitants of W —  
(by the fut.) *habillé, p. p.*

have elected Mr. X. for their representative in parlia-  
*représentant, m.*

ment. — I was reading Marmontel's Tales when you  
*Conte, m.*

came in. — Mr. R. wrote to me, some time ago, that,  
*entrer, v.*

when he was in London, the Earl of E — told  
*à Comte, m.*

him we should soon see a great change in the  
*changement, m.*

ministry. — He often writes to me, and always con-  
*ministère, m.*

cludes his letters thus: (Be so kind as to) send me some  
*Avoir la bonté de*

news, whatever they be. — Put these books in their  
 places again. — I believe he did it through spite. —  
*par, p. dépit, m.*

Shall I put another trimming to your gown? — I read  
*garniture, f.*

last year a very good book, but I cannot remember the  
 author's name. — What grammar do you read? —

Whatever merit a master has, he cannot succeed in  
*à, p.*  
 teaching young people if he do not join practice to

theory. — I would put all your china in that closet  
*porcelaine, f. cabinet, m.*

if I had the key of it. — You could not do it in ten  
 days if I did not help you. — We would not per-  
*aider, v.*

mit him to go out, though they would. — Why do not  
*do quand, c.*

you abstain from wine, since it hurts you? — He  
*puisque, c. faire mal.*

promised to pay me the tenth of this month, but he has  
 now put me off to the third of December. — He sub-

mitted to it with the greatest patience. — You promise  
 enough, but you seldom keep your word. — Mr.  
*rarement, adv. tenir, v.*

D. is a very promising young man.—It is he who  
*Co, pro.*

told me, that, before the invention of water and wind

mills, the ancients used to grind the corn in mor-  
*de grain, m. mor-*

tars. — Will they not admit Mr. Z. in their society? —  
*hier, m.*

The English fleets have performed actions worthy to  
*faire, v.*

be transmitted to posterity. — Your brother promises

me every day to amend, but, &c. — Were I their  
*de se corriger, v.*

master I would not permit them to go out to-day. — I  
*de.*

was writing to you when your servant brought me your  
 letter.

## NAÎTRE, TO BE BORN, TO RISE.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Naître*, to be born.  
 Part. act. *Naissant*, being born, rising.  
 Part. pass. *Né*, been born.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.  
 Sing. *Nais*, *nais*, *nais*, I am born.  
 Plur. *Naissent*, *naissent*, *naissent*.

### Imperfect.

Sing. *Naissais*, *naissais*, *naissais*, I was born.  
 Plur. *Naissions*, *naissions*, *naissions*.



## Preterite.

Sing. *Naquis, naquis, naquit*, I was born.Plur. *Naquimes, naquites, naquirent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Naitrai, naitras, naitra*, I shall or will be born.Plur. *Naitrons, naitrez, naitront*.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Naitrois, naitrois, naitroit*, I should, &c. bePlur. *Naitrions, naitriez, naitroient*. born.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Nais, naisse*, be thou born.Plur. *Naissions, naissez, naissent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que naisse, que naissez, que naisse*, that I may be born.Plur. *Naissions, naissez, naissent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Naquisse, naquisses, naquît*, that I might bePlur. *Naquissions, naquissiez, naquissent*. born.

The compound of this verb is,

*Renaitre*, to be born again, to revive.

---

*NUIRE*, TO HURT,is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*, but makes, in its participle passive, *nui*.

---

*OINDRE*, TO ANOINT.This verb is seldom used except in speaking of sacred ceremonies wherein oil is made use of. It is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.*PAIRE*,

**P A I T R E**, TO FEED, TO GRAZE,  
**P A R O I T R E**, TO APPEAR, TO SEEM,

and its compounds,

*Compareître*, to appear, to *Disparaître*, to disappear,  
 make one's evidence,

are conjugated like **CONNOÎTRE**.

**P E I N D R E**, TO PAINT, TO DRAW,  
**P L A I N D R E**, TO PITY,

and *Se plaindre*, to complain,

are conjugated like **CRAINDRE**.

**P L A I R E**, TO PLEASE,

**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Plaire*, to please.

Part. act. *Plaisant*, pleasing.

Part. pass. *Plu*, pleased.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

Present.

Sing. *Plais, plains, plaît*, I please.

Plur. *Plaisons, plaîsez, plaisent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Plaisois, plaisois, plaisoit*, I did please, or was

Plur. *Plaisions, plaîsiez, plaisoient*, pleasing.

Preterite.

Sing. *Plus, plus, plut*, I pleased, or did please.

Plur. *Plûmes, plûtes, plurent*.

Future.

Sing. *Plairai, plairai, plaira*, I shall or will please.

Plur. *Plairons, plairez, plairont*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Plairois, plairois, plairoit*, I should, would, &c.

Plur. *Plairaient, plairaient, plairaient*, please.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Plais, plaise, please thou.*  
 Plur. *Plaisons, plaisez, please.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que*  
*Plaise, plaies, please, that I may please.*  
 Plur. *Plaisions, plaidez, please.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Plusse, plusses, plût, that I might please.*  
 Plur. *Plussions, plussiez, plussent.*

The compounds of this verb are,  
*Complaire, to humour. Déplaire, to displease.*

## PRENDRE, TO TAKE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Prendre, to take.*Part. act. *Prenant, taking.*Part. pass. *Pris, taken.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Prends, prends, prend, I take, or am taking.*Plur. *Prenons, prenez, prennent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Prenois, prenois, prenoit, I did take, or was ta-*Plur. *Prenions, preniez, prenoient.*

king.

Preterite.

Sing. *Pris, pris, prit, I took, or did take.*Plur. *Primes, prîtes, prirent.*

Future.

Sing. *Prendrai, prendras, prendra, I shall or will take.*Plur. *Prendrons, prendrez, prendront.*

Conditional present.

Sing. *Prendrais, prendrais, prendrait, I should, would,*Plur. *Prendrions, prendriez, prendraient.*

&amp;c. take.

IMPE-

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Prends, prene, take thou.*Plur. *Prenons, prenez, prennent.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que que que Prenne, prenes, prene, that I may take.*Plur. *Prenions, prenez, prennent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Prisse, prisses, prit, that I might take.*Plur. *Prissions, prissiez, prissent.*

The compounds of this verb are,

*Apprendre, to learn. Entreprendre, to undertake.**des nouvelles, to hear of. Méprendre, to mistake, to be deceived.**Comprendre, to apprehend, to understand, to include. Reprendre, to take again, to chide, to rebuke.**Surprendre, to surprise.*

**PRODUIRE, TO PRODUCE,**  
**REDUIRE, TO REDUCE, TO BRING TO,**  
 are conjugated like **CONDUIRE.**

**RESTREINDRE, TO RESTRAIN,**  
 is conjugated like **CRINDRE.**

**RIRE, TO LAUGH.**

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Rire, to laugh.*Part. act. *Riant, laughing.*Part. pass. *Ri, laughed.*

INDI-



INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Ris, ris, rit*, I laugh, or am laughing.

Plur. *Rions, riez, rient*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Riais, riais, riait*, I laughed, or was laughing.

Plur. *Riaient, riaient, riaient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Ris, ris, rit*, I laughed, or did laugh.

Plur. *Rimes, rites, rient*.

Future.

Sing. *Rirai, riras, rira*, I shall or will laugh.

Plur. *Riront, riront, riront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Rirois, rirois, riroit*, I should, could, &c. laugh.

Plur. *Ririons, ririez, riroient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Ris, ris, rit*, laugh thou.

Plur. *Rions, riez, rient*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Ris, ris, rit*, that I may laugh.

Plur. *Rions, riez, rient*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Ris, ris, rit*, that I might laugh.

Plur. *Rissent, rissent, rissent*.

The compound of this verb is,

*Savoir*, to smile.

---

**S E D U I R E**, TO SEDUCE,

is conjugated as **C O N D U I R E**.

**S U P P I R E**,

**SUFFIRE**, TO SUFFICE, TO BE SUFFICIENT,  
is conjugated like **CONFIRE**, but its participle passive  
is *suffi.*

**SUIVRE**, TO FOLLOW.

**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Suivre*, to follow.  
Part. act. *Suivant*, following.  
Part. pass. *Suivi*, followed.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

Present.

Sing. *Suis*, *suis*, *suit*, I follow, or am following.  
Plur. *Suivons*, *suivent*, *suivent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Suivais*, *suivais*, *suivait*, I did follow, or was following.  
Plur. *Suivions*, *suiviez*, *suivaient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Suivis*, *suivis*, *suivit*, I followed, or did follow.  
Plur. *Suivîmes*, *suivîtes*, *suivirent*.

Future.

Sing. *Suivrai*, *suivras*, *suivra*, I shall or will follow.  
Plur. *Suivrons*, *suivrez*, *suivront*.

Conditional present.

Sing. *Suivrais*, *suivrais*, *suivrait*, I should, &c. follow.  
Plur. *Suivrions*, *suivriez*, *suivraient*.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing. *Suis*, *suive*, follow thou.

Plur. *Suivons*, *suivez*, *suivent*.

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

Present.

Sing. *Que* *que* *que* *Suive*, that I may follow.  
Plur. *Suivions*, *suiviez*, *suivent*.

Imper-

THE IMPERFECT OF *SUIVRE*  
 Sing. *Suis*, *suis*, *suis*, that I might follow.  
 Plur. *Suivons*, *suvissans*, *suvissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,  
*S'ensuire*, to follow from. *Poursuire*, to pursue.

*Se TAIRE*, TO HOLD ONE'S TONGUE,  
 is conjugated as *PLAIRE*.

*TEINDRE*, TO DIE,  
 is conjugated like *CRAINDRE*.

*TRADUIRE*, TO TRANSLATE,  
 is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

*TRAIRE*, TO MILK.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Trais*, to milk.

Part. act. *Traissant*, milking.

Part. pass. *Trait*, milked.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Trais*, *trais*, *trais*, I milk, or am milking.

Plur. *Trayons*, *trayons*, *trayons*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Traisais*, *trayais*, *trayais*, I did milk, or was

Plur. *Trayions*, *trayions*, *trayions*. milking.

Preterite wanting.

Future.

Sing. *Trairai*, *trairas*, *traira*, I shall or will milk.

Plur. *Trairont*, *trairont*, *trairont*.

Condi-

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Trairais, traivais, traivait, I should, &c. milk.*  
 Plur. *Trairions, traivions, traivaient.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Trais, traie, milk thou.*  
 Plur. *Troyez, trayez, traient.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Traies, traies, traies, that I may milk.*  
 Plur. *Traiyons, trayiez, traient.*

Imperfect is wanting.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Abstraire, to abstract. Rentrainer, to finedraw.*

*Distrainre, to distract. Soustraire, to subtract.*

*Extraire, to extract.*

**VAINCRE, TO VANQUISH, TO CONQUER.**

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vaincre, to conquer.*  
 Part. act. *Vainquant, conquering.*  
 Part. pass. *Vaincu, conquered.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Vaincs, vaincs, vainc, I conquer.*  
 Plur. *Vainquons, vainquez, vainquent.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Vainquais, vainquais, vainquait, I did conquer.*  
 Plur. *Vainquions, vainquiez, vainquaient.*

## Presente.

Sing. *Vainquis, vainquis, vainquit, I conquered.*  
 Plur. *Vainquimes, vainquistes, vainquirent.*

\* The singular is very little used.

Future.



## Future.

Sing. *Vaincras, vaincras, vaincras*, I shall or will con-  
 Plur. *Vaincront, vaincront, vaincront.* quer.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Vaincrois, vaincrois, vaincrois*, I should, &c.  
 Plur. *Vaincraient, vaincraient, vaincraient.* conquer.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vaincs, vaincs, vaincs*, conquer thou.  
 Plur. *Vainquons, vainquons, vainquons.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Vainque, vainque, vainque*, that I may con-  
 Plur. *Vainquions, vainquions, vainquions.* quer.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Vainquisse, vainquisse, vainquisse*, that I might  
 Plur. *Vainquissions, vainquissions, vainquissions.* conquer.

The compound of this verb is,  
*Convaincre*, to convince.

## V I V R E, TO LIVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vivre, to live.*

Part. act. *Vivant, living.*

Part. pass. *Vécu, lived.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Vis, vis, vis*, I live, or am living.

Plur. *Vivons, vivons, vivons.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Vivais, vivais, vivais*, I did live, or was living.

Plur. *Vivions, vivions, vivions.*

Preterite.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Vécus, vécus, vécut*, I lived, or did live.Plur. *Vécûmes, vécutés, vécurant*.

## Future.

Sing. *Vivrai, vivras, vivra*, I shall or will live.Plur. *Vivrons, vivez, vivront*.

## Conditional present.

Sing. *Vivrois, vivrais, vivrait*, I should, would, &c.Plur. *Vivrions, vivriez, vivroient*. live.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vis, vive*, live thou.Plur. *Vivons, vivez, vivent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que vive, vives, vive*, that I may live.Plur. *Vivions, viviez, vivent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Vécusse, vécussis, vécut*, that I might live.Plur. *Vécussions, vécussiez, vécussent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Revivre*, to revive. *Survivre*, to outlive.EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS  
AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

My brother was born in Paris on the eighth of February, one thousand seven hundred eighty-one. — The

same men, who seem not to fear death when they

*lorsque*, adv.

are in good health, often dread <sup>redouter, v.</sup> it when they are

sick. — What does your sister complain of? — The

swallows generally disappear towards the end of au-  
*hirondelle, f.* <sup>vers, p.</sup> *au-*

turnn. — You do not seem to pay any attention to  
*somme, f.* <sup>faire, v.</sup>

what I say to you. — This man paints very well, I as-  
*af-*

sure you. — Why would you hurt him, he never  
*juror, v.*

did you any harm? — I should pity and succour him  
*faire, v.* <sup>mal, m.</sup>

if it were not his fault. — You shall disappear as  
*ce, pro.*

soon as you have executed my orders. — The last  
(by the fut.)

time I saw your sister she appeared to me thoughtful and  
*pensif, adj.*

melancholy. — She is a lady that pleases every body.  
*mélancholique, adj.*

— She appears quite young: how old is she? — Does

she not learn drawing? — Your brother has not inclu-  
*dessein, m.*

ded his tailor's bill in the account which he  
*tailleur, m. mémoire, m.*

has given me. — I see you do not complain of him  
*rendre, v.*

without a cause. — I really am surprised (at it,) but  
*en, pro.*

he always smiles at every thing I tell him. — As sur-

prising

prising as this seems to you, yet *cependant*, adv. it is true. —

If my brother do not come this week, as he promised me, if you will, we will go and see him in the coun-

try. — Does not Mrs. H. appear much concerned at her daughter's death? — When you *affligé*, p.p. *de* see (by the fut.)

Mrs. B. I am certain she will please you. — Did you never see her? — The children, who shall be (by the fut.)

born from this happy marriage, will be the delight *délices*, f.pl. of their father and mother. — She joins to the qualities of

the body those of the mind. — Take some pears and carry them to your brother. — Every time I see him, I take him

for a foreigner. — My sister and I learn French, and un- *étranger*, m.

derstand very well all that (is said) to us in that lan- *on dit*

guage. — Though you should learn all the rules, they *Quand*, c.

would not (be sufficient) without practice. — I did not *suffire*, v.

understand what you said. — Do not undertake to un- *de dé-*

deceive her; believe me, you will lose your time. — *tromper*, v.



Virtue procures and preserves friendship, but vice  
*obtenir, v.      conserver, v.      vice, m.*

produces hatred and quarrels. — Though you should  
*haine, f.      querelle, f.*

undertake to prove the contrary, she would not believe  
*de*

you. — Why did you not take the same road as we?

— He (is not pleased) in his situation, he now sees all  
*que*  
*se plaire, v.*

the dangers of it. — He has suffered much, and none

of his friends has pitied him. — The idea of his  
*idée, f.*

misfortunes pursues him every where. — When did  
*malheur, m.      partout, adv.*

you hear of him? — Captain D. told my father that he

had seen him and spoken to him at Madras. — We of-

ten mistake when we judge of others by appear-  
*se méprendre, v.      juger, v.*

ances, and often a person displeases us by the not very  
*même, adj.*

quality by which another has pleased us. — The people  
*gens, m.*

who often seem the most zealous are not always the most  
*zélé, adj.*

constant. — Leave me that book a little longer, do not  
*Laisser, v.*

take it again. — That apple-tree produces no fruit. —  
*pommier, m.*

We were reduced to the last extremity when they re-

took

took our ship. — Go and speak to Mr. —; but,  
sur, p.  
 above all, do not laugh. — Would you not laugh if you

were in my place? — We laughed much yesterday at the  
a

play. — She was an agreeable lady, she was si bol ever  
tonjours, adv.  
 smiling when any body had the honour of speaking to

her. — He seduced her by his fine promises. — What-

ever he may undertake, he never will succeed, he is

too much addicted to the pleasures of this world. —  
adonné, p. p.

Young people gens, m. & f. tell what they do, old people what  
vieillard, m.

they have done, and fools what they intend to  
fol, m. se proposer, v.

do. — We learn much more easily the  
facilement, adv.

things which we understand than those which we do not.

— If we go together to my brother's, will you be  
chez, p.

able to follow us? — I will follow you step by step. —  
pas à pas, adv.

Why do you follow me as you do? — You may set  
comme

out when you please, we will follow you. — Hold your

tongue, you do not know what you say. — What books

do you translate? — My master says I shall soon translate Marmontel's works. — We should have conquered them if we had fought. — They were quite transported with joy when they heard of the happy news of *de, p.*

the peace. — As long as her father and mother *Tant que, adv.*

live, they never will consent to her marriage (by the fut.)

with Mr. R. — You will not live long if you drink so

much. — She lived about four years after her husband's death. — *environ, p. après, p.*

George III. the eldest son of Frederick, *ainé, adj.*

prince of Wales, was born on the fourth of June, *Galles, f.*

1738, and was proclaimed king of Great Britain on the *proclamer, v.*

twenty-sixth of October, 1760. — Let a man live in any

country whatever, he is sure to be well respected and *de*

treated every where if his behaviour and manners be *mœurs, f. pl.*

ruled by the principles of a sound policy and the *régle, v. politiques, f.*

laws of the country he lives in.

## OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Verbs which relate to no person or thing, and which, as has been before observed, are only conjugated in the third person singular, are called impersonal verbs: they generally are preceded by one of the following pronouns, *il* or *on*: of this number are,

*Il tonne,* It thunders.  
*Il pleut,* It rains.  
*On dit,* People say, or it is said, &c.

To which may be added several other verbs, which become impersonal when employed in the same manner: ex.

*Il vous convient d'être mo-* It becomes you to be mo-  
*deste,* dest.  
*Il fait beau, froid, &c.* It is fine, cold, &c.  
*Il semble,* It seems.  
*Il s'ensuit que,* It follows that.  
*Il vaut mieux,* It is better, &c.

These verbs, like others, whether regular or irregular, have their different tenses, and are conjugated in the same manner as the personal verbs from which they are derived. The learner having gone through the other conjugations, the verbs of this class may the more easily be dispensed with. It will only be necessary to select one that is not derived, and shew the manner of conjugating it, only premising, that the compound tenses are formed, like others, by joining the participle passive to one of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have.

## CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Pluvoir*, to rain.

Part. act. *Pluvant*, raining.

Part. pass. *Plu*, rained.

INDI-



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Affirmatively.

Present. *Il pleut*, it rains, it does rain.

## Negatively.

Present. *Il ne pleut pas*, it does not rain.

## Interrogatively.

*Pleut-il?* does it rain?*Ne pleut-il pas?* does it not rain?Imperfect. *Il pleuvait*, it rained, or it was raining.Preterite. *Il plut*, it rained.Future. *Il pleuvra*, it shall or will rain.Cond. pres. *Il pleuvrait*, it would, should, &c. rain.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il pleuve*, that it may rain.Imperfect. *Qu'il plût*, that it might rain.

The following being of the first conjugation, I shall only give the third person, present tense, of the indicative mood; the learner may easily find out the rest.

*Il arrive*, it happens; from *arriver*, to happen.*Il bruine*, it drizzles; *bruiner*, to drizzle.*Il éclaire*, it lightens; *éclairer*, to lighten.*Il gèle*, it freezes; *geler*, to freeze.*Il grêle*, it hails; *grêler*, to hail.*Il importe*, it matters; *importer*.*Il importe*, it concerns;*Il neige*, it snows; *neiger*, to snow.*Il tonne*, it thunders; *tonner*, to thunder.

The verb *AVOIR*, to have, conjugated impersonally with *y*, the adverb of place.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Y avoir*, there be.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Affirmatively.

Present. *Il y a*, there is, there are.

\* *There is*, immediately followed by the negation *no* and a participle active, must be rendered by *on ne peut pas*, or *on ne saurait*: ex.

*On ne peut pas, or on ne saurait, sortir aujourd'hui à cause de la pluie*, *There is no going out to-day because of the rain: that is, one cannot, &c.*

## Negatively.

## Negatively.

Present. *Il n'y a pas*, there is not, there are not.

## Interrogatively.

*Y a-t-il ?* is there ? are there ?

Imperfect. *Il y avoit*, there was, there were.

Preterite. *Il y eut*, there was, there were.

Future. *Il y aura*, there shall or will be.

Cond. pres. *Il y auroit*, there should, would, &c. be.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Qu'il y ait*, let there be.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il y ait*, that there may be.

Imperfect. *Qu'il y eût*, that there might be.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

*Il y a eu*, there has, or have, been.

*Il y avoit eu*, there had been.

*Il y eut eu*, there had been.

*Il y aura eu*, there shall or will have been.

*Il y auroit eu*, there should, &c. have been.

*Qu'il y ait eu*, that there may have been.

*Qu'il y eût eu*, that there might have been.

This verb *y a*, &c. when used to denote a quantity of time, is sometimes rendered in English by *it is*, *it was*, &c. When the English preposition *since* is rendered (in French) by *que*: ex.

*Cambien y a-t-il que votre père est arrivé ?* How long is it since your father arrived ?

But, in all cases where the English phrase can be rendered negatively, *que* must be accompanied by the negation *ne*: ex.

*Il y a longtemps que je ne vous ai vu,* It is a long while since I saw you, or I have not seen you this long time.

It often happens that the verb *there is*, or *it is*, &c. is understood; in this case, one of the words *ago*, *these*, or *for these*, is expressed as its substitute: ex.

Il y a trois mois que j'étois en France, or j'étais en France il y a trois mois, I was in France three months ago.

Il y a quatre ans que mon frère est mort, or mon frère est mort il y a quatre ans, My brother has been dead these four years.

Il y a six mois que mon père est malade, My father has been ill these six months.

It also happens, that neither the verbs, nor any of the words *ago*, *these*, &c. are expressed in the sentence: ex.

Il y a à-présent neuf ans que ma tante demeure dans ce voisinage, My aunt has now lived nine years in this neighbourhood.

Il y avoit deux ans que ma sœur étoit en France quand j'y allai, My sister had been two years in France when I went there.

N'y avoit-il pas six mois qu'elle demeurait avec nous quand elle mourut? Had she not lived six months with us when she died?

Il n'y a pas plus d'une heure que nous pêchons ici, We have not been above an hour fishing here.

Il y aura six ans à Noël que votre frère est chez M. O., Your brother will have been at Mr. O.'s six years at Christmas.

N'y aura-t-il pas un an ou deux mois d'août prochain que votre sœur est à Paris? Will not your sister have been a year at Paris next August?

N. B. The learner cannot pay too great attention to the construction of the above sentences.

The verb *être*, to be, becomes impersonal, when followed by a *substantive*, or one of the pronouns *personal*,

From these two instances it may be observed, that, if the verb *il y a* &c. begin the sentence, the word *you* must immediately follow the noun of number; but, if it is transitive, *you* must be omitted. The first construction is to be preferred. The learner must, at the same time, observe, that in the above sentences the verb, which, in English, is in the preterite imperfect, is rendered in French by the present of the indicative, and when in the preterite perfect, by the imperfect of the same mood.

*possessive, or demonstrative, and is always conjugated with the pronoun demonstrative ce, whether speaking of persons or things: ex.*

*C'est la loi qui l'ordonne, It is the law that prescribes it.*

*C'est moi qui l'ai fait, It is I who have done it.*

*C'est une chose triste, It is a sad thing.*

*C'est une facheuse extrémité, It is a dreadful extremity.*

*C'est, or ce sont, eux qui l'ont fait, It is they who have done it.*

*l'ont fait,*

From these two last instances, it appears, that *it is*, &c. followed by a noun or pronoun of the third person plural, may be rendered in French two ways; but when *it is*, &c. is used in asking a question, it is always put in the singular, though the noun or pronoun be in the plural number: ex.

*Est-ce eux qui l'ont fait? Is it they who have done it?*

*He, she, they*, immediately followed by *who, whom, or that*, and *such as*, whether separated in English or not, but implying people in general, are often made into French by the impersonal *c'est*, with an infinitive followed by *que de* before a second infinitive: ex.

*C'est être fou que de perdre le tems à ces bagatelles, He is a fool who loses his time in those trifles.*

*C'est être heureux que d'être content de son sort, Such as are satisfied with their lot are happy.*

But, if the sentence be negative, *c'est ne pas* must be used, and the above rule followed for the rest of the sentence: ex.

*C'est ne pas connoître la cour que de se fier aux promesses qu'on y fait, He does not know the court who relies on the promises made there.*

*C'est ne pas goûter les plaisirs de l'amitié que de n'aimer personne, Such as love nobody do not enjoy the pleasures of friendship.*

This verb, *être*, to be, becomes also impersonal every time it is followed by a noun adjective used in a vague indeterminate sense, and relates to no particular object; in which case, the verb is generally preceded by the pronoun *il*: ex.



*Il est étonnant que, &c.* It is surprising, &c.  
*Il est nécessaire, &c.* It is necessary, &c.  
*Il est dangereux de, &c.* It is dangerous, &c.  
*Il est extraordinaire, &c.* It is extraordinary, &c.

When the English verb *to be* is used to denote the state of the weather, it must be rendered by the third person singular of the verb *faire*, to make or do:

*Il fait beau tems,* It is fine weather.

*Il fait chaud,* It is hot.

*Il ne fait pas chaud,* It is not hot.

*Fait-il chaud?* Is it hot?

*Ne fait-il pas chaud? &c.* Is it not hot? &c.

See the verb *FAIRE*.

The learner must observe, that the following verb is absolutely impersonal throughout all its tenses, and that nothing is more disagreeable than to hear young people say *je faut, vous faut, on faut, &c.* to prevent which, as much as possible, some examples are here set down.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively. Singular.

Present. *Falloir*, to be needful, requisite, necessary.

Part. pass. *Fallu*, been needful.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively. Singular.

Present. *Il faut que je fasse*, I must do.

*Il faut que tu fasses*, thou must do.

*Il faut qu'il fasse*, he must do.

*Il faut qu'elle fasse*, she must do.

Plural

*Il faut que nous fassions*, we must do.

*Il faut que vous fassiez*, you must do.

*Il faut qu'ils, or elles, fassent*, they must do.

Negatively.

*Il ne faut pas que je fasse*, I must not do.

*Il ne faut pas que vous fassiez*, you must not do, &c.

Interrogatively.

## Interrogatively.

*Faut-il que je fasse?* must I do?

*Faut-il que vous fassiez?* must you do?

*Ne faut-il pas que je fasse?* must I not do?

*Ne faut-il pas que vous fassiez?* must you not do?

Imperfect. *Il fallloit qu'il écrivit*, it was necessary, &c.  
for him to write.

Preterite. *Il fallut qu'il partit*, he was obliged to set out.

Future. *Il faudra qu'il vienne*, he must come, he shall  
be obliged to come.

Cond. pre. *Il faudroit que j'allasse*, I should go, or it  
would be necessary for me to go.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il faille*, that it may be necessary, &c.

Imperfect. *Qu'il fallût*, that it might be necessary, &c.

As to the compound tenses of this verb, they are formed by adding its participle passive to the third person singular of any of the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have: ex. *Il a fallu, il avoit fallu, &c.*

This verb, being used before the verb *to have*, followed immediately by a noun substantive, may be rendered without expressing the auxiliary verb; instead of which, insert one of the following pronouns, *me, te, lui, nous, vous, or leur*, according to the number and person: ex.

*Il me faut des livres,* I must have books, or I want books.

*Il lui faut un chapeau,* He or she must have a hat, or he or she wants a hat, &c.

But, if the verb *to have* be expressed, it must be rendered by the subjunctive mood: ex.

*Il faut que j'aie des livres,* I must have books, &c.

This method however is not so elegant as the former.

From the above instances, it is easy to see, that, when the verb  *falloir*  is used in the present or future tenses of the indicative mood, the following verb must be rendered by the present of the subjunctive: ex.

*Il faut, or il faudra, que je fasse,* I must do, I shall be obliged to do, or it will be necessary for me to do.

When *falloir* is used in the imperfect, preterite, or conditional present, of the indicative, the verb following it must be rendered by the imperfect of the subjunctive: ex.

*Il fallait, or il fallut, que je parlasse,* I was obliged, or it was necessary for me, to speak.

*Il faudroit que je vendisse,* I should be obliged, or it would be necessary for me, to sell.

The same observation is to be made on the verb *valeoir mieux*, to be better, used impersonally; and the adjectives, *bon, difficile, impossible, nécessaire, & propos, &c.* joined to the verb *être*, used in the third person singular only.

Before the conclusion of this section, it will be proper to say something about the pronoun general *on*, which commonly precedes an active verb used impersonally in French, and in English is made by a passive verb: ex.

*On m'a permis de chanter,* I have been permitted, or allowed, to sing.

*On lui a défendu de sortir,* He has been forbidden to go out.

In this case, the verb, which, in English, is in the passive voice, must, in French, be turned into the active, and translated as if there were, in English,

*One* has allowed me to sing, *one* has forbidden him to go out: ex.

*On n'a pas encore reçu la nouvelle,* The news have not been received yet, that is, *one* has not yet received the news.

*On rapporte que les Russes ont battu les Turcs,* It is reported that the Russians have beaten the Turks.

*On le dit, mais on ne le sait pas encore pour sûr,* It is said so, but it is not yet known for certain.

On

*On croit que le Suède a déclaré la guerre à la Russie.* It is thought Sweden has declared war against Russia.

# EXERCISES UPON THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Does it rain? — No, sir, it is fine weather. — Is it not very cold? — It is neither cold nor hot. — Was it not you that told me (that) there was a man below who asked to speak to me? — No, madam, it was not I. — If it did not freeze, I would go to see them to-day. — Believe me, it is better for you to go there to-morrow; for, it will snow soon. — It is a year since I met your brother in Italy. — Where is he now? — It is not known; for, we have not heard from him these two years. — Was there not formerly a (coffee-house) at the corner of this street? — I had been four years in England when that happened. — I have not seen your sister these four months. — If you go to

\* After the words *better, necessary, useful, expedient, &c.* joined to the verb *to be*, conjugated impersonally, the preposition *for* is to be rendered by *pour*, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood, either present or imperfect, according to the tense of the preceding verb.



Coxheath to-day, *aujourd'hui*, adv. you must come back to-mor-  
row. — We had been playing at cards for two hours

when you came in. — He has been in London these  
*entrer*, v.

five years, and it is said he there enjoys a considerable  
employment. — My father and mother had not been

gone out above a quarter of an hour when he arrived.  
*sortir*, v. *plus*, adv.

— Some people have no pity on their poor (fellow-  
*gens*, pl. *de* *sem-*

creatures.) — More virtue is requisite to support good  
*table*.

fortune than bad. — They are strangers to the charms

of society who shun company. — Thomas will have  
*fair*, v.

been at Mr. H——'s academy two years the tenth of

next month. — Had not Mr. D. been four years in

Spain when his sister was married? — Mr. N. had on-  
*ne*

ly learned French four months when he wrote me a  
*qu.*

letter in that language. — I assure you that there is a  
*asserer*, v.

great deal of pleasure in teaching diligent scholars. —  
*à*, p.

How long is it since you wrote to your mother? —  
*Cambien*, adv.

It'

It is<sup>3</sup> but<sup>4</sup> two<sup>2</sup> months<sup>6</sup>. — I would have written to  
*ne que* *mois, m.*

you a month ago if I had known your direction. —  
*savoir, v.* *adresse, f.*

He is the same man whom we saw a quarter of an hour

ago. — It is not so cold now as it was at the beginning

of this month. — It is said there will not be so much  
*tant, adv.*

danger in travelling as there was before. — You  
*à voyager, v.* *que* *auparavant.*

must have been well acquainted with the places  
*endroit, m.*

to expose yourself in that manner. — You may go  
*pour, c.* *de, p.*

to London this morning, but remember that you must

be back at three o'clock. — Would it not be better for  
*de retour*

you to go and speak to them yourself than to send  
*de envoyer, v.*

your servant? — Shall I be obliged to carry  
*domestique, m. & f.* *falloir, v.* *mener, v.*

them there? — There is no going out to-day, it is too

warm. — You must get up to-morrow morning at  
*se lever, v.*

four o'clock. — Will it not be better for you to be

there too soon than too late? — Custom must not al-

ways prevail over reason. — Some people fancy that  
*sur, p.* *s'imaginer, v.*

they can learn a language without studying. — They are  
*sans, p.*

idle, who do not know the value of time. — Let there

be danger or not I will (go home.) — Do you think  
*s'en retourner, v.* *croire, v.*

(that) it is hotter in Italy than here? — I shall want  
*en, p. Italie, f.*

(or, I must have) paper, pens, and ink. — If he be  
*se*

haved well, there would not be a man (in the) world  
*comporter, v.* *au monde, m.*

that I should esteem more. — Much art and nicety are

requisite to — please every body. — They obey the com-  
*pour, p.*

mands of God who love their neighbours and do not

reproach them with their small defects. — I have already

told you that nobody in the world has prepossessed me

against you; how many times must I repeat it to you? —  
*contre, p.*

(How long) is it since your brother went to France?  
*Combien, adv.* *est allé, v.*

— It may be four months. — Have the letters  
*pouvoir, v.*

been received which were expected yesterday? — It

greatly concerns children to avoid bad company.  
*beaucoup, adv.* *enfant, m. de éviter, v.*

— I was in England ten years ago. — Every body agrees

there

there are fine women in Great Britain, but there is not  
so good wine as in France. — It may be two years

since Mr. Robert set out for the Indies. — Was it not  
you who wrote to Miss A. — No, it was Miss

Rose's sister. — It does not matter whether it is my  
servant or yours who carries it. — How long is it since  
you were in England? — You do not seem to be

as lively as you were three years ago. — Must I not  
show you my work? — If there were any real vir-

tue in the world, should we (meet with) so many false

friends? — No object is more pleasing to the eye than  
the sight of a man whom you have obliged, nor (is)

any music so agreeable to the ear as the voice of a  
man who owns you for his benefactor.

Participles are either active or passive. The partici-

ple active, in French, always ends in *ant*: ex. *parlant*,  
*punissant*: and, in English, in *ing*: ex. *speaking*, *pu-*

*nishing*.

**SECT. V.**

**OF PARTICIPLES.**

Participles are either active or passive. The partici-

ple active, in French, always ends in *ant*: ex. *parlant*,  
*punissant*: and, in English, in *ing*: ex. *speaking*, *pu-*

*nishing*.



*vingt*, &c. It is always, in its own nature, indeclinable: ex.

*Je vois des hommes et des femmes venant à nous,* I see men and women coming to us.

When the participle active is preceded by another verb, an article, or a preposition, it must be rendered in French by the verb in the infinitive mood: ex.

*La grace de Dieu nous empêche de pécher,* The grace of God keeps us from sinning.

*Faut-il que je parte sans le voir ?* Must I set out without seeing him? &c.

It is sometimes used as a substantive: ex.

*La pauvreté du corps est la richesse de l'âme,* The impoverishing of the body is the enriching of the soul.

N. B. There are some active participles which, by use, have been converted into substantives or adjectives; as, *médisant*, slanderer; *ignorant*, ignorant, &c. which are declinable.

The participle passive is sometimes declinable and sometimes indeclinable.

It is declinable,

First, When it is joined to the verb *être*, to be, forming a passive verb, and agrees with the nominative case of the verb in gender and number: ex.

*Mon frère est aimé,* My brother is loved.

*Ma sœur est aimée,* My sister is loved.

*Mes cousins sont partis,* My cousins are gone.

*Mes cousines sont parties,* My cousins are gone.

Secondly, When it is joined to the verb *avoir*, or *être*, forming the compound tenses of an active or reflected verb, immediately preceded by a pronoun which it governs in the accusative case; it must then agree with the gender and number of the substantive to which that pronoun refers: ex.

*J'ai parlé à votre frère,* I spoke to your brother, and

*j'ai prié de venir avec moi,* desired him to come and

accompany me.

*Connoissez-*

*Connaissez-vous Madame Wrighten? Oui, je l'ai vue, et j'ai entendue chanter plusieurs fois, j'ai lu tous les livres que vous m'avez prêtés, j'ai vu les marchandises que j'ai reçues, Mademoiselle B. a passé deux ou trois jours avec vos sœurs, et les a vues peindre, vous m'avez souvent prié, or priée, de, &c. Elles se sont repenties de leurs fautes,*

*Do you know Mrs. Wrighten? Yes, I saw her, and heard her sing many times, I have read all the books (which) you lent me. Did you see the goods (which) I have received? Miss B. spent two or three days with your sisters, and saw them painting. You often desired me to, &c. They have repented of their faults.*

In the above instances the pronouns are governed by the verbs *avoir* or *être* and the participle passive.

*Du*, (when not made by *owed*), *ou*, and *vous*, are excepted as being always indeclinable.

The participle passive is indeclinable in the following cases:

First, When the contrary to the above rule happens; that is, when the pronoun, though preceding the participle passive, is governed by another verb: ex.

*Plusieurs personnes se sont présentées à la porte, la sentinelle les a laissées passer, C'est une belle chanson, je l'ai entendue chanter deux ou trois fois, La langue que vous avez commencée d'apprendre est fort utile, J'y suis allé avec elle, et j'ai vu peindre,*

*Several persons came to the door, the sentinel let them pass. It is a fine song, I heard it sung two or three times. The language you began to learn is very useful. I went there with her, and saw her picture drawn.*

In the above instances the pronouns are not governed by the participle passive, but by the verbs *passer*, *chanter*, *apprendre*, and *peindre*.

Secondly,

Secondly, When it is immediately followed by a noun (either substantive or adjective) in the accusative case, or by another participle passive, though it should be preceded by a pronoun: ex.

*Les Anglais se sont rendus fameux dans cette guerre;* The English have made themselves famous (in) this war.

*Les Espagnols se sont trouvés obligés de lever le siège;* The Spaniards found themselves obliged to raise the siege.

*Ma sœur s'est cassé le bras;* My sister broke her arm.

And, lastly, when the auxiliary verb and the participle passive are used impersonally: ex.

*Les pluies qu'il a fait;* The rains we have had.

In order to illustrate the application of the above rules in a single example, we must write,

*J'ai reçu les lettres que vous m'avez écrites au sujet de l'affaire que je vous avois proposée: et, après les avoir lues avec attention, j'ai reconnu, comme vous me l'avez dit, que, si j'avois trouvé des obstacles que je n'avois pas prévus, j'aurais dû les surmonter.* I have received the letters which you wrote to me with respect to the affair which I had proposed to you: and, after having read them with attention, I perceived, as you told me, that, if I had undertaken it, I should have met with obstacles that I had not foreseen.

In this period, *reçu* is indeclinable; because, it is not preceded by any regimen; *écrites* is declinable, and agrees in gender and number with its absolute regimen, or accusative, expressed by the pronoun relative *que*, which precedes the verb and relates to *lettres*; *proposée* likewise agrees with *que*, by which it is preceded, and which relates to the verb *affaire*; *lues* is declinable on account of its regimen *les*, which precedes it and relates to *lettres*; *reconnu* is indeclinable because it is not preceded by any regimen to which it can relate; *entrepris*, on the contrary, is declinable, and takes the gender and number of the conjunctive pronoun *J'*, which is its absolute

absolute regimen, and the antecedent relation to *avoir* & *trouvé* is indeclinable, because it is not preceded, but followed, by its absolute regimen, *absolue*; *présumé*, on the contrary, is declinable, because it is preceded by its absolute regimen *qui*, which relates to *absolue*.

If custom, in any case, has deviated from the preceding rules, it is sufficient to observe that they have the sanction of the best authors. A little practice will soon remove many of these apparent difficulties.

### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING RULES.

I have not yet received the goods which  
*merchandise, f.*

you sent me by the ship. — Goodwill. — Ladies,  
*vaisseau, m.*

have you returned him the letters which he had desired  
*rendre, v.*

I had them read. — They are people truly  
*prier, v.*

fearing God and loving virtue. — Where did you  
*crain-*  
*dre, v.*

buy these gloves? — I bought them in France. —  
*acheter, v.*

She met your father and sister (as she was) coming  
*en*

here. — The faults which he had committed greatly  
*ici, adv.*

increased his prudence. — There is a real ad-  
*beaucoup, adv.*  
*augmenter, v.*

vantage in being learned, but science must not in-  
*à, p.*

spire pride. — His brother, remembering the in-  
*se ressouvenir, v. des*

juries he had received, refused to see him. —  
*refuser, v. de voir, v.*

He



He has spent all the treasures which his father had  
*amassés, m.*  
 amassed with so much care and labour. — I shall ne-  
 ver forget the good actions which I have seen you

*oublier, v.*  
 do. — The defending of a bad cause is worse than

the cause itself. — Your mother, having given the

necessary orders to my sister, set out for London

*partir, v.*  
 without speaking a word to me. — The resolution  
*fais, p. — dire, v. — mot, m.*

which she has taken of going in the country surprises  
*a, p. — étonner, v.*

me very much; I have spoken to her myself, but I

have not been able to learn the reasons which have

engaged her to it. — Miss Farren was an excellent ac-

tress, I have seen her play several times. — Of all

the letters which my brother has received (to-day,)  
*aujourd'hui, adv.*

there is not one (of them) for me. — The reasons  
*raison, f.*

which you have given me have satisfied me. — I am

very sorry for the trouble that affair has given to  
*fâché, adj. — de — peine, f.*

your aunt. — The goods, which you have ordered  
*tante, f. — marchandise, f.*

me

me to send, and arrived; permit me to shew you  
*de* *montrer, v.*  
 the letters which we have received from Germany. —

He was hanged for having robbed Mr. D. — What  
*pendre, v.* *voler, v.*

books have you lost? — The fable I gave you to  
*perdre, v.* *à*

translate is not difficult. — At last he has returned  
*traduire, v.* *Enfin, adv.* *rendre, v.*

all the sums which I had lent to him, and which he  
*somme, f.*

has owed me so long. — If you can come with me,  
*devoir, v.*

I will shew you the lady whom I have heard sing.  
*dame, f.* *entendre, v.*

— Your sister has rendered herself celebrated by her  
*célèbre, adj.*

wit and beauty. — She obtained from the king all  
*esprit, m.*

the favours she would. — What stuff have you cho-  
*grace, f.* *éttoffe, f.* *choi-*

sen? — Have you already read the books I saw you  
*lire, v.* *déjà, adv.* *lire, v.*

buying? — Not yet; for, I have sent them to my  
*Pas, adv.*

sister, who is in the country. — They have found

themselves surrounded by soldiers, who carried them  
*conduire, v.*

to prison, where they have been detained for  
*en, p.* *retenir, v.* *pendant, p.*

eight days, but they have been found innocent of the

crime with which they were accused, and, at last,  
*de*

{acquitted.} — I should despise a man who is ca-  
*(renvoyer, v. absous.) mépriser, v.*

pable of deceiving his friends. — The fine actions  
*tromper, v. ami, m. beau, adj.*

your brothers have done in America deserve  
*faire, v. en, p. mériter, v.*

great praises, and want to be well related. —  
*demander, v. de raconter, v.*

Their general has shewn them all the gratitude he  
*témoigner, v.*

ought. — I have lost the books which you have seen

me buying. — The three country-houses, which your

father is said to have bought, are extremely fine and

well situated. — The history which I have begun to  
*à*

read is not entertaining. — After having (waited for)  
*amusant, adj. attendre, v.*

her (a long while,) she (sent me word) that she was  
*long tems, adv. envoyer dire, v.*

not ready to go out. — She has written more books  
*prêt, adj. à sortir, v.*

than you ever have read. — She spends all her time  
*que ne passer, v.*

in reading or writing. — The soldiers, whom they  
*à*

have obliged to set out, are come back already. —  
*à, p. revenir, v.*

Did you not see them coming? — The rain we  
*voir, v. pluie, f.*

have

have had this week has prevented me from going  
*empêcher, v.*

into the country. — The city of Liverpool has ren-  
*a* *flourishing, f.*

dered itself flourishing by its trade. — My sister  
*florissant, adj.* *commerce, m.*

has bought herself a fine gown. — My mother  
*acheter, v.*

takes an infinite pleasure in admiring the situation  
*prendre, v.* *situation, f.*

of your house. — The letter you have written to me

in French was tolerably well; I have shewn  
*passablement, adv.* *montrer, v.*

it to your aunt, who is much pleased (with it.)  
*très, adv.* *content, adj.* *en, pron.*

## SECT. VI.

### INDECLINABLE PARTS OF SPEECH.

Under this head are comprehended *adverbs, propo-  
sitions, conjunctions, and interjections.*

### OF ADVERBS.

*Adverbs* have been distinguished, according to their several significations, into *adverbs of place, time, quality, quantity, number, order, affirmation, negation, doubt, interrogation, comparison, collection, separation, &c.* But this classification, however ingenious, is far from being exact: It was therefore judged, that, if those of the most frequent use, and which, when compounded, form a particular idiom, were carefully selected, and arranged in an alphabetical series, it would be more to the advantage of the learner.



## TABLE OF ADVERBS.

*Abondamment*, abundantly, plentifully.

*à l'Abandon*, at random, in confusion, in disorder.

*à l'abord*, at first, immediately.

*Absolument*, absolutely.

*d'Accord*, grant it, done.

*Agriablement*, pleasantly, comfortably.

*Ainsi*, (*de même*), so.

*Aisément*, easily.

*à se disputer*, much ado.

*dans un An d'ici*, a year hence.

*L'Anée qui vient*, the next year.

*Anciennement*, } formerly, anciently.

*Autrefais*,

*en Ami*, friendly.

*à l'Amiable*, amitably.

*en Arrière*, } backwards.

*à reculons*,

*Assez*, enough.

*Assurément*, certainly.

*Aujourd'hui*, to-day.

Time { *d'Aujourd'hui en huit*, this day to-night.

to come { *d'Aujourd'hui en quinze*, this day fortnight.

{ *il y a Aujourd'hui huit jours*, this day week,

{ *il y a Aujourd'hui dix jours*, this day ten days,

{ *il y a Aujourd'hui quinze jours*, this day fortnight,

{ *il y a Aujourd'hui un an*, this day twelve-

{ *il y a Aujourd'hui un an*, this day twelve-

{ *il y a Aujourd'hui un an*, this day twelve-

{ *il y a Aujourd'hui un an*, this day twelve-

*Autant*, as much, as many.

*d'Autant plus*, so much the more.

*d'Autant moins*, so much the less.

*tout autant*, } just as, just as much, every whit.

*tout aussi*, }

*à l'Avance*, for the future, hereafter.

*à l'Angloise*, after the English manner, fashion, or way.

*à l'Italienne*, after the Italian; &c.

*à la Française*, after the French, &c.

*à la Turque*, after the Turkish, &c.

Bas,

*Bas,* } below, down.  
*à or en Bas,* }  
*en Badinant,* for fun.  
*Beaucoup,* } much, many, a great deal.  
*Bien,* }  
*à Beaucoup près,* nothing so near.  
*de Beaucoup,* by much.  
*Bien,* well, very.  
*de Bon cœur,* heartily.  
*de Bonne heure,* betimes.  
*de Bonne foi,* } sincerely.  
*sincèrement,* }  
*de Bon jeu,* fairly.  
*de Bon matin,* early.  
*de Bouche,* by word of mouth.  
*à la Bonne heure,* in good time, luckily, well and good.  
*à Bon droit,* deservedly.  
*à Bon marché,* cheap.  
*à Bride abbatue,* full speed.

*ça et là,* to and fro.  
*à Cause de quoi?* on what account?  
*à Cela près,* that excepted.  
*Cependant,* in the meanwhile, nevertheless.  
*à Cheval,* on horseback.  
*Combien,* how much, how many, how,\* how long.  
*Combien y a-t-il que,* or  
*Combien de tems y a-t-il que,* } how long? †  
*Combien y avoit-il que,* }  
*Depuis quand,* }  
*Combien de tems,* }  
*pendant Combien de tems,* }

B b 3

dans

\* How much, how many, how, are rendered in French by *que*, before an admiration: ex.

*Que vous êtes jolie!* How pretty you are!

† We make use of *combien y a-t-il que*, or *depuis quand*, when the action mentioned in the interrogation has not yet ceased; then the verb, which (in English) is in the present infinitive, must be rendered (in French) by the present of the indicative mood: ex.

Combien

*dans Combien de tems*, how long will it be before.

*Comme*, as, like.

*Comme il faut*, soundly.

*Comment*, how.

*à Contre cœur*, against one's will.

*à Contre sens*, the contrary way, in a wrong sense.

*à Contre tems*, unseasonably.

*à Corps perdu*, hand over head, desperately.

*à Côté*,

*à l'écart*,

*à part*,

*à quartier*,

} aside.

*à Côté l'un de l'autre*, abreast.

*de ce Côté-ci*, on this side.

*de ce Côté-là*, on that side.

*de Côté et d'autre*, up and down, about.

*de tous Côtés*, on all sides, on every side.

*Coup sur Coup*, one after another.

*D'avantage*, more.

*Dedans*, within, inwardly.

*Combien y a-t-il que vous apprenez,*  
or *depuis quand apprenez-vous, le*  
*François ?*

*How long have you learned French ?*

*Combien y a-t-il que vous êtes, or*  
*depuis quand êtes-vous, à Londres ?*

*How long have you been in London ?*

If the verb (in English) be in the present tense, it is to be translated (in French) by the imperfect of the indicative ; as,

*Combien y avoit-il que vous appreniez,*  
or *depuis quand appreniez-vous, le François quand vous ne l'avez*  
*crû ?*

*How long had you been learning French when you went to me ?*

*Combien y avoit-il que vous étiez,*  
or *depuis quand étiez-vous, à Paris*  
*quand il mourut ?*

*How long had you been in Paris when he died ?*

But, if the action have entirely ceased, we make use of *pendant combien de tems*, with the following in the present indicative : *en*.

*Pendant combien de tems avez-vous*  
*appris le François ?*

*How long did you learn French ?*

*Pendant combien de tems avez-vous*  
*été à Londres ?*

*How long were you in London ?*

N. B. *How long*, in the sense of for what time, is also rendered by *pendant combien de tems*, with the verb in the third person of the present indicative : *est*.

*Pendant combien de tems est-il*  
*allé en Italie ?*

*How long was he gone to Italy ?*

*en Dedans*, within, inwardly.

*Dehors*, } without.  
*en Dehors*, }

*Déjà*, already.

*Demain*, to-morrow.

*le lendemain*, the day after.

*après Demain*, the day after to-morrow.

*Dernièrement*, lately.

*ci Dessus*, above.

*par Dessus*, over and above.

*Dessous*, } underneath.

*au Dessous*, }

*à Découvert*, openly.

*à Demi*, } half, by halves.

*à moitié*, }

*à Dessein*, on purpose, designedly.

*à Droite*, on the right.

*à Double entente*, with a double meaning.

*Encore*, again, yet, as yet.

*Enfin*, at last.

*Ensuite*, afterwards, then.

*Entièrement*, entirely.

*Exprès*, on purpose.

*à l'Ecart*, out of the way.

*à l'Entour*, round about.

*à l'Envers*, the wrong side outwards,

*à l'Envi*, in emulation.

*aux Environs*, thereabout.

*En nulle manière*, in no wise.

*En plein jour*, or }

*En plein midi*, } at noon, at mid-day.

*En tems et lieu*, in a proper time and place.

*En tout cas*, whatever may happen.

*En un clin d'œil*, in the twinkling of an eye.

*En surfaut*, suddenly.

*Facilement*, easily.

*Fidèlement*, faithfully.

*à la or }* File, in a file.

*de*



*à la Fois*, together.

*combien de Fois*? how many times?

*une Fois*, once.

*deux Fois*, twice.

*tant de Fois*, so many times.

*Fort*, very.

*Fort et Ferme*, stoutly.

*à Fond*, thoroughly.

*de Fond en comble*, from top to bottom, to all intents and purposes.

*de Front*, abreast.

*Galamment*, genteelly, gallantly.

*Goute à Goute*, by drops.

*Guères*, (with *ne* before the verb,) little, but little.

*à la Hâte*, in haste.

*en or là* } *Haut*, up there, above stairs.

*d'Heure en Heure*, hourly, every hour.

*Hier*, yesterday.

*Hier au soir*, last night.

*avant Hier*, the day before yesterday.

*Ici*, here.

*Ici autour*, hereabouts.

*Ici près*, hard by.

*d'Ici*, hence.

*d'Ici en quinze jours*, within a fortnight.

*par Ici*, through here, this way.

*par Ici par là*, here and there.

*à l'Instant*, immediately, instantly.

*Jamais*, ever.

*ne — Jamais*, never.

*à Jamais*, for ever.

*Justement*, justly.

*Jusqu'à quand*? how long?

*Jusqu'ici*, hitherto, as far as here.

*Jusquès-là*, so far, as far as that.

*Jusqu'où*? how far?

*de Jour, in the day-time.*  
*de Jour à autre, or } from day to day, daily.*  
*de Jour en Jour,*  
*de deux en deux Jours, or } every other day.*  
*de deux Jours l'un, or }*  
*tous les deux Jours,*  
*dans quinze Jours, in a fortnight.*

*Là, there, thither.*

*Là autour, thereabouts.*

*Là bas, yonder.*

*de Là, (en,) thence.*

*par Là, through there, that way.*

*Loin, far.*

*de Loin, afar off, at a distance.*

*Long tems, a long while.*

*Lors, then, at the time.*

*alors,*

*pour Lors,*

*des Lors, from that time.*

*Mal, ill, wrong.*

*Maintenant, now.*

*Médisamment, maliciously.*

*Même, even, yet.*

*de Même, so, in the same manner.*

*Mieux, better.*

*de Mieux en Mieux, better and better.*

*Moins, less.*

*Moins — Moins, the less — the less.*

*à Moins, for less, at less.*

*au Moins,*

*tout au Moins, } at the least.*

*en Moins de rien, in a trice.*

*Nativement, plainly, ingenuously.*

*Naturellement, naturally, by nature.*

*au Naturel, to the life.*

*Ni — ni — ni, neither — nor.*

*Non pas, or point,*

*Non, } no, not.*

*de Nuit*, by night, in the night-time.

*Obligeamment*, kindly, obligingly.

*Où?* where?

*d'Où?* whence?

*par Où?* through what place? which way? through

*Oui*, yes.

*d'Outre en Outre*, through.

*Pas à Pas*, step by step.

*de Part et d'autre*, on both sides.

*nulle Part*, no where.

*à Peine*, hardly, scarcely.

*Pêle-mêle*, helter-skelter.

*Peut-être*, may be, perhaps.

*Peu*, little.

*Peu à Peu*, by little and little, by degrees.

*à Peu près*, { almost, very near, thereabouts.

*à Peu de chose près*, {

*dans Peu*, in a short time.

*depuis Peu*, lately, not long ago, a little while ago.

*à Pied*, on foot.

*à Pieds nus*, bare-feet.

*au Pis aller*, let the worst come to the worst.

*de Pis en Pis*, worse and worse.

*de Plein gré*, with a good will, freely.

*de Plein pied*, on the same floor.

*à Pleines mains*, largely.

*Plus*, more, above.

*Plus — Plus*, the more — the more.

*Plus qu'il n'en faut*, more than enough.

*au Plus*, tout au Plus, at the most.

*de Plus en Plus*, more and more.

*à Plus forte raison*, much more so.

*Plutôt*, sooner.

*Point du tout*, not at all.

*à Point nommé*, seasonably.

*tout à Point*, in the nick of time.

*à Propos*, seasonably.

*Pourquoi?* or *que ne?* why?

*de Près*, near, nearly, narrowly.

*Premièrement*, or } *first*, in the first place.  
*en Premier lieu*, }

*dès à Présent*, from this time.

*Presque*, almost, hardly.

*Presque toujours*, most commonly.

*de Propos délibéré*, on purpose, purposely, deliberately.

*Par cas fortuit*, by chance, accidentally.

*Par derrière*, behind.

*Par dessus le marché*, into the bargain.

*Par en bas*, downward.

*Par en haut*, upward.

*Par malice*, through ill-nature.

*Par mégarde*, unawares.

*Par terre*, upon the ground.

*Quand?* when?

*depuis Quand?* how long is it since?

*Que?* why? how?

*Quelquefois*, some time.

*à Quoi bon?* to what purpose?

*Rarement*, seldom.

*au or du Reste*, as to the rest.

*à Rebours*, the wrong way.

*à la Renverse*, } backward, upon one's back.  
*à Reculons*, }

*à Rez de chaussée*, even with the ground.

*Sens devant derrière*, preposterously.

*Sens dessus dessous*, topsy-turvy.

*de tous Sens*, or } every where.

*de tous les Sens*, }

*Séparément*, separately.

*Seulement*, only.\*

*de Sang froid*, in cold blood.

*de Suite*, together, one after another.

\* Only is also expressed, in French, by *se* before the verb and *que* after it, when it becomes a conjunction.



*dans la Suite,* } afterwards.  
*par la Suite,* }  
*Sur le champ,* directly, upon the spot.

*Tant,* so much, so many.

*Tant mieux,* so much the better.

*Tant pis,* so much the worse.

*Tantôt,* by and by, sometimes.

*Tantôt — Tantôt,* sometimes — sometimes.

*Tôt,* } soon.  
*bientôt,* }

*Tôt ou Tard,* one time or other.

*Tant fait peu,* ever so little.

*Tard,* late.

*à Temps,* time enough, in proper time.

*de long Temps,* for a long time, this long while.

*de Temps en Temps,* or } now and then, from time to time.  
*de Temps à autre,* }

*à Tort,* wrongfully.

*à Tort ou à droit,* right or wrong.

*à Tort et à Travers,* at random.

*Trop,* too much.

*Toujours,* always, now-a-days.

*pour Toujours,* for ever and ever.

*Tous les jours,* every day.

*Tour à Tour,* by turns.

*Tout,* quite, wholly, thoroughly, entirely.\*

*Tout à coup,* suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.

*Tout bas,* softly, with a low voice.

*Tout d'un coup,* suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.

*Tout à fait,* quite.

*Tout à l'heure,* this minute, presently.

*Tout droit,* straight along.

*Tout de bon,* in good earnest.

*Tout du long,* all along.

\* This adverb takes the nature of a noun adjective, and becomes declinable, in French, when placed before another adjective feminine beginning with a consonant: ex.

*Ces femmes paraissent tout effrayées* These women seemed quite frightened and quite dismayed.

*Tout franc*, frankly, freely.

*Tout haut*, aloud.

*Tout outre*, through and through.

*à Tout bout de champ*, } at every turn.

*à Tous coups*,

*à Tous égards*, in all respects.

*de Toutes ses forces*, with all his or her might.

*par Tout*, every where.

*par Tout où*, wherever.

*Vite*,

*Vitement*, } quickly.

*Vivement*,

*au Vis*, } to the quick.

*à Vide*, empty.

*au plus Vite*, with all speed.

*Voici*, here is, behold.

*Voilà*, there is, behold.

*à Vue d'œil*, perceptibly.

*Y*, there, therein, within, thither.

## EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING ADVERBS.

Your sister left all her things **IN DISORDER**. —  
*laisser*, v.

I hope you will not do so. — You did not know me  
**AT FIRST**. — A YEAR HENCE you will (be able) to  
speak French **TOLERABLY WELL**. — My father says I  
shall go to\* France **THE NEXT YEAR**. — Your bro-  
ther and mine have settled their affairs **AMICABLY**. —

*régler*, v.

She dresses herself **QUITE AFTER THE ENGLISH**  
*s'habiller*, v.

\* See the article indefinite.

FASHION, but she lives AFTER THE FRENCH WAY.  
*vivre, v.*

— Your sister has a cap AFTER THE TURKISH  
*bonnet, m.*

FASHION. — If it be fine weather I shall be (back)  
*de retour*

THIS DAY FORTNIGHT. — You may say what  
*pouvoir, v.*

(you please,) but she is NOTHING NEAR so handsome  
*il vous plaira, v.*

as her sister. — We will get up EARLY, and set out  
*se lever, v.*

BETIMES. — I wish you A GREAT DEAL of pleasure.

— It (is better) to tell it him BY WORD OF MOUTH  
*valoir mieux, v.*

than to write to him. — I was SO MUCH THE MORE  
convinced of what you told me, that I dismissed him  
*renvoyer, v.*

THIS DAY MONTH. — THIS DAY WEEK I was  
(at your house.) — If you do not do it HEARTILY, I  
*chez vous.*

will do it myself. — We said it FOR FUN. — THAT  
EXCEPTED, he has bought it VERY CHEAP. — Have  
I not won FAIRLY? — You see to HOW MANY  
*gagner, v.*

dangers and HOW MANY reproaches we are liable. —  
*exposer, p. p.*

How dare you run ABOUT whilst your mother  
*pendant que, c.*

(is waiting for) you? — Miss B. is handsome; NEVER-  
*attendre, v.*

THELESS I do not love her. — Put that ASIDE. — He  
arrived VERY UNSEASONABLY. — We went THERE  
AGAINST

AGAINST OUR WILL. — They drank three bottles of wine ONE AFTER ANOTHER. — Let us walk ON THIS SIDE. — We learn ON EVERY SIDE that peace (will take place) VERY SOON. — Have they not been *avoir, v. lieu, m.*

beaten SOUNDLY? — Come TO-MORROW MORNING to see me. — I was LATELY (at your house,) and your brother took all that I said to him IN A WRONG SENSE. — I have heard that your sister will be married IN A SHORT TIME. — She was WITHIN and I was WITHOUT. — We were more than HALF dead. — Take all these papers and put them OUT OF THE WAY. — You have put on your waistcoat THE WRONG SIDE OUTWARDS. — I was stopped AT NOON. — We will tell him what we think IN A PROPER TIME AND PLACE. — He did it IN THE TWINKLING OF AN EYE. — I have written to your brother TWICE, but he has NOT YET answered my letters. — How MANY *répondre, v. à*

TIMES shall I be obliged to bid you (to) go THERE? *de dire, v. de*

— How<sup>s</sup> troublesome<sup>s</sup> you<sup>s</sup> are<sup>s</sup>! — My brother knows *importun, adj.*

the French THOROUGHLY. — How LONG have you been in England? — How LONG did he learn French? — How LONG had you been in Italy when you wrote to me? — I have told you SO MANY TIMES to write to your mother that I am QUITE weary of repeating *fatigué, p. p.*

it. — Give him BUT LITTLE wine. — Is Mr. D. UP STAIRS? — Come THIS WAY. — How MANY miles



are there from HERE to Hampton-Court? — There<sup>3</sup>  
must<sup>1</sup> be<sup>3</sup> A GREAT DEAL of game HEREABOUTS.  
*il doit, v. gibier, m.*

— I will call upon your brother WITHIN A FORT-  
*passer, v. chez, p.*

NIGHT. — Come back IMMEDIATELY. — How sorry  
*Revenir, v. sâché, adj.*

I am for having displeased you! — I NEVER will see him  
*de*

again. — How FAR will you go? — My master comes  
HERE EVERY OTHER DAY. — How LONG have you  
learned mathematics? — How FAR is it HENCE? — I  
shall go to Richmond IN A FORTNIGHT. — How  
LONG do you intend to stay THERE? — If you go  
*se proposer, v. rester, v.*

THAT WAY you may call at Mr. H—'s. —  
*pouvoir, v. passer, v. chez, p.*

How MUCH I should be obliged to you if you would  
grant me that favour. — FROM THAT TIME I saw  
him NO MORE. — I do not believe that he EVER will  
follow your advice. — They are NOW in England. — He  
*conseil, m.*

will not do it FOR LESS. — THENCE I went to France,  
and soon after to Italy. — How LONG were you in  
*après, p.*

Germany? — She has written three letters IN A TRICE.  
*Allemagne, f.*

— Virtue is amiable EVEN in an enemy. — You  
*dans, p.*

work BETTER than your sister. — She reads French  
BETTER AND BETTER, but she writes WORSE AND  
WORSE. — THE LESS you work, THE LESS you  
will

will improve. — There are now in America 30,000  
*faire des progrès.*

men AT THE LEAST. — Did you see Miss Nicole's  
 picture? — It is drawn TO THE LIFE. — I (asked for)  
*portrait, m. fait, p.p. demander, v.*

a glass of wine and NOT a glass of water. — How  
*verre, m.*

LONG have your brothers been at Mr. L—'s academy?

— WHERE did you meet them? — Did not they tell  
 you WHENCE they came? — WHICH WAY are they  
 gone? — I will NEITHER see them, NOR speak to him. —

The hole, THROUGH WHICH (they made their escape,)  
*s'échapper, v.*

was so small that I do not know HOW they could get  
 out. — I will follow you STEP BY STEP. — Have you  
 dined? — NOT YET. — AT LAST the rebels retired  
*se retirer, v.*

into the woods with a great loss. — The fight was  
*dans, p. bois, m. perte, f. combat, m.*

cruel and bloody, and (was kept up) a LONG TIME  
*sanglant, adj. se maintenir, v.*

with an equal advantage ON BOTH SIDES. — If you give  
 me a verb, I will learn it LITTLE BY LITTLE. — She  
 is as tall as you, or THEREABOUTS. — WHY did not  
 you come SOONER? — How LONG has that gentleman  
 been waiting for me? — I have written three letters,  
 NEITHER MORE NOR LESS. — You are ABOVE twenty  
 years old. — You give me MORE THAN ENOUGH. —  
 You come VERY REASONABLY. — You are HARDLY  
 EVER at home. — How LONG did Mrs. B. wait for me?  
 — They killed him PURPOSELY. — How LONG has he  
 been dead? — I met him BY CHANCE. — You study MORE

THAN EVER. — He gave me three yards of *muslin*  
*mouffeline, f.*

INTO THE BARGAIN. — If I have done that to  
*pour, p.*

oblige you, I will MUCH MORE so do it for her. —

THE MORE we are above others, THE MORE it  
*au dessus de, p.*

becomes us to be modest and humble. — Virtue reigns  
 SO MUCH THE MORE SOVEREIGNLY, as it does not  
 reign by force and fear. — We dine MOST COMMONLY  
 between three and four o'clock. — Our eating-room is  
*entre, p.*

EVEN WITH THE GROUND. — Shall I begin UPWARDS  
 OF DOWNWARDS? — Begin UPWARDS. — He has  
 torn my book OUT OF ILL-NATURE. — WHEN  
*déchirer, v.*

shall I have the pleasure to see you? — How LONG had  
*de*  
 your friend been in his regiment when he died? — How

LONG was he ill? — To WHAT PURPOSE shall I write  
 to him? — WHY do you walk BACKWARDS? —

*marcher, v.*  
 You SELDOM come to see us. — DO DIRECTLY what

I bid you. — She has left all things TOPSY-TURVY.  
*dire, v.*

— He committed the murder IN COOL BLOOD. —  
*meurtre, m.*

We will dance BY TURNS. — Do you believe it IN  
 GOOD EARNEST? — GO STRAIGHT ALONG. — WHY  
 do not you come to see us NOW AND THEN? — SOME-

— *parfois* — TIMES

TIMES I am at my uncle's in London, and some-  
*chez, p.*

TIMES at my grandfather's in the country. — You  
arrive TOO LATE. — She speaks AT EVERY TURN  
without knowing what she says. — Have patience, I  
*sans, p. savoir, v.*

hope you will succeed ONE TIME OR OTHER. — I have  
(looked for) you EVERY WHERE. — She can find it  
*chercher, v.*

NO WHERE. — He struck me WITH ALL HIS MIGHT.  
*frapper, v.*

— She is better than her sister IN ALL RESPECTS. —

I will follow you WHEREVER you go. — Her  
(by the fat.)

misfortunes touch me TO THE QUICK. — My sisters  
*malheur, m.*

were QUITE transported with joy when they heard the  
*de, p.*

happy news of the victory. — Go WITH ALL SPEED

to Mrs. Lucas, and tell her to come DIRECTLY. —  
*chez, p.*

HERE is my room, and THERE is yours.

## SECT. VII.

### OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are divided into the three following clas-  
ses. First, those that govern the genitive or ablative  
cases. Secondly, those that govern the dative. And,  
lastly, those that govern the accusative.

First, The following govern the genitive or ablative.

*Autour de*, about, round.

*à Cause de*, because of.

*à Cause de vous, de lui, d'elle, de nous, &c.* on your, his,

*à Côté de*, aside, by, *à l'égard de*, about, &c. account.



- à Couvert de,* free, secure, or screened, from.  
*à Fleur de,* close to, even with.  
*à Porta de,* by dint of.  
*à Mains de,* under.  
*à Raison de,* at the rate of.  
*à l'Abri de,* sheltered from.  
*à l'Egal de,* to, in comparison.  
*à l'Egard de,* with regard, with respect, as to, con-  
*cerning.*  
*à la Faveur de,* by means of.  
*à l'Insçu de,* without the knowledge of, unknown to.  
*à la Manière de,* } in or after the manner or fashion.  
*à la Mode de,* }  
*à l'Opposite de,* or } over against.  
*Vis à Vis de,* }  
*au Deça de,* } on this side.  
*en Deça de,* }  
*au Delà de,* on that side, on the other side.  
*au Debors de,* out, without.  
*au Dessus de,* above, over, upon.  
*au Dessous de,* under, below.  
*au Devant de,* before.  
*aller au Devant de,* to go to meet.  
*au Derrière de,* behind, on the back part.  
*au Dedans de,* in, within.  
*au Lieu de,* instead of.  
*au Milieu de,* in the middle of.  
*Prix de,* in comparison.  
*aux Environs de,* about, round about.  
*Ensuite de,* after.  
*Faute de,* for want of.  
*à la Hauteur de,* (leaving term,) off.  
*Haut de,* out.  
*le Long de,* along.  
*Loin de,* far from.  
*Près de,* or *Proche de,* } near, or nigh, by.  
*Après de,* }  
*pour l'Amour de moi, de lui, d'elle, de vous, &c.* for my  
 sake, for his, her, your, sake, &c.  
*Il pleure à force de rire,* He cries with laughing.

*tout* *Àuprès de*, close, hard by.

Secondly, The following govern the dative.

*Conformément*, according, pursuant.

*Jusqu'à*, or } till, until, even to, as far as, to.

*Jusques à*, }

*Par rapport à*, with respect to, on account.

*Quant à*, as for, as to.

Thirdly, The following require the accusative.

*Après*, after.

*d'Après*, after.\*

*Avant*, before.

*Avec*, with.

*à Travers*, cross, through.

*Chez*, in, to, at, amongst.

*Chez moi, chez toi, chez lui, chez elle, chez nous, &c.* at or to my, thy, his, her, our, &c. house.

*Contre*, against.

*Dans*, in, into, within.

*Depuis*, since, from.

*Derrière*, behind.

*Dès*, from.

*Devant*, before.

*de Dessus*, from the top.

*de Dessous*, from under, from beneath.

*Durant*, during.

*En*, in, into, to, like.

*Entre*, between.

*Envers*, towards, with regard to.

*Environ*, about.

*Excepté*,

*Hors*, } except, but, save.

*Hormis*,

*Moyennant*, for, provided.

*Nonobstant*,

} notwithstanding, in spite.

*Malgré*,

*Outre*, besides.

*Par*, by, through.

*par Deçà*, on this side.

\* We make use of this preposition in the following sense only:

*Il peint d'après un bon maître.* He paints after a good master.

*par Delà*, on that side.  
*par Derrière*, behind.  
*par Dessus*, about, over.  
*par Deffous*, under, below.  
*Parmi*, among.  
*Pendant*, during, for.  
*Pour*, for.  
*Sans*, without.\*  
*Sauf*, saving, but with.  
*Selon*, } according to.  
*Suivant*, }  
*Sous*, under.  
*Sur*, upon, about.  
*Touchant*, concerning, about.  
*Vers*, towards, to.

### OBSERVATIONS ON SOME PREPOSITIONS.

**ABOVE.** This preposition, when preceding a noun expressing time or number, so as to be turned by more than or longer than, is to be made in French by *plus de*: ex.

*Le combat dura plus de deux heures,* The fight lasted above two hours.

**AT** is most commonly rendered by *à*, and sometimes by one of the French articles *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, according to the gender and number of the noun following: ex.

*Nous étions à dîner,* We were at dinner.

*Vous n'étiez pas au logis,* You were not at home.

or *chez vous,*

*Je vous payerai à la fin de l'année,* I will pay you at the end of the year.

\* This preposition is sometimes rendered (in English) by the imperfect or preterpluperfect of the verb *to be*, preceded by the conjunction *if*, and sometimes by *but for*: ex.

*Sans vous, je ne sais ce que je devrais,* If it were not for you, I do not know what would become of me.

*Sans lui, mon frère aurait été puni,* Had it not been for him, my brother would have been punished.

*Sans elle, je serais mort de faim,* But for her, I should have been starved.

*Il est allé à l'église,*

He is gone to church.

*On dit que vous jouez très bien aux cartes,*

It is said you play very well at cards.

After nouns or verbs denoting anger, desire, joy, provocation, resentment, sorrow, surprise, or concern, it is rendered by one of the following articles, *de, du, de la, de l', des*: ex.

*Il se moque de vous,*

He laughs at you.

*Je me réjouis du bonheur qui vous est arrivé,*

I rejoice at the good fortune that has befallen you.

*Nous sommes surpris de ce que vous dites,*

We are surprised at what you say.

It is made by *chez* when, in English, it precedes the word *house*, either expressed or understood: ex.

*J'étais chez votre frère,*

I was at your brother's.

*Elle est chez sa tante,*

She is at her aunt's.

That is, at your brother's house, at her aunt's house.

N. B. The same rule is to be observed with respect to the preposition *to*.

By, when it precedes a verb in the participle active is rendered by *en*: ex.

*Vous parlerez bientôt Français en vous appliquant ainsi,*

You will soon speak French by applying so.

By, after the verbs *to sell, to buy*, and the like, preceding a noun of weight or measure, is made into French by *à, au, à la, à l', aun*, according to the gender and number of the following noun: ex.

*Nous ne vendons rien à la livre,*

We sell nothing by the pound.

*Vous achetez toujours à l'aune,*

You always buy by the ell.

The above preposition, immediately following the verbs *to kill, to wound, to knock down*, and the like, is made into French by *d'un coup de*, when it expresses the effect, blow, thrust, stroke, firing, &c. of an instrument by which a man was either killed, wounded, &c. provided the blows have not been repeated: ex.

*Il fut blessé d'un coup de flèche,*

He was wounded by an arrow.



*Il fut assommé d'un coup de pierre,* He was knocked down by a stone.

*Ils furent tués d'un coup de canon,* They were killed by a cannon-ball.

If the blows, strokes, thrusts, &c. have been repeated, we make use of *à coups de*, in which case it is most commonly rendered in English by the preposition *with*: ex.

*Ils le tuèrent à coups de flèches,* They killed him with arrows.

*Il l'assomma à coups de bâton,* He knocked him down with a stick.

FOR, after *reflected verbs*, as also those which denote *thanksgiving*, &c. is rendered by one of the following articles, *de, du, de la, des*: ex.

*Je me repens de ce que j'ai fait,* I repent for what I have done.

*Il m'a prié de vous remercier de la part que vous avez prise dans son affaire,* He desired me to thank you for the part you took in his affair.

FROM, preceding the name of a *man* or *woman*, or one of the *personal, possessive, relative, or interrogative*, pronouns, after the verbs *to go, to come, to send*, &c. is generally made in French by *de la part de*, or *de ma, de sa, de notre, de votre, de leur, part*: ex.

*De la part de qui venez-vous?* From whom do you come?

*Je viens de la part de M. D—,* I come from Mr. D—.

*Allez de ma part chez Madame R—,* Go from me to Mrs. R—'s.

IN, after words denoting *pain, hurting, or wounding*, and preceding one of the *possessive pronouns* in conjunction with any part of the body, is to be rendered by one of the following articles, *à, au, à la, à l', aux*, and the *possessive pronoun* left out: ex.

*J'ai mal à la tête,* I have a pain in my head.

*Il étoit blessé au bras et non à la jambe,* He was wounded in his arm and not in his leg.



*In*, when placed before the article *the*, preceding a noun denoting a part of time, is not to be expressed at all in French: ex.

*Vous le trouverez toujours chez lui le matin,* You will always find him at home in the morning.

**ON** or **VOUS**. This preposition is made by *de*, after the verbs *to depend*, *to live*, *to subsist*, and the like: ex.

*Il vit de pain et d'eau,* He lives on bread and water: and by one of the following articles, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, after the verb *to play*, preceding the name of an instrument: ex.

*Vous jouez du violon, de la flûte,* You play on the fiddle, on the flute.

Before the days of the week, the above preposition must not be expressed: ex.

*Venez Vendredi de bonne heure,* Come on Friday early.

**On**, preceding the words *foot*, *horseback*, meaning the state of walking or riding, is rendered by *à*: ex.

*J'étois à pied et elle étoit à cheval,* I was on foot and she was on horseback.

**OVER** is made by the participle passive of the verbs *finir*, *passer*, *achever*, when it denotes an action ended: ex.

*Votre frère partit dès que la pluie fut passée,* Your brother set out as soon as the rain was over.

**WITH** is to be rendered by *dans* when it is used before nouns denoting the *purpose*, *design*, or *motive*, in the agent: ex.

*Il le fit dans l'attente d'être bien récompensé,* He did it with an expectation of being well rewarded.

*Mon frère est allé chez vous dans le dessein de bien vous gronder,* My brother is gone to your house with a design of scolding you well.

But it must be made by *de* after the following verbs, *to starve*, *to die*, *to do*, *to dispense*, *to meddle*, *to encompass*, *to surround*, *to load*, *to accuse*, *to cover*, *to strike*, and those denoting fullness; likewise after the following adjectives, *ambitious*, *charmed*, *pleased*, *displeased*, *endowed*, &c. ex.

*Elle meurt de froid et de faim,* She starves with cold and hunger.

*Ils ne savent que faire de leur argent,* They do not know what to do with their money.  
*Je suis content de ce que j'ai,* I am pleased with what I have.

*With* is rendered by *contre* after words denoting *anger* or *passion*: ex.

*Madame, votre mère est fâchée contre vous,* Your mother is angry with you.

*With*, before nouns denoting the *matter*, *instruments*, *tools*, or expressing how and in what manner a thing is done or made, is rendered by one of the following articles, *à*, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, according to the gender and number of the following noun: ex.

*Une table à tiroirs,* A table with drawers.  
*Bâtir à chaux et à sable,* To build with lime and sand.  
*Dessiner au crayon, à la craie,* To draw with a pencil, with chalk.  
*Se battre à l'épée, au pistolet,* To fight with swords, with pistols.

The above preposition is not to be expressed after some verbs, such as, *to meet with*, *to supply with*, *to reproach with*, &c. ex.

*Il a essuyé bien des chagrins,* He has met with many troubles.  
*Je lui reprochai son ingratitude,* I reproached her with her ingratitude.  
*Nous lui fournirons tout ce dont il aura besoin,* We will supply him with every thing he wants.

It is likewise to be suppressed when it expresses the *situation*, *position*, &c. of a person, or when it is used in the sense of *having*, *holding*, &c. ex.

*Il se promène toujours un livre à la main,* He always walks with a book in his hand;  
 that is, having or holding a book, &c.

## EXERCISES ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

I have sent nothing to your brother BECAUSE OF his idleness, but I forgive him ON YOUR ACCOUNT. — Sit down BY that lady's sister. — Though we are

*Quoique, c.* (in the subj.)

NEAR town, we are not yet SECURE FROM all danger.

— He is become a very good master BY DINT OF study and practice. — Cut that sorrel EVEN WITH the

*oxeille, f.*

ground. — He will not sell it UNDER twelve guin-

*terre, f.*

*vouloir, v.*

neas. — As TO what she says, I do not mind it,

*se fâcher de, v.*

but I cannot help being surprised AT her manner

*s'empêcher, v.*

of answering. — All the prisoners (made their escape)

*s'échapper, v.*

BY MEANS of the darkness of the night. — Your bro-

*obscurité, f.*

ther is gone to London WITHOUT THE KNOWLEDGE of your mother. — Now the English ladies (dress them-

*s'habiller, v.*

selves) AFTER THE French FASHION. — I give you all my books EXCEPT the History of France. — Why did you not play on the fiddle ON Friday last? — Do not you say that you met my father ON THE OTHER SIDE OF the bridge? — We now live ON THIS SIDE OF the river; and, if you will come to see me, we will fish WITH a net or a line. — Mrs. A. is very proud, she

*filet, m.*

*ligne, f.*

thinks herself ABOVE every body. — I am going to MEET my aunt, will you come WITH me? — He took my hat



INSTEAD of his. — Let us go INTO THE MIDDLE OF the meadow. — You always travel by night AT the peril of your life. — Do not meddle WITH my affairs, meddle WITH your own. — Your horse (is worth)  
*valoir, v.*

very little IN COMPARISON OF his. — He walks two or three times a day ROUND the garden WITH a stick  
*fois, f. \**

in his hand, and only lives ON milk and vegetables. —  
*légumes, m.*

We drank tea, AFTER which we went to the play. —  
*prendre, v. comédie, f.*

I can do nothing FOR WANT OF money. —  
*pouvoir, v. faire, v.*

How do you measure your cambric, BY the ell or BY  
*batiste, f.*

the yard? — Do not push me OUT OF the room. —  
*pousser, v.*

We will walk BY the river. — They were OFF the Cape of Good Hope when they were taken; ABOVE five hundred men perished in the action. — We are still FAR from our house. — I met your friend Mr. A. NEAR the church. — My mother was buried NEAR this marble pillar. — I do assure you (that) I do it FOR YOUR SAKE. — ON June the 8th, 1736, died Edward, prince of Wales, the delight of the nation, IN the 46th year of his age. The parliament accompanied his corpse TO Canterbury, where he was interred. — Mrs. Fair lives in the Strand, OVER AGAINST Catha-  
*demeurer, v.*

\* Remember the observations after the article *en, sur, a or an.*

ring-street. — My brother bought yesterday twenty pair of silk stockings AT THE RATE of fourteen shillings and six-pence a pair. — He has been punished PURSUANT to an act of parliament. — We accompanied them AS FAR AS Barnet; there they fought *se battre, v.* WITH swords and pistols; your brother was wounded IN the arm, and my cousin IN THE head. — AS FOR me, I will not give him a penny. — He arrived here an hour AFTER you. — Let me drink BEFORE you. *Laisser, v.*

— Did you not see her walk WITH her father? — You mistake, they were both ON horseback. — Are you not satisfied WITH the behaviour of your son Thomas? — *content, adj. conduite, f.*

He behaved LIKE an honest man IN that affair. — Miss A. paints AFTER nature. — Did she shew you the picture she has drawn WITH Indian ink? — No, but she *Chine, f.*

shewed me her mother's picture done WITH chalk; I *craie, f.*

assure you it is very like. — It was the ancient *ressemblant, adj.*

Britons who cut a road THROUGH this mountain. *Breton, m. chemin, m.*

— Are you going TO Mrs. L—'s? — No, I am going TO YOUR HOUSE; but, since I have met you, we will go TO MY HOUSE, where we shall dine. — ACCORDING TO what you tell me and what I have heard, she has a great deal of wit and merit; and, BUT FOR that

large scar she has IN her forehead, she would be  
*cicatrice, f.*

very handsome. — Do not lean AGAINST that  
*s'appuyer, v.*

wall, it is newly painted WITH oil. — Go INTO my  
room; you will find a letter BEHIND the looking-glass,  
*mirer, m.*

(be so kind as) to bring it to me. — Do not put your-  
*avoir la bonté de*

self BEFORE me, and never speak to any body WITH  
your hat ON your head. — Go FROM me TO Mrs. B.'s,  
and tell her I shall be glad to see her. — No, stay: tell  
her you come FROM my cousin, who has something to  
shew her. — FROM this moment I believe you, but I  
was very angry WITH her when she told me she  
*fâché, adj.*

would not do it. — Be not surprised AT it, she often has  
been accused WITH indifference TOWARDS her best  
friends. — I have read this book FROM the beginning  
TO the end. — We saw the camp FROM THE TOP OF  
the hill. — They have dissolved the army as soon as it  
was resolved that the campaign was OVER. — He al-  
ways goes out WITHOUT me. — He poisoned his bro-  
ther WITH the hope of inheriting his estates. — The  
*hériter, v. bien, m.*

army marched three days and three nights WITHOUT  
stopping. — At last the king, having broken his  
*Enfin, adv.*

battle-axe and sword BY the force of his blows,  
*hâche d'armes, f.*

was knocked down WITH a stone and taken pri-  
*renversé, p.p. fait, p.p.*

soner.

soner. — IN what does happiness consist? — If

you wish to be happy and esteemed IN this world, live  
 LIKE a man of honour and probity. — Thence we  
 went TO France and Italy. — It is reported on all sides  
 that Paris is to be surrounded WITH walls. — My mas-  
 ter comes generally IN the morning. — We are BE-  
 TWEEN fear and hope daily. — Be not unjust TOWARDS  
 your neighbours. — It was ABOUT four o'clock when  
*prochain, m. Il*

we set out. — Take all that you please EXCEPT my  
 sword. — UPON what instrument does your sister play?  
 — She plays very well ON the harpsichord, and she is  
 now learning to play ON the harp. — He will do it FOR  
 two guineas. — I thank you FOR your kindness. — IN  
 France they drink coffee as soon as dinner is OVER. —

*on*

I walk every day NOTWITHSTANDING the bad wea-  
 ther. — I hope you will succeed in your undertaking  
 IN SPITE OF Mrs. Slander. — BESIDES his own money,  
 he spends all his sister's. — It is said that Gibraltar  
 is blocked up BY land and BY sea. — I have passed  
*bloquer, v.*

THROUGH France and Italy. — Let us see whether you  
*sic.*

can jump OVER the table. — You may go and walk  
*sauter, v.*

when the rain is OVER. — William the Second was  
 killed BY an arrow in the New Forest. — We have  
 passed THROUGH Germany. — Look UNDER the doo  
*Allemagne, f.*

and



and you will see it. — Envy, jealousy, and — slander,  
*médifance, f.*

always reign AMONG authors. — What have you done  
DURING my absence? — Your aunt has sent me some  
books FOR you. — WITHOUT him what could I have  
done? — He was so mortified AT the disobedience of his  
sons, that, THROUGH grief, he became ill, and died.  
*tomber, v.*

— IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR me he would not have  
paid you. — Do I not live\* ACCORDING TO the rules  
*vivre, v.* *règle, f.*

you have prescribed? — I found your buckle UNDER  
*prescrire, v.* *boucle, f.*

the chair. — You said you had left it UPON the ta-  
*laisser, v.*

ble. — I have no money ABOUT me. — Did he not  
write to you CONCERNING that affair? — It was TO-  
WARDS the evening when he arrived.

## S E C T. VII.

### O F C O N J U N C T I O N S.

Most of the conjunctions are adverbs and prepositions,  
but always attended by *de* or *que*. They have been di-  
vided into *copulative*, *comparative*, *disjunctive*, *adversa-*  
*tive*, *casual*, *dubitative*, *exceptive*, *conditional*, *continua-*  
*tive*, *conclusive*, &c. Instead of following this arrange-  
ment, it will be of more importance for the scholar to  
understand that different conjunctions require different  
states of the verb. Some require the following verb  
in the *infinitive mood*, others in the *indicative*, and others  
again in the *subjunctive*.

\* See the *N. B.* before the exercises upon the first conjugation.

These require the following verb in the *infinitive mood*.

*Afin de*, in order to.

*à Moins de*, or } unless.

*à Moins que de*, }  
*Avant de*, better } before.

*Avant que de*, }

*Au lieu de*, instead.

*De crainte de*, or } for fear of.

*De peur de*, }

*Excepté de*, except to.

*Faute de*, for want of.

*Jusqu'à*, to that degree that, till.

*Loin de*, far from.

*Plutôt que de*, rather than.

The following require the verb in the *indicative*.

*Ainsi que*,\* as.

*tout Ainsi que*,\* just as.

*Après que*,\* after that, after.

*à Cause que*, or } because.

*parce que*, }

*à Ce que*, according as, or to.

*à Condition que*,\* on or upon the condition that.

*à Mesure que*,\* in proportion as, as.

*Au lieu que*, whereas.

*Aussitôt que*, }

*D'abord que*, } \*as soon as.

*Dès que*, }

*Sitôt que*, }

*Dès le moment que*,\* the moment that.

*Aussi long tems que*,\* as long as.

*Aussi loin que*,\* as far as.

*Attendu que*, considering that, seeing that

*Comme*, or }

*Entant que*, } \*as.

*De façon que*, }

*De manière que*, }

*De sorte que*, }

*Si bien que*, }

*Tellement que*, }

in such a manner that, so that

*Depuis*

*Depuis que*, ever since, since.

*Puisque*, since.

*De même que*, even as.

*D'où vient que*, how comes it to pass that, why.

*Lorsque*, or } \*when.

*Quand*, }

*Mais*, but. †

*Outre que*, besides that.

*à Peine — que*, hardly, scarcely, — but, than, or when.

*Pendant que*, } \*whilst, while.

*Tandis que*, }

*Peut-être que*, perhaps.

*Quand*, } though.

*Quand même*, }

*Que — ne*, than, † only.

*Selon que*, } \*according as.

*Suivant que*, }

*Tant que*, \* as long as.

*Autant que*, \* as much as.

*d'Autant que*, whereas, for so much as, since.

*d'Autant plus — que*, so much more, the more, — as.

*Toutes les fois que*, every time, as often as, whenever.

*Sinon que*, except that.

*Si*, if, in case, whether.

This last conjunction, instead of being repeated in a sentence, is more elegantly rendered by *que*, with the verb following it in the *subjunctive mood*, as, instead of saying,

*Si vous venez chez moi, et si vous ne me trouvez pas,* If you call upon me, and do not find me at home,

it is more elegant to say,

*Si vous venez chez moi, et que vous ne me trouviez pas, &c.*

*Que* must also be repeated in the second part of a sentence, as well as the pronoun, when there is a conjunction

† This conjunction, when beginning a sentence, is always rendered by *mais*. In the middle of a sentence, the word *but* is always rendered by *ne* before the verb and *que* after it.

‡ *Que* before the noun and pronoun, and *ne* before the verb.

in the first part of it; in this case *que* requires the following verb to be put in the same mood as the preceding: ex.

Dès que je l'aurai vu et *As soon as I have seen him*  
 que je lui aurai parlé, and *spoken* to him, I  
 je vous le ferai savoir, will let you know it.  
 Quoiqu'il soit plus riche *Though he be richer than*  
 que vous et qu'il ait de you and *have* better  
 meilleurs amis, friends.

(\*) The conjunctions that have this mark affixed, when followed, in English, by a verb in the present tense of the indicative mood, and connected with another verb denoting futurity, require the verb, which, in English, is put in the present, to be rendered, in French, by the future.

The following require the verb in the *subjunctive mood*.

*Afin que,* } that, in order that, to the end that.  
*Pour que,* }

*Avant que,* before that.

*Au or en cas que,* in case that, if, suppose that.

*à Moins que,†* }  
*Excepté que,* } unless, till.  
*Si ce n'est que,* }

*Que — ne,* }

*Bien que,* }  
*Encore que,* } though, although, for all that.  
*Quoique,* }

*Bien entendu que,* with a proviso that, upon condition that, provided that.

*De crainte que,†* } lest, for fear.  
*De peur que,* }

*Dieu veuille que,* God grant.

*Plaise or plutôt à Dieu que,* please God, or would to God:

*à Dieu ne plaise,* God forbid.

*Hormis que,* } save that.  
*Hors que,* }

*Jusqu'à ce que,* till, until.

† These conjunctions require the negation *ne* before the following verb: ex.

*De crainte, or de peur, qu'ils ne* For fear they come.  
*viennent,*

*À moins qu'il ne le fasse,* Unless he do it.



*Loin que*, far from.

*Moyennant que*, } save that.

*Pourvu que*,

*Nonobstant que*, notwithstanding that.

*Pour peu que*, how little soever.

*Sans que*, without that.

*Soit que*, whether — or.

*Supposons que*, let us suppose that.

*Tant s'en faut que*, it is so far from.

### EXERCISES ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

IN ORDER TO learn well, one must study with a  
*devoir, v.*

great deal of attention. — It will be impossible for you

to learn French UNLESS you be diligent. — Let us  
*de*

breakfast BEFORE we begin (any thing.) — He is gone  
*rien.*

to church INSTEAD OF coming with us. — I would  
not do it FOR FEAR OF displeasing you. — FAR FROM  
exciting them to fight, I did all that I could to

prevent them. — She would do (any thing) (in the) world  
*à se battre, v. pour, p.*

RATHER THAN speak to him. — I love you, BECAUSE  
*tout au*

you behave better THAN your brother does. — He  
*se comporter, v.*

will write to you ON CONDITION THAT he will speedi-  
*prompte-*

ly receive your answer. — My mother will come  
*ment, adv.*

to see you, PROVIDED you promise me to go to the play

with

with her.—We were HARDLY arrived WHEN it began to rain.—I called at your sister's AS you (had) desired  
à passer, v.

me. — So THAT you saw her and spoke to her. — She said nothing to me, EXCEPT THAT it was impossible for her to do what you required of her. — WHEN you

are going to undertake an affair of importance, permit me to tell you that you ought to consult your  
de consulter, v.

friends BEFORE you begin it. — I will explain these rules to you AS we read them. — WHEN she had done speaking she (fell asleep.) — AS SOON AS  
fini, p.p. de s'endormir, v.

they had taken the general, all the army surrendered. — We will set out AS SOON AS we have dined. — AS LONG AS you (keep company with) those people, never  
fréquenter, v.

come to my house.—How COMES IT TO PASS THAT I have not seen you till now?—You (look at) me AS  
regarder, v.

IF I had taken your book. — I avoid slanderers AS  
éviter, v. médifant, m.

MUCH AS I fear them.—You are quite altered SINCE  
changé, p.p.

I saw you last. — You must stay at home  
dernièrement, adv.

SINCE you are\* not well. — Did you not see Mr. Brown this morning? — Yes, BUT I could not speak to him. — If you could give me BUT the half of the money you owe me I should be very much obliged to

\* See the exercises on the reflected verbs.

you. — HOW COMES IT THAT your sister has not yet sent me the books I lent her a fortnight ago? — AS SOON AS I have dressed myself and breakfasted I will go to see him. — Your brother was† BUT twenty years old WHEN he was made a captain. — He had more experience THAN you have. — Send Miss White to me WHEN she has done writing. — WHILST you play *fini, p. p. de*

and lose your money your sister is learning her lesson. — We must pity him who has no talent, and ONLY despise him who has no virtue. — Play on the harpsichord WHILE I write my letters. — If you loved to *fin, m.*

study AS MUCH AS you love to play I should have (no occasion) to complain. — I punish you AS you deserve. *aucun sujet, m.*

— You will never be respected UNLESS you forsake the bad company you keep. — AS LONG AS *abandonner, v.*

you behave well; you will be dear to me. — That *se comporter, v.*

would give me more pleasure THAN you imagine. — *s'imaginer, v.*

I do not think that true philosophy may be less useful *penser, v.*

to women than men, BUT I remark that the most *remarquer, v.*

part of those who meddle with it are BUT very bad *se mêler, v. de*

\* See the verb *y avoir* conjugated impersonally.

† See the remark after the verb *être*, to be.

philosophers, without becoming better wives for it. — I see the king and queen EVERY TIME I go to Windsor. — If your father do not arrive to-day, and IF you want money, I will lend you some. — He inter-  
*avoir besoin*

rupts me AS OFTEN AS I speak. — BESIDES THAT he never studies, and is always in the country, he has not so much wit as his sister. — If you should see your sister, and speak to her, &c. — I will explain to you every difficulty, (IN ORDER) THAT you may take courage and learn well. — If you study and take pains, I assure you that you will learn the French language in a very short time. — Carry that money to Mrs. N. (IN ORDER) THAT she may pay the writing-master WHEN he comes. — Did you not receive your goods BEFORE war was declared? — In case Mr. — calls  
*passer, v.*

here, tell him I am not at home, and ask him WHEN he will come to see me at Richmond. — You cannot finish (to-night) UNLESS I help you. — If you love me,  
*ce soir* *aider, v.*

and are willing to oblige me, do not go to France with her. — She shall not go into the country UNLESS I go with her. — I give you that penknife, ON CONDITION THAT you will not make a bad use of it. — I shall not set out TILL I have dined. — I will not lend it to you UNLESS you promise me to return it to her soon. —  
*de rendre, v.*

They are not happy THOUGH they be rich. — How COMES IT that as we grow older we do not grow  
*devenir, v.*



wiser? — **THOUGH** you should have the best master in England, and learn all the rules of the grammar, if you do not put them in practice you will never speak good French. — **WE** avoided an engagement **FOR FEAR**,  
*éviter, v.*

or **LEST**, we should be taken, their force being superior to ours. — This proceeding was **THE MORE** extraordinary **AS** it was contrary to the laws of the kingdom. — **WOULD TO GOD** I had been there, I would have conquered or perished. — **GOD FORBID** I should blame your conduct. — **GOD GRANT** you may succeed in all your undertakings and be not disappointed in your hopes. — Why did you tell me my father was arrived, **NOTWITHSTANDING** you knew the contrary? — I am going to write **TILL** we go out. — **HOWEVER** **LITTLE** you give her, she is always pleased. — I will give you leave to dance, **PROVIDED** you promise me not to overheat yourself. — Can you touch it **WITH-**  
*de s'echauffer, v.*

**OUT** my brother's perceiving it? — **SUPPOSE** we dine here to-day, and to-morrow at our house. — He<sup>s</sup> is so **FAR** FROM despising<sup>t</sup> her<sup>s</sup>. — **WHETHER** God raise  
*élever, v.*

the thrones or pull them down, **WHETHER** he  
*abaïsser, v.*

communicate his power to the princes or withdraw  
*puissance, f. retirer, v.*

it to himself, and **ONLY** leave them their own weakness, he teaches them their duty in a sovereign manner and worthy of him.  
*de, p.*

N. B.

*N. B.* It is here necessary to observe, that verbs denoting *wish, will, command, desire, doubt, fear, ignorance, entreaty, persuasion, pretension, surprisè, &c.* always require the conjunction *que* after them, with the following verb in the *subjunctive mood*. In short, in those *dispositions* of mind where the will is chiefly concerned, or whenever we express a thing with some degree of *doubt or hesitation*, then the verb, which in English is put in the infinitive mood, the participle active, or the future tense, must, in French, be put in the *subjunctive mood*: ex.

*Je veux qu'il fasse cela,* I will have\* him *do* that.  
*Je doute que vous le fassiez,* I doubt of your *doing* it.  
*Je ne crois pas qu'elle vienne,* I do not believe she *will* come.

See *FALLOIR*, and the rules after it.

*Qui, que, or dont*, preceded by a superlative, require the following verb in the *subjunctive mood*: ex.

*C'est la plus belle femme qui puisse se voir,* She is the *handsomest* woman that *can* be seen,  
*je connoisse,* or *que* *man that can* be seen,  
*or that I know.*

When *qui* stands as a nominative to a verb, denoting a condition, it also requires the following verb to be put in the *subjunctive mood*: ex.

*Je veux une femme qui soit belle,* I will have a wife *that is* handsome;  
 that is, *on condition, provided,* she be handsome.

\* It may be seen, by this instance, that, after the verb *vouloir*, the verb *to have* is not expressed, but rendered in French by *que*. It must also be observed, that the sign of the future tense *shall*, when it refers to the will of a person, and meaning *I shall, I do not choose, do you choose?* &c. must be rendered in French by the present tense of the indicative mood of the verb *vouloir*, according to the number and person, with the following verb in the *subjunctive mood*: ex.

*Je veux que vous me montriez cette lettre,* You *shall* shew me that letter, that is to say, *I choose* you should shew me that letter.

*Je ne veux pas que votre frère sorte* Your brother *shall* not go out to-day.

*Voulez-vous que je danse?* *Shall* I dance? that is to say, *do you choose* I should dance? &c.

## EXERCISES UPON THE PRECEDING RULES.

- I do not believe that your mother will arrive to-day.  
 — She wishes you may succeed in all your undertakings. — You would have her return to-morrow, but that is impossible. — I fear she (will go away) without speaking to me. — I will have your father know what you have done, you must stay here till he comes.  
 — I much fear he will come sooner than you expect him. — Do not you say you are surprised that he has not written to you? for my part, I do not wonder at it; for he is the most negligent man I know. — Do you think he will succeed and obtain the place he aims at? — Your mother would have you come directly: why do not you come then? — You wish him to pay you; he has no money; I am obliged to lend him some every day. — If you believe him to be your friend, why then do not you follow his advice? — It is necessary for you to go there, and assure him that he has done nothing that ought (to make me angry.) — I wonder that Mr. R. has not yet asked your sister in marriage. — He is the most charitable man we have in this neighbourhood,



hood, his purse is always open to any one who is poor and industrious.—Did you not tell me you (sought for)  
*chercher, v.*

a master who had a good pronunciation and a great deal of patience? — I know nobody that improves  
*faire des progrès* more than Miss K——; and, when she was learning French, had she learned it by rule, she would speak, write, and translate, now much better than Miss S—, though she was two years in France. — If you meet her, and\* she speak to you, do not answer her. — Order her to do it. — I absolutely intend that she shall  
*vouloir, v.*

go there directly, and tell him, that, whether he be ill or well, I will have him set out as soon as he has received my letter. — Do you imagine we are sure they  
*s'imaginer, v.*

will come to-night? — I will have you see my house, and tell me what you think of it. — Has not your brother some friends to whom he can trust? — Do you  
*se fier, v.*

think it is possible for you (to bring it about?) —  
*croire, v. de en venir à bout, v.*

Your father has bought the finest horse that I have ever seen. — It is just we should suffer, since we deserve it.  
*souffrir, v. mériter, v.*

— I do not say I have seen it. — He (was afraid) lest  
*craindre, v. que ne* you should come whilst he was (gone out.) — You did  
*sortir, v.*

\* See the remark on the conjunction *si*, if.



not think that she wanted to deceive you when she  
*vouloir, v.*

told you that? — I wonder you should doubt that  
*être surpris, v.*

it is your daughter who, &c. — Is there any lady of  
five-and-twenty years that appears more reasonable than  
she does? — My father would have me walk all the

way. — Our master has ordered that we should get up  
to-morrow morning early. — Do you think my mother  
will let us go to the Hall next week? — Your sister  
shall go with me to Croydon and not you. — If you ever  
choose a friend, I wish you may choose one whom you  
esteem and who may be an honest man. — Were Mr. S.  
discreet and willing to undertake that affair, I would  
communicate it to him immediately. — It will be better  
for you to go and speak to him yourself whilst he is in  
town; I do not doubt of his undertaking it, he is the  
most diligent and the most careful man we have in this  
country. — However, I would not have you do things  
too precipitately: consult somebody who is your friend  
and on whom you can rely. — Were I certain that you  
would speak to him about it, I would desire him to  
come and dine with us to-morrow; for, I am to see him  
to-night at his brother's. — Shall my brother shew you  
his translation? — Do you know any body who is going  
to France? I have something to send to my sister. —

Yes, I know a gentleman who is going to Paris: shall  
I tell him to (call upon) you? — I am certain that he  
*de passer chez, v.*

will satisfy you : are you certain he will satisfy me ? —  
 Your uncle is very glad you have written to your father.  
 — I will give you no rest unless you be reconciled with  
*que ne*  
 your mother. — I do not believe it is she who has done  
 it. — Do you believe it ? — Babylon was the finest city  
 that ever was built. — The best reason I can give  
*pouvoir, v.*  
 you is, that I was not well. — If you lend me a  
*se porter, v.*  
 horse, lend me one that goes well.

---

## S E C T. IX.

### O F I N T E R J E C T I O N S.

Interjections, as before observed, serve to express  
 the sudden emotions of the soul.

There are several sorts, viz.

Of joy, grief, pain, admiration, aversion, silence, call-  
 ing, encouraging, warning, &c. such as,

*Allons, gai!* come, be cheerful!

*ça courage!* come, come on!

*Bon!* good!

*Ah, mon Dieu!* oh, my God!

*Ah, ouïda!* ay, marry!

*Ha, quelle joie!* oh, joy!

*ô ciel!* O heaven!

*Fi! fie!* fy upon!

*Hola, ho!* ho there!

*Malheur à!* woe to!

*Miséricorde!* bless me!

*Prenez garde, gare!* have a care!

*Paix, chut, si si!* hush, hush!

*Silence! Silence!*

### EXERCISES

## EXERCISES UPON THE INTERJECTIONS.

COME, friends, let us rejoice! — GOOD! here are  
*se réjouir, v.*  
 news for you, brother. — FY, FY! Robert, you do  
 not think of what you say. — OH! that modesty is  
*pusser, v. à que*  
 a lovely virtue! — Why do you not endeavour to ac-  
*s'efforcer, v. de ac-*  
 quire it? — ALAS! who could express the torments  
*querir, v.*  
 I suffer here? — WOE TO you! usurers, misers, un-  
*usurier, m. avare, m.*  
 just possessors of (other people's) goods, hearken to these  
*autrui, pro. bien, m. écouter, v.*  
 words, The treasures of iniquity (will be of no service)  
*paraître, f. ne servir de rien*  
 to you. — OH! (lazy people,) go to the ant, confi-  
*parassant, adj. fourmi, f.*  
 der what she does, and learn from her wisdom and in-  
 dustry. — BLESS ME! I am undone! — HUSH there!  
*perdre, p. p.*  
 SILENCE! — OH! the dismal effects which laziness  
*funeste, adj.*  
 produces! — How tremendous an office is that  
*terrible, adj. le*  
 of a judge! What wisdom, what integrity, what  
 knowledge, what sagacity of mind, what experience,  
*science, f.*  
 (are required!)

*ne faut-il pas avoir, v.*

# REMARKS AND EXERCISES ON THE WORDS *de, à, AND pour.*

Having, in this manner, gone through the respective parts of speech, there will be no necessity for a syntax. It will however be necessary to give some rules for ascertaining the proper usage of the particles *de* or *à*, and the preposition *pour*, before a verb in the infinitive mood, and then to point out, by way of exercise, some idiomatical expressions that most frequently occur in the French tongue.\*

When two verbs come together in a sentence, the latter, having no subject expressed or understood, must be put in the infinitive mood, whether the English sign *to* be prefixed or not.

In the following cases, the infinitive mood must never be preceded by a particle.

First, when the verb in the infinitive stands nominative to another verb: ex.

*Aimer est un verbe, To love is a verb.*

Secondly, after the following verbs, *aller, croire, devoir, faire, il faut, savoir, valoir mieux, venir, pouvoir, oser, vouloir*, and *penser*, when rendered by *to be like or near*.

## EXERCISES UPON THIS RULE.

To know how to give seasonably is a talent every body has not. — To be able to live with one's self and to know how to live with others are the two great sciences of life. — I had rather do it now than later.

*aimer mieux, v.*

— Why dare you not undertake it? I think you may

*pouvoir, v.*

\* The great number of idiomatical expressions in the French language has long been considered as an almost insuperable difficulty in the way of its easy acquisition; however, this difficulty is daily decreasing; these peculiar expressions are now giving way to a regular construction, and are very little used by the best writers.

succeed.



succeed. — He says he will lend you his gun with all  
*réussir, v.* *fusil, m.*

his heart, because you know how to make use of it.  
*se servir, v.*

— Aristotle, though so great a philosopher, was never  
 able to penetrate the cause of that prodigy. — Tell him  
 that he may set out when (he pleases.) — You never  
*il lui plaira, v.*

could come more seasonably. — We are to go to  
*pouvoir, v.*

Vauxhall to-morrow. — I am going to see your brother.

— (Is it not better) to set out now than to wait  
*valoir mieux, v.* *de attendre, v.*

any longer? — If you think to oblige her, you mistake. —  
*plus* *se tromper, v.*

We were to have had a ball yesterday, but my sister  
 was not well. — You did very right; for, you ought  
*bien, adv. car, c.* *devoir, v.*

not to speak to him. — I had like to have fallen  
*penser, v.*

twenty times coming here. — To instruct, to please,  
 and move the passions, are the three principal qualifica-  
 tions requisite in an orator. — If you would read this  
*vouloir, v.*

book, I could lend it to you for four or five days.  
*pouvoir, v.*

The particle *de* is put before a verb in the infinitive  
 mood: first, when any of the following words, *of*, *from*,  
 or *with*, are used before the participle active of any verb.  
 (See the *N. B.* upon the participle active.)

Secondly, after a noun substantive joined immediately  
 to a verb, either without any article at all, or with the  
 following articles, *le*, *la*, or *les*.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, after these and the like adjectives, *decent, glad, impossible, necessary, sorry, worthy, vexed, &c.*

Fourthly, after the following verbs: *to advise, to apprehend, to bid, to cease, to command, to conjure, to counsel, to defend, to defer, to deserve, to desire, to endeavour, to entreat, to fear, to hasten, to long, to order, to permit, to persuade, to pray, to pretend, to promise, to propose, to refuse, to remember, to threaten, to tell, to warn, to undertake, &c.* and the greatest part of the reflected verbs.

And, lastly, after the conjunction *que*, preceded by the comparative degree.

### EXERCISES ON THIS RULE.

I have desired your brother to lend me some money.  
*prier, v.*

— My mother ordered me to tell you to go and speak  
*ordonner, v.*

to her directly. — Did you not permit him to go out  
*sortir, v.*

this morning. — I am surprised to find you so ill. — I  
have not desired you to play. — Bid your sister to  
*Dire, v. à*

send me my book. — We were afraid of displeasing  
you. — What do you advise me to do in such a case?  
*conseiller, v.*

— My sister and I intend to (call upon) you on Fri-  
*passer, v. chez, p.*

day next. — I am very glad to hear you are bet-  
*apprendre, v.*

ter. — She does not pretend to speak French as well  
*se piquer, v.*

as you. — We are tired of repeating to you the same  
things so often. — If you finish your exercise soon, you  
will have the pleasure of walking whilst the others will

have the trouble of working. — It is necessary to tell her not to go there (any more;) for, she would be in  
*ne plus, adv.*

danger of losing her life. — Endeavour to please your

masters by your application to study. — Do not you remember having said you would carry me to the  
*de mener, v.*

camp? — Do not they deserve to be encouraged who  
*mériter, v.*

undertake to serve the public? — We are all glad to hear you have overcome your enemies; we should have been sorry to have heard the contrary. — What a fool

you are to grieve so, when you have so much reason  
*s'affliger, v.*

to rejoice. — When do you purpose to set out for the country? — Never expect to speak French well unless you practise very much. — I shall never refuse to do  
*rendre, v.*

you a service as long as it is in my power. — Have you a mind to do what you have promised me? — I can-  
*envie, f.*

not give you the book you asked me for, my brother has not (thought fit) to send it to me back again. —  
*juger à-propos, v.*

I desired you to bring your sister with you; why did you not? — I forbid you to speak or write to him  
*défendre, v.*

(any more.) — Would you not be very glad to read  
*davantage, adv.*

\* Do it is understood, and must be expressed in French.

and

and speak Italian? — Condemn the opinion of no one hastily, but endeavour to regulate your own by the  
*s'efforcer, v.*

line of truth. — Who can hinder me from speaking  
*vérité, f. empêcher, v.*

or writing to her? — (Give me leave) to tell you that  
*Permettre, v.*

you do very wrong to disoblige your aunt. — He  
*mal, adv.*

(was not contented) to demolish the temple and pull  
*se contenter, v. a-*

down the statues, but, &c. — Is there any thing  
*battre, v.*

more glorious than to change anger into friendship? —

(I long) to see your mother, and tell her all that I  
*Il me tarde, v.*

think (about it.)

*en, pro.*

—The particle *à* is to be placed before a verb in the infinitive mood: first, after the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have, immediately followed by a substantive or an adverb, expressing a futurity in the action: ex.

*J'ai plusieurs lettres à écrire*, I have many letters to write.

Secondly, after nouns substantive joined to the verb *avoir*, or nouns adjective joined to the verb *être*, signifying to be addicted, apt, bent, diligent, disposed, dreadful, easy, fit, hard, inclined, quick, ready, subject, used, &c.

Thirdly, after the following adjectives, admirable, good, dexterous, handsome, scarce, the last, the first, the second, &c.

And, lastly, after the following verbs, to amuse, to aspire or aim at, to begin, to condemn, to continue or go on, to compel or force, to design or destine, to dispose, to employ or spend, to encourage, to engage, to excite, to ex-



*hort, to help, to induce, to invite, to learn, to please, to serve, to take a pleasure, a delight, in or to, to teach, to think, &c.*

## EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING VERBS.

Come here, Paul, I have something to communicate to you. — We have much to fear in our present situation, and a great many hazards to run. — I cannot go to the play to-night; for, I have five or six visits to pay. — Is there any thing pleasanter to behold than the *rendre, v.*

flux and reflux of the sea? — We ought to learn how to subdue our passions, to conquer our desires, and to *subjuguier, v.*

suffer patiently the most cruel misfortunes. — She is *disgrace, f.*

always the first to (find fault) with what I do. — *trouver à redire à*

Do not gather that apple, it is not yet good to eat. — Mr. N. told me you had a country-house to let. — *louer, v.*

Mr. F. is a very agreeable man, always ready to serve his friends, but he has the misfortune to be inclined to gaming. — Your master does not love you, because you are not diligent in learning your lesson. — We had for a long time nothing to eat but the fruits which we had gathered. — The greatest part of men spend their time either in doing nothing, or doing what they ought not to do. — What you say of her is very hard to be believed. — Tell him, I have no com-  
*difficile, adj.*

plaints

plaints to make about his conduct. — Why do you oblige  
<sup>de</sup> her to ask my pardon since she is not inclined to do it  
 herself? — I believe she takes a delight in tormenting  
 me. — Life is so short that we should employ all our  
 days in preparing ourselves for the other world. — There  
 is no more danger to fear. — Use yourself, said a father  
*s'acoutumer, v.*

to his son, to practise virtue; that alone will help you  
 to bear with patience all the vicissitudes of fortune.  
*supporter, v.*

— Endeavour to please your masters. — Never amuse  
 yourself in reading bad books. — You can never spend  
*passer, v.*  
 your time better than in reading and studying the his-  
 tory of your own country. — Learn to speak well; but,  
 above all, to speak truth. — That science, which teaches  
*dire, v.*

us to see things as they are, is highly worthy of cultiva-  
 tion. — An honest man always takes pleasure in obli-  
 ging his friends. — Does your master teach you to  
 translate English into French? — Do you begin to  
 translate French well? — Why did you not oblige him  
 to pay you what he owes you? — Why do ye not  
 (get ready) to set out with us? — I love to discourse  
*s'appréter, v.* *s'entretenir, v.*

with polite and sensible people.

*N. B.* For the sake of euphony, the following verbs,  
*to begin, to continue, to constrain, to engage, to exhort, to*  
*compel or force, to endeavour, to oblige,* may be succeeded  
 by *de* or *à*, as most convenient.

The preposition *pour* is to be used before a verb in the infinitive mood, when it expresses the *cause*, the *design*, or the *end*, and then the English particle *to* may be expressed by *in order to*, *to the end*, or *for to*. This preposition is also used after the adverbs *enough*, *on purpose*, *too*, *too much*, or *less*; and before an infinitive, in the beginning of a period.

### EXERCISES ON THESE RULES.

I will do every thing in my power to please him. — Mrs. B— has too much pride to confess she (is in the *avoir* wrong.) — To know geography well, one must, &c. *tort.*

— I assure you that I came on purpose to see you. — She will do all that is in her power to oblige you, and to prove to you that she is truly your friend. — The wicked live to die, but the righteous die to live. — She has vanity enough to believe all that you tell her. — I wrote to you sometime ago to let you know that your *faire, v.*

brothers were arrived. — He promised me that he would do every thing to deserve the honour of your protection. — I sent yesterday my servant to your aunt's, to desire her to send me back again the book I lent her a month ago, but she was not at home. — We did all that *faire, v.*

we could to pass the river, but we could not (bring it *venir à* about.) — To convince you that I am ready to do you *bout de, v.*

any service, (be so kind as) to command me. — Why *avoir la bonté de*

did

did you not punish her for having done what you forbade her to do? — A man should live a century at least  
*vivre, v. siècle, m.*

to know the world, and many other centuries, to know how to make a proper use of that knowledge.

## IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS ON THE VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE.

*Avoir mal à la tête*, to have the head-ache, or a pain in one's head.

*Avoir mal aux oreilles*, to have sore ears, or a pain in one's ears.

*Avoir mal aux yeux*, to have sore eyes, or a pain in one's eyes.

*Avoir mal au nez*, to have a sore nose, or a pain in one's nose.

*Avoir mal à la bouche*, to have a sore mouth, or a pain in one's mouth.

*Avoir mal aux dents, &c.* to have the tooth-ache, &c.

We say, after the same manner,

*Avoir froid aux mains, aux pieds, &c. ex.*

*J'ai froid à la tête, aux mains, et aux pieds,* My head, my hands, and my feet, are cold.

*Avoir beau*, to be vain: ex.

*Vous avez beau parler,* It is in vain for you to talk.

*Avoir beaucoup de peine*, to have much ado.

*Avoir de la peine à:* ex.

*J'ai de la peine à vous croire,* I can hardly believe you.

*Avoir besoin de*, to want, to have occasion for.

*Avoir la bonté de*, (*daigner*,) to be so kind as.

*Avoir connoissance, avis, de*, to have notice of.

*Avoir cours*, to take, to be in vogue.

*Avoir la mine de*, to be like, to look like: ex.

*Vous avez la mine d'être* You look like a man of un-  
 intelligent, derstanding.

*Avoir*



*Avoir bonne mine*, to look well: ex.

*Vous avez très bonne mine aujourd'hui*, You look very well to-day.

*Avoir plus de peur que de mal*, to be more afraid than hurt.

*Avoir raison*, to be in the right.

*Avoir tort*, to be in the wrong.

*Avoir soin*, to take care.

*N'avoir que faire de*, to have no occasion or business of  
or for.

*N'avoir garde de*, or } are ex- } to be sure not, or

*Se garder bien de*, } pressed by } by no means.

### EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

I could not call upon him this morning, because I had A PAIN IN MY head. — My brother would have come with me, but he has A SORE leg, and is obliged to keep his bed. — I heard your mother had THE TOOTH-ACHE: is it true? — No, madam, but she has A PAIN IN HER side, which prevents her from going out. — I have not yet finished my exercise; for, MY HANDS WERE SO COLD that I could not write another word; besides that, I HAD MUCH ADO to find my books; I did not know where to look for them. — IT WILL BE IN VAIN FOR YOU to write to me, I never will answer you. — I CAN HARDLY believe what you tell me. — IT IS IN VAIN FOR me to speak to her, she still goes her own way. — Miss N. cried very much yesterday, but I think she WAS MORE AFRAID THAN HURT. — IT HAS BEEN IN VAIN FOR him to torment your sister, she never would tell him what happened to her when she was at Mr. P—'s. — IN VAIN I give my-  
self

self trouble, I am not the richer for it. — Your sister does not LOOK SO WELL to-day as she did yesterday. — AM I NOT IN THE RIGHT to go there no more? — I WILL TAKE CARE to prevent them from coming here. — YOU ARE IN THE WRONG not to ask for his horse, he would lend it to you. — Why should I borrow his horse, when I have one of my own? — I HAVE NO OCCASION FOR his. — BE SO KIND as to carry that letter to Mr. H——'s, but BE SURE NOT to tell him who sent you. — I hope you will by NO MEANS go there again, after what has happened to you. — He was so altered, that she HAD MUCH ADO to recollect him, but he now begins TO LOOK VERY WELL. — Somebody having advised Philip, Alexander's father, to banish from his states a man who had spoken ill of him; I SHALL BY NO MEANS DO IT, answered he; he would go every where and speak ill of me.

### ON ETRE, TO BE.

*Etre* { *à son aise,*  
*en bonne posse,*  
*bien dans ses affaires,* } to be in good circumstances.

*Etre bien auprès de quelqu'un,* to be in great favour with one.

*Etre mal avec quelqu'un,* to be out with one.

*Etre à charge à quelqu'un,* to be chargeable, troublesome, or a burden, to one.

*Etre but à but,* to be equal.

*Etre de moitié,* to go halves.

*Etre à la portée du fusil, du canon,* to be within gun-shot.

*Etre à la portée de la voix,* to be within call.

*Etre* { *à la veille de,*  
*sur le point de,* } to be upon the brink,  
 or very near to.

*Etre en état de,*  
*Avoir le moyen,* } to afford.

### EXERCISES

## EXERCISES UPON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Your brother IS IN GOOD CIRCUMSTANCES NOW. — Somebody told me he WAS IN GREAT FAVOUR WITH the king. — Yes, it is true, but HE IS OUT with my father, because HE IS TROUBLESOME to the family. — Well, Mr. R. and he ARE EQUALS. — I thought Mr. A., and Mrs. D. WENT HALVES in that affair, but I heard the contrary. — Suffer me to tell you, you do very wrong to treat her as you do, you undoubtedly must have forgotten she IS IN the queen's FAVOUR. — Well, if she BE IN the queen's FAVOUR, do you imagine I am not to tell her what I think of her conduct? — The two fleets WERE WITHIN GUN-SHOT, and very NEAR beginning the engagement, when we left them. — We WILL BE WITHIN CALL. — Why do you not take a coach now and then? said she to me. — I would willingly take one sometimes, replied I to her, but I cannot AFFORD it.

## ON FAIRE, TO MAKE, OR DO.

*Faire cas de*, to value, to esteem.

*Faire un tour de promenade*, to take a walk.

*Faire le malade*, to sham sickness.

*Faire l'école buissonnière*, to play truant.

*Faire beaucoup de chemin*, to go a great way.

*Faire le bel esprit*, to set up for a wit.

*Faire fond sur quelqu'un*, to rely upon one.

*Faire savoir*, (*envoyer dire*,) to let one know, to inform, to send word.

*Faire voile*, or  
*Mettre à la voile*, } to set sail.

*Faire faire*, to bespeak, to get made, to oblige one to do.

*Faire*

*Faire de son pis*, to do one's worst.

*ne Faire que de*, to be just, or

*venir de*, to have but just: ex.

*Il ne fait que d'arriver*, He is but just arrived.

*ne Faire que*, to do nothing but.

*se Faire des amis, des ennemis*, to get friends, enemies.

*se Faire des affaires*, to bring one's self into trouble.

*s'en Faire accroire*, to be conceited, to have a good opinion of one's self,

*c'en est Fait de moi*, I am undone.

*c'en étoit Fait de lui*, he was undone.

*c'en fera Fait d'elle*, she will be undone.

*c'en serois Fait de nous*, we should be undone.

The English verb, *to cause*, preceding the verb *to be*, immediately followed by a participle passive, is rendered, in French, by the verb *faire*, and then the verb *to be* is not expressed, but the participle passive is turned into the infinitive mood: ex.

*Il lui fit couper la tête*, He caused his head to be cut off.

## EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Do not lose that ring, for, I VALUE it much; it is a particular friend of yours who gave it me. — I would go and TAKE A WALK, if I were well. — Do you not SHAM SICKNESS now and then? — Did not your brother PLAY TRUANT last week? — That man GOES A GREAT WAY for a trifle. — Mr. P. SETS UP FOR A WIT wherever he goes. — You may RELY UPON what I tell you. — LET ME KNOW whether he will pay you or not. — WE SHALL SET SAIL about the fifteenth of the next month. — Why did not you BESPEAK three or four pair of shoes more? — SEND WORD TO your brother, or LET him KNOW, that there is a letter for him here. — I will give



give him an exercise, and OBLIGE HIM TO DO it in my presence. — She told me, if she WERE OBLIGED TO DO it, she WOULD DO HER WORST. — We were BUT JUST come in when it began to rain. — You DO NOTHING BUT play from morning till night. — That young lady WILL GET friends every where. — If you do not take care, you WILL BRING YOURSELF INTO TROUBLE. — Permit me to tell you that they ARE TOO MUCH CONCEITED. — Your brother IS UNDONE if his master come to know of it. — In 1606, King James caused the oath of allegiance to be drawn up; and, in 1621, summoned a parliament, in which were formed the two parties called Whigs and Tories.

---

### ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

*Aimer mieux*, to have rather, to choose rather.

*Se donner bien des airs*, to take a great deal upon one's

*Il ne faut pas s'étonner*, it is no wonder. self.

*Il me tarde de*, I long to.

*Penser*, to be like. (Followed by a verb in the infinitive mood.)

*S'en prendre à*, to lay the fault or blame upon one, to come upon one for.

*S'y bien prendre*, to go the right way to work.

*S'y prendre mal*, to go the wrong way to work.

*S'y prendre tout autrement*, to go quite a different, or another, way to work.

*Prendre en mauvaise part*, to take amiss.

*Venir à bout de*, to bring about.

## EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

I RATHER CHOOSE to set out now than later. — She told me she HAD RATHER do any thing than speak to Mr. L. — They HAD RATHER have had you stay in Italy two or three years longer. — Do not you think MRS. H. TAKES A GREAT DEAL UPON HERSELF? — IT IS NO WONDER that I do not speak French so well as you; you have been several years in France and I never was there. — I hope your brother will succeed in his undertaking; for, he GOES THE RIGHT WAY TO WORK, and I am certain that he WILL BRING IT ABOUT. — Your cousin, on the contrary, will always be poor; for, he GOES THE WRONG WAY TO WORK in every thing he undertakes. — She LONGS to see your father, and tell him how well you have behaved all the time of his absence. — I HAD LIKE to have been killed in coming here. — If he lose, he WILL LAY THE BLAME UPON YOU. — Why do you LAY THE BLAME UPON her? she was not even in the room when that happened. — Should not your sister succeed, whom WOULD SHE LAY THE FAULT UPON? — You say you LONG to speak French; and I too, I assure you. — I LONG to tell you something, nevertheless I do not know how to communicate it to you for fear of disobliging you. — When you have a mind to tell me something disagreeable you should GO QUITE A DIFFERENT WAY TO WORK. — I beg of you not TO TAKE AMISS what I tell you. — Do not begin a thing unless you are sure TO BRING IT ABOUT.

## ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

*Se passer de*, to do without, or to be easy without.

*Savoir bon gré*, to take kindly of.

*Trouver mauvais que*, to take ill of.\*

*Tenir maison*, to be a housekeeper.

*Tenir boutique*, to be a shopkeeper.

*Ne tenir qu'à*, { to be in one's power,  
to lie in one's power: ex.

*Il ne tient qu'à moi, à vous, à lui, à elle, &c.* It is in my, your, his, her, power, &c.

*Il ne tient pas à moi, à vous, &c. que,* It is not my, your, fault, &c. if,†

*S'en tenir à*, to stand to.

*Vouloir du bien à*, to wish one well.

*En vouloir à*, to have a spite against.

*Je souhaiterais pouvoir*, I wish I could.

*Il y va, il y alloit, de votre vie*, your life is, was, at stake.

*Il y va, il y alloit, de mon honneur*, my honour is, was, concerned in it.

*Je ne laisse pas de*, I nevertheless, or, for all that.

## EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

When I have wine, I drink some; but, when I have none, I AM EASY WITHOUT.—If you will BE SO KIND AS TO write to my father, to let him know my situation, I SHALL TAKE IT KINDLY OF you. — I WISH I COULD do you that service, I would do it with all my heart. — I hope you WILL NOT TAKE IT ILL IF I write to your uncle at the same time. — I SHALL STAND TO what you say. — He HAS BEEN A HOUSE-

\* With the following verb in the subjunctive.

† With the following verb in the subjunctive, and *ne* before it.

KEEPER these five-and-twenty years, — How little forever you send him to prison, he will TAKE IT KINDLY OF YOU. — IT IS IN HER POWER to live in the country and be very happy there. — IT WILL SOON LIE IN YOUR POWER to make us happy. — I assure you it SHALL NOT BE MY FAULT IF you do not succeed; for, I WISH YOU WELL. — Since it LIES IN YOUR POWER to recommend Mr. P. to your friend, why do you not do it? — When you see him, you may assure him that, since it IS IN MY POWER to do it, I will not forget him. — YOU HAVE A SPITE AGAINST my brother; because IT WAS IN HIS POWER two or three times to oblige you, and he never would. — I WISH I COULD persuade you how sorry he was for it; but his honour WAS CONCERNED in not doing it; and, though you be very angry with him, he would, NEVERTHELESS, (or, FOR ALL THAT,) do you service if it were IN HIS POWER. — Every body admires her humanity; for, though he has behaved in so ungrateful a manner towards her, she would, NEVERTHELESS, have done him service if he had lived.

---

### GENERAL AND PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON DIFFERENT SUBJECTS.

Of the UNDERSTANDING of LANGUAGES.  
*Intelligence, &c.*

The understanding of languages serves (for an) introduction to all the sciences. By it we come, with  
*parvenir, v.*



very little trouble, at the knowledge of a great many fine things, which have cost those who invented them a great deal of pains. By it, all times and countries  
*siècle, m.*

lie open to us. By it we become, in some means,  
*être, v.*

contemporary to all ages and inhabitants of all kingdoms. It (enables) us to converse with the most  
*mettre en état*

learned men of all antiquity, who seem to have lived and laboured for us. We find in them many masters, whom (we are allowed) to consult at leisure; many  
*il nous est permis*

friends, who are always at hand, and whose useful and agreeable conversation improves the mind. It informs  
*enrichir, v.*

us of a thousand curious subjects, and teaches us equally how (to make an advantage) of the virtues and  
*profiter, v.*

vices of mankind. Without the assistance of languages, all these oracles are dumb to us, and all these  
*pour, p.*

treasures (locked up;) and, for want of having the  
*fermer, v.*

key which alone can open us the door (to them,) we  
*en, p.*

remain poor in the midst of so many riches, and ignorant in the midst of all the sciences.

### OF STUDY.

We (come into the world) surrounded with a cloud  
*naître, v.*

of ignorance, which is increased by the false prejudices of  
of

of a bad education. By study, the former is dispersed and the latter corrected. It gives proportion and exactness, *justesse, f.*

to our thoughts and reasonings; instructs how to range in due order whatever we have to speak or write, *dire, v.*

and presents us with the brightest sages of antiquity as patterns for our conduct, whom, in this sense, *modèle, m.*

we may well call, with Seneca, the masters and teachers *précepteur, m.*

of mankind. But the usefulness of study is not confined to what we call science; it renders us also more fit for business and employment; besides, though this *de plus, adv. quand, c.*

study were of no other use but (the acquiring) a ha-

bit of labour, (the softening) the pains of it, the (pro-

curing) a steadiness of mind, and (conquering) our aver-

sions to application or a sedentary life, or whatever else seems (to lay a restraint upon) us, it would still be *assujettir, v.*

of very great advantage. In reality, it draws us off *retirer, v.*

from idleness, play, and debauchery. It usefully fills up the vacant hours of the day, and renders very agreeable that leisure, which, without the assistance of literature, is a kind of death, and, in a manner, the grave

\* See the observation on the preposition *with*.

† These participles active are to be rendered, in French, by the infinitive.

of a man whilst he is alive. It enables us to pass a right judgement upon other men's labours, to enter into society with men of understanding, to keep the

*fréquenter, v.*

best company, (to have a share in) the discourses of the

*prendre part à*

most learned, to furnish out matter for conversation, (without which) we must be silent, to render it more agreeable and more useful, by intermixing facts with reflections, and setting the one by the other.

*relever, v.*

### INDOLENCE CHARACTERIZED.

Indolence deprives men of all that activity which should call forth their virtues and make them illustrious.

An indolent man is scarcely a man; he is half a woman. He wills and unwill in a breath. He may have good intentions to discharge a duty, while that duty is at a distance; let it but approach, let him view the time of action near, his hands immediately (drop down)

*tomber, v.*

in languor. What (can be done) with such a man?

*peut-on faire*

He is absolutely good for nothing. Business tires him, reading fatigues him, the service of his country interferes too much with his pleasures, and even attendance at court, though for the time of advancement, is too great a constraint upon him. His life should be passed on a bed of down. If he be employed, mo-

*doct, m.*

*s'employer, v.*

ments

ments (are as) hours to him; if he be amused, hours  
*s'embler, v.* *s'amuser, v.*

are as moments. In general, his whole time eludes  
 him; he lets it glide unheeded, like water under  
*insensiblement, adv.*

a bridge. Ask him what he has done with his morning,  
*matinée, f.*

he knows nothing about it; for, he has lived without  
 one reflection upon his existence. He has slept as long  
 as it was possible for him to sleep, dressed slowly, amu-  
 sed himself in chat with the first person that called upon  
 him, and taken several turns in his room till dinner.  
*faire, v.*

Dinner is served up, and the evening will be spent as  
 unprofitably as the morning, and his whole life as this  
 day. (Once more,) such a man is good for nothing.  
*Encore une fois, adv.*

It is only pride that can support him in a life so worth-  
 less, and so much beneath the character of a man.

### ANECDOTE OF THE CARDINAL VIVIERS.

John de Brogni, Cardinal of Viviers, who presided  
 at the council of Constance as dean of the cardinals,  
 had been a hog-driver in his infancy. Some monks,  
 passing by the place where he was busied in that mean  
 employment, and taking notice of his wit and viva-  
 city, offered to carry him to Rome, and bring him up  
 to study. The boy accepted of their offer, and went  
 straight to a shoe-maker to buy a pair of shoes for his  
 journey; the shoe-maker trusted him with part of the  
 price, and told him, smiling, he should pay him the rest  
 when he was made a cardinal. He became a cardinal  
 in reality, and did not forget his former low condition,

\* See the observation on the preposition *with*.



but took care to perpetuate the memory of it. In a chapel he built at Geneva, over against the gate of St. Peter's church, he caused this adventure to be carved in a stone, where he is represented young and without shoes, keeping hogs under a tree, and all around the wall are the figures of shoes, to express the favour he had received from the shoe-maker. This monument is still subsisting at Geneva.

---

## OF ENGLAND.

England is truly the queen of isles, the empire and citadel of Neptune: it is, at the same time, the Peru of Europe, the kingdom of Bacchus, the school of Epicurus, the academy of Venus, the country of Mars, the residence of Minerva, the bulwark of Holland, the scourge of France, the purgatory of the friends of subjection, and, in one word, the paradise of liberty. The ladies there are very handsome; courage is as if it were natural to the men, but it is carried to an excess that approaches near to brutality. Mental talents there are as great as in any other country, or perhaps greater: it is there that Fortune may be justly said to pour out her favours with a liberal hand. The language of England is a mixture of all those that are spoken in Europe, but it has a greater degree of energy and is more copious than any other. In short, this nation seems to want nothing to complete its happiness but the secret of knowing how to enjoy it. The natural inquietude of the people, and their excessive jealousy with respect to their privileges and freedom, have often plunged them into all the horrors of civil war, which have brought them (to the very verge) of destruction.

*à deux doigts*

From the observations I have been enabled to make, I can with safety say, that no place is more capable of affording pleasure to a young man, who understands the language, and has a fortune sufficient to support the expenses of a gentleman.

FRA.

## FRATERNAL AFFECTION.

The king of Cucho had three sons, and, like many other parents, having most affection for the youngest, some days before his death declared him his successor to the exclusion of his brethren. This proceeding was the more extraordinary as it was contrary to the laws of the kingdom. The people, therefore, thought that, after the death of the king, they might, without any crime, raise the eldest son to the throne. This design was universally approved of; but the new king, calling to mind his father's last words, rejected the offer, and, taking the crown, placed it on the head of his youngest brother, publicly declaring that he renounced it, and thought himself unworthy of it, as he was excluded by his father's will, and his father could not now retract what he had done. His brother, being affected with such a generous action, instantly entreated him not to oppose the inclination of the people, who desired him for their ruler. He urged that he alone was the lawful successor to the crown which he refused, and that their father could not infringe the laws of the kingdom; that he had been betrayed by an extravagant fondness; and that, in a word, the people had the power of redressing any breach in the established law. Nothing, however, was capable of persuading his brother to accept of the crown. There was a glorious contest between the two princes; and, as they perceived that the dispute would be endless, they retired from court. Thus, each having both conquered and been vanquished, they went to end their days together in peaceful solitude, and left the kingdom to their other brother.

## INGRATITUDE PUNISHED:

## AN EASTERN TALE.

*He that's ungrateful has no fault but one,  
All other crimes may pass for virtues in him.*

YOUNG.

A dervise, venerable by his age, fell ill in the house of a woman, who had been long a widow, and lived in extreme poverty in the suburbs of Baffora. He was so touched with the care and zeal with which she had assisted him, that, at his departure, he said to her, "I have remarked that you have wherewith to subsist alone, but that you have not substance enough to share it with your only son, the young Abdallah. If you will trust him to my care, I will endeavour to acknowledge, in his person, the obligations I have to you for the care you have taken of me." The good woman received this proposal with joy, and the dervise departed with the young man, advertising her, that they must perform a journey which would last near two years. As they travelled, he kept him in affluence, gave him excellent instructions, cured him of a dangerous disease with which he was attacked; in fine, he took the same care of him as if he had been his own son. Abdallah a hundred times testified his gratitude to him for all his bounties; but the old man always answered, "My son, it is by actions that gratitude is proved; we shall see, in a proper time and place, whether you are so grateful as you pretend."

One day, as they continued their travels, they found themselves in a solitary place, and the dervise said to Abdallah, "My son, we are now at the end of our journey; I shall employ my prayers to obtain from heaven, that the earth may open and make an entrance

wide

wide enough to permit you to descend into a place, where you will find one of the greatest treasures that the earth incloses in her bowels. Have you courage to descend into this subterraneous vault?" continued he. Abdallah swore to him he might depend upon his obedience and zeal. Then the dervise lighted a small fire, into which he cast a perfume; he read and prayed for some moments; after which, the earth opened, and the dervise said to him, "You may now enter, my dear Abdallah: remember that it is in your power to do me a great service, and that this is, perhaps, the only opportunity you can ever have of testifying to me that you are not ungrateful. Do not let yourself be dazzled by all the riches you will find there; think only of seizing upon an iron candlestick with twelve branches, which you will find close to a door: that is absolutely necessary for me." Abdallah promised every thing, and descended boldly into the vault; but, forgetting what had been expressly recommended to him, whilst he was filling his vest and his bosom with gold and jewels, which this subterraneous vault enclosed in prodigious heaps, the opening by which he entered closed of itself. He had however presence of mind enough to seize upon the iron candlestick, which the dervise had so strongly recommended to him: and, though the situation he was in was very terrible, he did not abandon himself to despair; and, thinking only in what manner he should get out of a place which might become his grave, he apprehended that the vault had closed only because he had not followed the order of the dervise; he recalled to his memory the care and goodness he had loaded him with, reproached himself with his ingratitude, and finished his meditation by humbling himself before heaven. At length, after much pains and inquietude, he was fortunate enough to find a narrow passage which led him out of this obscure cave; though it was not till he had followed it a considerable way, that he perceived a small opening covered with briars and thorns, through which he returned to the light of the sun. He looked on all sides, to see whether he could perceive



perceive the dervise, but in vain: he designed to deliver him the iron candlestick he so much wished for, and formed a design of quitting him, being rich enough, with what he had taken out of the cavern, to live in affluence without his assistance.

Not perceiving the dervise, nor remembering any of the places through which he had passed, he went on as fortune had directed him, and was extremely astonished to find himself opposite his mother's house, from which he imagined he was at a great distance. She immediately inquired after the holy dervise. Abdallah told her frankly what had happened to him, and the danger he had run to satisfy his unreasonable desires; he afterwards showed her the riches with which he was loaded. His mother concluded, upon the sight of them, that the dervise only designed to make a trial of his courage and obedience, and that they ought to make use of the happiness which fortune had presented to them; adding, that, doubtless, such was the intention of the holy dervise. Whilst they contemplated upon these treasures with avidity, whilst they were dazzled with the lustre of them, and formed a thousand projects in consequence of them, they all vanished away before their eyes. It was then that Abdallah sincerely reproached himself for his ingratitude and disobedience; and, perceiving that the iron candlestick had resisted the enchantment, or rather the just punishment which those deserve who do not execute what they promise, he said, prostrating himself, — "What has happened to me is just; I have lost what I had no design to restore, and the candlestick, which I intended to deliver to the dervise, remains with me: it is a proof, that it rightly belongs to him, and that the rest was unjustly acquired." As he finished these words, he placed the candlestick in the midst of their little habitation.

When the night was come, without reflecting upon it, he placed a light in the candlestick. Immediately they saw a dervise appear, who turned about for an hour, and disappeared, after having thrown them an asper. This candlestick had twelve branches. Ab-

dallah,

dallah, who was meditating all the day upon what he had seen the night before, was willing to know what would happen, the next night, if he put a light in each of them; he did so, and twelve dervises appeared that instant; they turned round also for an hour, and each of them threw an asper as they disappeared. He repeated every day the same ceremony, which had always the same success, but he never could make it succeed more than once in twenty-four hours. This trifling sum was enough to make his mother and himself subsist tolerably: there was a time when they would have desired no more to be happy; but it was not considerable enough to change their fortune. It is always dangerous for the imagination to be fixed upon the idea of riches. The sight of what he believed he should possess; the projects he had formed for the employment of it; all these things had left such profound traces in the mind of Abdallah, that nothing could efface them. Therefore, seeing the small advantage he drew from the candlestick, he resolved to carry it back to the dervise, in hopes that he might obtain from him the treasure he had seen, or, at least, find again the riches which had vanished from their sight, by restoring to him a thing for which he testified so earnest a desire. He was so fortunate as to remember his name, and that of the city which he inhabited. He departed therefore immediately for Magrebi, carrying with him his candlestick, which he lighted every night, and, by that means, furnished himself with what was necessary on the road, without being obliged to implore the assistance and compassion of the faithful. When he arrived at Magrebi, his first care was to inquire in what house, or in what convent, Abounadar lodged. He was so well known that every body told him his habitation. He repaired thither directly, and found fifty porters, who kept the gate of his house, having each a staff, with a head of gold, in their hands: the court of this palace was filled with slaves and domestics: in fine, the residence of a prince could not expose to view greater magnificence. Abdallah, struck with astonishment and

admiration, feared to proceed. Certainly, thought he, I either explained myself wrong, or those to whom I addressed myself designed to make a jest of me because I was a stranger: this is not the habitation of a dervise, it is that of a king. He was in this embarrassment, when a man approached him, and said to him, "Abdallah, you are welcome; my master, Abounadar, has long expected you." He then conducted him to an agreeable and magnificent pavilion, where the dervise was seated. Abdallah, struck with the riches he beheld on all sides, would have prostrated himself at his feet, but Abounadar prevented him, and interrupted him when he would have made a merit of the candlestick, which he presented to him. "You are but an ungrateful wretch, said he to him; do you imagine you can impose upon me? I am not ignorant of any one of your thoughts: and, if you had known the value of this candlestick, you would never have brought it to me: I will make you sensible of its use." Immediately he placed a light in each of its branches; and, when the twelve dervises had turned round for some time, Abounadar gave each of them a blow with a cane, and, in a moment, they were converted into twelve heaps of sequins, diamonds, and other precious stones: "This, said he, is the proper use to be made of this marvellous candlestick. As to me, I never desired it, but to place it in my cabinet, as a talisman composed by a sage whom I revere, and am pleased to expose it sometimes to those who come to visit me: and, to prove to you, added he, that curiosity was the only occasion of my search for it, here are the keys of my magazines; open them, and you shall judge of my riches; you shall tell me whether the most insatiable miser would not be satisfied with them." Abdallah obeyed him, and examined twelve magazines of great extent, so full of all manner of riches, that he could not distinguish which merited his admiration most; they all deserved it, and produced new desires. The regret of having restored the candlestick, and that of not having found out the use of it, pierced the heart of Abdallah. Abounadar seemed not to perceive

it:



it: on the contrary, he loaded him with caresses, kept him some days in his house, and commanded him to be treated as himself. When he was at the eve of the day which he had fixed for his departure, he said to him, "Abdallah, my son, I believe, by what has happened to you, you are corrected of the frightful vice of ingratitude; however, I owe you a mark of my affection, for having undertaken so long a journey, with a view of bringing me the thing I had desired: you may depart, I shall detain you no longer. You shall find, to-morrow, at the gate of my palace, one of my horses to carry you: I make you a present of it, as well as of a slave who shall conduct you to your house, and two camels loaded with gold and jewels, which you shall choose yourself out of my treasures." Abdallah said to him all that a heart sensible of avarice could express when its passion was satisfied, and went to lie down till the morning arrived, which was fixed for his departure.

During the night, he was still agitated, without being able to think of any thing but the candlestick, and what it had produced. "I had it, said he, so long in my power: Abounadar, without me, had never been possessor of it: what risks did I not run in the subterraneous vault! Why does he now possess this treasure of treasures? Because I had the probity, or rather the folly, to bring it back to him; he profits by my labour and the danger I have incurred by so long a journey. And what does he give me in return? Two camels loaded with gold and jewels: in one moment the candlestick will furnish him with ten times as much. It is Abounadar who is ungrateful: what wrong shall I do him in taking this candlestick? None, certainly; for, he is rich: and what do I possess?" These ideas determined him, at length, to make all possible attempts to seize upon the candlestick. The thing was not difficult, Abounadar having trusted him with the keys of his magazines. He knew where the candlestick was placed; he seized upon it, hid it in the bottom of one of the sacks, which he filled with pieces of gold and other riches which he was allowed to take, and loaded it,



as well as the rest, upon his camels. He had no other eagerness now but for his departure; and, after having hastily bid adieu to the generous Abounadar, he delivered him his keys, and departed with his horse, his slave, and two camels.

When he was some days journey from Balsora, he sold his slave, resolving not to have a witness of his former poverty, nor of the source of his present riches. He bought another, and arrived, without any obstacle, at his mother's, whom he would scarcely look upon, so much was he taken up with his treasure. His first care was to place the loads of his camels and the candlestick in the most private room of the house; and, in his impatience to feed his eyes with his great opulence, he placed lights immediately in the candlestick: the twelve dervises appearing, he gave each of them a blow with a cane with all his strength, lest he should be failing in the laws of the talisman: but he had not remarked that Abounadar, when he struck them, had the cane in his left hand. Abdallah, by a natural motion, made use of his right; and the dervises, instead of becoming heaps of riches, immediately drew from beneath their robes each a formidable club, with which they struck him so hard and so long that they left him almost dead, and disappeared, carrying with them all his treasure, the camels, the horse, the slave, and the candlestick.

Thus was Abdallah punished, by poverty, and almost by death, for his unreasonable ambition, which perhaps might have been pardonable, if it had not been accompanied by an ingratitude as wicked as it was audacious, since he had not so much as the resource of being able to conceal his perfidies from the too-piercing eyes of his benefactor.

FINIS.



